

**KIM IL SUNG**

**WORKS**

**WORKING PEOPLE OF THE WHOLE WORLD, UNITE!**

# KIM IL SUNG

## WORKS

**40**

*May 1986–December 1987*

FOREIGN LANGUAGES PUBLISHING HOUSE  
PYONGYANG, KOREA

1995

# CONTENTS

## THE HISTORICAL EXPERIENCE OF BUILDING THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA

Lecture Delivered to the Teaching Staff and Students of Kim Il Sung Higher Party School, <i>May 31, 1986</i> .....	1
1. The Struggle of the Korean Communists to Found the Party.....	3
2. The Workers' Party of Korea Is a Revolutionary Party of Juche.....	13
3. The Organizational and Ideological Consolidation of the Party Ranks.....	24
4. Unity and Cohesion between the Party and the Masses of the People.....	48
5. The Party's Leadership in the Revolution and Construction.....	62
6. The Party's Art of Leadership.....	79
7. The Party Is the Guide of Socialist and Communist Society.....	92

## ON STEPPING UP RAIL TRANSPORT

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Officials Working in the Sector of Rail Transport, <i>June 12, 1986</i> .....	99
--	----

## FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE NON-ALIGNED MOVEMENT

Concluding Speech at a Joint Meeting of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Central People's Committee of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, <i>June 20, 1986</i> .....	115
1. The Present International Situation and Independence in the Face of Imperialism.....	117
2. The Prevention of Nuclear War and the Abolition of Nuclear Weapons.....	121

3. The Elimination of Colonialism and Racism, and the Accomplishment of the Cause of National Liberation.....	127
4. South-South Cooperation and Economic Independence.....	131
5. The Establishment of a New International Economic Order .....	137
6. The Development of the Non-Aligned Movement .....	141

**FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF PHYSICAL EDUCATION  
AND SPORT IN THE NON-ALIGNED COUNTRIES**

Speech Made at a Luncheon in Honour of Those Attending the Second Conference of Ministers and Top Officials in Physical Education and Sport of Non-Aligned Countries, <i>July 8, 1986</i> .....	145
---	-----

**CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE TO THE VARIOUS  
POLITICAL PARTIES, SOCIAL ORGANIZATIONS  
AND PEOPLE OF ALL STRATA UNDER THE  
DEMOCRATIC FRONT FOR THE REUNIFICATION  
OF KOREA**

<i>July 21, 1986</i> .....	151
----------------------------	-----

**PREVENTING WAR AND PRESERVING PEACE  
ARE THE BURNING TASKS OF MANKIND**

Speech at a Banquet Given in Honour of the Participants in the Pyongyang International Conference for Denuclearization and Peace on the Korean Peninsula, <i>September 6, 1986</i> .....	156
--	-----

**CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE TO THE 14TH  
CONGRESS OF THE GENERAL ASSOCIATION  
OF KOREAN RESIDENTS IN JAPAN**

<i>September 26, 1986</i> .....	163
---------------------------------	-----

**THE MISSION OF CONTEMPORARY LITERATURE**

Speech at a Banquet Given in Honour of the Participants in the Pyongyang International Symposium on Literature and in the Session of the Executive Council of the Afro-Asian Writers Association, <i>September 29, 1986</i> .....	166
--	-----

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF  
OF THE EGYPTIAN NEWSPAPER *AL MASSA*

*October 16, 1986* ..... 172

OPEN LETTER TO VOTERS THROUGHOUT THE COUNTRY

*October 27, 1986* ..... 182

ON DEVELOPING THE JUCHE-ORIENTATED  
LIGHT-METAL INDUSTRY

Talk to Senior Officials in the Field of the Economy, *November 10, 1986* ..... 184

FOR THE COMPLETE VICTORY OF SOCIALISM

Policy Speech at the First Session of the Eighth Supreme  
People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic  
of Korea, *December 30, 1986* ..... 194

1 ..... 195

2 ..... 200

3 ..... 205

4 ..... 210

5 ..... 214

LET US ACCELERATE SOCIALIST ECONOMIC  
CONSTRUCTION BY GIVING FULL PLAY TO THE  
REVOLUTIONARY SPIRIT OF SELF-RELIANCE

Talk to Senior Officials in the Economic Sector, *January 3, 1987* ..... 224

TALK TO THE DELEGATION OF THE  
ZIMBABWEAN PARLIAMENT

*January 19, 1987* ..... 239

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF  
OF SOVIET *CHILDREN'S LITERATURE*

*February 5, 1987* ..... 246

ON FURTHER DEVELOPING THE CHEMICAL  
INDUSTRY AND ESTABLISHING THE  
REVOLUTIONARY HABIT OF LIVING OUR  
OWN WAY AMONG OFFICIALS

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Senior Officials  
in Charge of the Chemical Industry, *March 20, 1987*.....253

ON SOME PROBLEMS ARISING IN THE  
PREPARATIONS FOR FARMING AND IN THE  
ECONOMIC WORK FOR THIS YEAR

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of the Senior  
Officials of the Administration Council, *March 30, 1987*.....271

ON PROPERLY EXCAVATING AND RECONSTRUCTING  
HISTORICAL REMAINS AND RELICS

Talk to Senior Officials of the Administration  
Council and Historians, *June 7, 1987*.....285

LET US DEVELOP SOUTH-SOUTH COOPERATION

Congratulatory Speech at the Extraordinary Ministerial  
Conference of Non-Aligned Countries on South-South  
Cooperation, *June 9, 1987*.....295

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE  
EDITORS-IN-CHIEF OF THE NEPALESE  
NEWSPAPERS *ASTITWA* AND *AKHABAR*

*July 23, 1987*.....305

CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE TO THE PARTICIPANTS  
IN THE FIRST PYONGYANG FILM FESTIVAL OF THE  
NON-ALIGNED AND OTHER DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

*September 1, 1987*.....319

ON INTRODUCING QUICKLY 8-AXLE ELECTRIC  
LOCOMOTIVES AND WAGGONS OF THE 100-TON  
CAPACITY IN THE RAIL TRANSPORT SECTOR

Talk to Officials on Inspecting Newly-made Waggon of the 100-ton Capacity and 8-axle Electric Locomotives, <i>September 24, 1987</i> .....	323
<b>CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE TO THE 16TH CONGRESS OF THE MEMBERS OF BRANCH COMMITTEES AND INFORMATION WORKERS OF CHONGRYON</b>	
<i>October 17, 1987</i> .....	333
<b>ON CARRYING OUT THE TASKS OF TECHNICAL REVOLUTION SET BY THE SOCIALIST RURAL THESES</b>	
Talk to Senior Officials of the Economic Sector, <i>October 21, 1987</i> .....	336
<b>ON UNDERTAKING AQUACULTURE ON A LARGE SCALE</b>	
Speech Delivered at the 12th Session of the Eighth Central People's Committee of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, <i>November 2, 1987</i> .....	352
<b>PROGRESSIVE YOUTH OF THE WORLD, UNITE AND FIGHT VIGOROUSLY AGAINST IMPERIALISM</b>	
Speech at the Banquet Given in Honour of the Delegates to the Executive Committee Meeting of the World Federation of Democratic Youth, <i>December 8, 1987</i> .....	375
<b>ON MEASURES FOR EXTENSIVE USE OF META-ANTHRACITE AND OTHER COALS OF LOW-HEAT VALUE</b>	
Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Senior Officials of the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council, <i>December 10, 1987</i> .....	380

# **THE HISTORICAL EXPERIENCE OF BUILDING THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA**

**Lecture Delivered to the Teaching Staff and Students  
of Kim Il Sung Higher Party School**

*May 31, 1986*

Last year we celebrated the 40th anniversary of the founding of the Workers' Party of Korea, and today we are celebrating the 40th anniversary of the Higher Party School.

Over the past 40 years our Party has traversed a road of brilliant victory and glory, and made great achievements, which will shine long in history. Since its foundation, our Party has steadily increased and strengthened its ranks, and led the revolution and construction along the straight road of victory. It carried out the democratic and socialist revolutions successfully by giving leadership to the masses, and developed our country to become a socialist state which is independent, self-supporting and capable of self-reliant defence, by pressing ahead with socialist construction. It preserved the security of the country and the revolutionary achievements with honour from imperialist aggression. Through a long period of revolutionary struggle it has earned the unqualified support and trust of the masses, and become an unconquerable party which is firmly united, has rich experience and has the ability to give seasoned leadership.

Our Party is a veteran party which has done a great deal of work, blazing the long and thorny trail of the revolution. It is a virile party,

full of stamina and ardour. Our revolution has reached a new height at which the whole of society is being modelled on the Juche idea, and our Party has laid solid organizational and ideological foundations on which to carry forward the noble cause of Juche to the end throughout the generations. Our Party is fighting vigorously with a high aim and firm confidence in the justice of its cause and in its victory.

The people's struggle for independence can only advance victoriously under the leadership of the party. In order to model the whole of society on the Juche idea, meet the people's desire for independence and realize their ideal, it is necessary to consolidate the party organizationally and ideologically, and increase its leadership function and role continuously in keeping with revolutionary advance and social progress.

If we are to develop our Party as a Juche-oriented revolutionary party forever, we must adhere to the revolutionary principles of party building and implement them thoroughly in all spheres of its activity. To this end, Party officials must clearly understand the historical experience of building our Party.

Kim Il Sung Higher Party School is a centre for the training of our Party officials.

During the past 40 years since its foundation, the Higher Party School has shared the fortunes of our Party and achieved brilliant success in training Party cadres. It has always been in the forefront of the struggle to establish the system of the Party's monolithic ideology. It has produced a large number of competent Party workers and continuously given refresher courses to the Party officials on the job, and thus contributed greatly to the development of our Party and to the cause of our revolution. I am extremely satisfied with this.

Today the Higher Party School is facing the heavy but honourable task of producing a greater number of qualified Party workers so as to meet the needs of the developing situation.

It must give the students and Party workers a sound knowledge of our Party's history and experience, and train all of them to be infinitely loyal to the Party and to become qualified and competent Party workers.

On the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the establishment of the

Higher Party School, I should like to speak about some of the historical experience of our Party building in order to help the school in its educational work.

## **1. THE STRUGGLE OF THE KOREAN COMMUNISTS TO FOUND THE PARTY**

Our Party has grown from deep historical roots. It was founded in 1945, but the struggle to establish it in our country had begun a long time before. Through many years of arduous struggle, the Korean communists had laid a solid foundation for the revolutionary party and, on this basis, founded our Party.

Under the influence of the October Socialist Revolution in Russia, Marxism-Leninism spread through our country, and as the working class took an active part in the struggle, the communist movement started to develop here. But the Korean communist movement in its early years had serious weaknesses and limitations.

Campaigners of the early communist movement only paid lip-service to the revolution and competed for “hegemony”, divorced from the masses, instead of mixing with the people and educating, organizing and rousing them for the revolutionary struggle. Affected by flunkeyism, they did not think about strengthening the party by their own efforts. Groups of these campaigners travelled all over to obtain the recognition of the Communist International, each arguing that it was the “orthodox group” or the real “Marxist group”. In consequence, the early communist movement in our country was unable to develop smoothly. It traversed an anguished and tortuous course, and the Korean Communist Party which was organized in 1925 not only failed to perform its function properly as the vanguard of the revolution, but was unable even to maintain its existence for long under the repression of the Japanese imperialists.

The Korean revolution required a new type of revolutionary party, and the noble cause of organizing this party was put before the young communists of the new generation.

We young communists of the new generation learned the important lesson that we would be unable to carry out the revolution if we followed the same path as the early communist campaigners. We chose a completely new path of revolution. We firmly believed that in order to make a revolution we had to mix intimately with the masses and fight by depending on them, build a party ourselves and provide leadership for the revolution to suit the specific situation in our country. And we believed that if we did this we should naturally win recognition and sympathy from the people of other countries. We fought with this conviction. This was the new revolutionary line and the policy of building a revolutionary party adopted by the young communists of the new generation.

In the course of blazing the trail of the revolution and fighting independently by applying Marxism-Leninism to our own conditions creatively, we conceived a new revolutionary idea, the Juche idea. The Juche idea, in addition to Marxism-Leninism, became an unswerving guideline for our revolution.

The Down-with-Imperialism Union (DIU), which we organized in 1926, was the vanguard to lead the revolutionary cause of Juche to victory. It was the first true communist revolutionary organization in our country.

The programme of the DIU was to achieve the liberation and independence of Korea, build socialism and communism in Korea and, further, fight for the victory of communism throughout the world.

The formation of the DIU was the historic declaration of a fresh start for our revolution. With its formation, our people's revolutionary struggle broke with flunkeyism, dogmatism and every other trend of outdated ideas, and entered upon a new era of advancing under the principle of independence, and the Korean communist and national-liberation movements became capable of developing forcefully with correct fighting objectives, strategy and tactics.

The birth of the DIU marked the starting point of building a new type of revolutionary party in our country, and the glorious roots of our Party began to grow from the DIU itself. The Young Communist League of Korea, which succeeded the DIU, played an important part in the struggle to found the revolutionary party. It worked hard to achieve the unity and solidarity of the revolutionary ranks by overcoming the intrigues of factionalists and flunkeyists to divide them. At the same time, it organized and united progressive young people and trained them to be the backbone of the party which was to be founded, and gave unified leadership to the anti-Japanese organizations of the broad masses so as to lay solid foundations for the party.

At the historic Kalun Meeting held in 1930, we adopted a Juche-oriented revolutionary line. Guided by this line, we made preparations for an armed struggle and worked hard to form basic party organizations and organized the first party of its kind with young communists of the new generation.

The first party organization, which was formed at Kalun, was the glorious origin of our Party and the prototype of those party organizations which were formed, one after the other, afterwards. We increased party organizations quickly on the pattern of the first parent party organization. In a short time we formed a large number of basic party organizations over a wide area, including the district on the Tuman River, and established the system with which to give them organizational leadership. As party organizations were formed and as their activities intensified, the Korean communists became more closely organized and waged the revolutionary struggle more intensively under the guidance of these party organizations.

The struggle to found the party became more widespread when the anti-Japanese armed struggle started.

The anti-Japanese armed struggle was a noble war of liberation to save the country and the nation. It was also an all-out fight for the victory of the noble communist idea as well as a glorious struggle to found the revolutionary party of the working class.

The anti-Japanese armed struggle opened a decisive new phase in the effort to found the party. In the crucible of the armed struggle we were able to train a large force as the organizational backbone of the party which was to be founded, achieve the unbreakable unity and cohesion of the communist ranks and lay a solid mass base on which to build the party.

We set up party organizations of different levels in the anti-Japanese armed ranks and in the guerrilla zones, and steadily increased their function and role. We also formed a large number of party organizations in the area on the northern borders of our country and in the Korean settlements in northeast China. As the party organizations grew rapidly, and as the anti-Japanese armed struggle became stronger, we organized the Party Committee of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army in order to give unified leadership to the party organizations at different echelons and ensure successful party leadership to the armed struggle. The Party Committee gave unified leadership not only to all party organizations in the army but also to those which were active in many regions in the homeland and abroad.

With the Party Committee of the KPRA performing the function of unified leadership, the system of directing party organizations in all echelons became well integrated, and the armed struggle and the Korean revolution as a whole came securely under party leadership. All the party organizations became integrated organizationally and acted under the leadership of the KPRA Party Committee.

With the Party Committee as the centre, we extended the network of party organizations over wider areas in the homeland and abroad. We formed a large number of basic party organizations, particularly in industrial centres and farming and fishing villages of strategic importance in the homeland, and gave them effective unified leadership. As a result, party organizations became deeply-rooted amongst broad sections of the masses, including the workers in major industries, and the preparations for the founding of the party proceeded more forcefully throughout the country.

Thus we worked hard to found the revolutionary party of the

working class during the whole period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. In the course of this, the fatal weaknesses of the early Korean communist movement were overcome, and a solid basis was laid on which to found the revolutionary party.

During the arduous anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, the organizational and ideological foundations of the party were laid.

Laying these foundations was the basic requirement for the building of a revolutionary party. The work of building a working-class party begins with the struggle to lay its organizational and ideological foundations. If these foundations are not laid it is impossible to found a revolutionary party; even if a party is founded, it will be unable to play the role of General Staff of the revolution as it should and avoid being destroyed by a counterrevolutionary attack. This has been proved by the historical lesson of the early Korean communist movement and the experience of the international communist movement.

An important factor in laying the organizational and ideological foundations of a party is to form party organizations, establish the party's organizational leadership system thoroughly and develop its organizational backbone by training hard-core communists.

As I explained earlier, during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we formed basic party organizations and those of different levels, and established a system with which they could be given unified leadership. We formulated and worked hard to implement the policy of founding the party by forming basic organizations first on the basis of adequate preparations and then by extending and strengthening them, instead of declaring the setting up of the Party Central Committee. Of course, it may be possible to organize a party by the method of declaring the setting up of its Central Committee by rallying hard-core communists and then forming subordinate party organizations gradually. But this was impossible in our country. In those days most of the people who claimed to be communists were factionalists and flunkeyists. They clung to the coattails of others and were engrossed in factional strife and lip-service. So it was impossible to found a revolutionary party by relying on them. If we were to found a

revolutionary party we had to form basic party organizations which struck roots deep among the workers, peasants and other broad sections of the masses, train fresh communists from the new generation unaffected by factionalism and flunkeyism through party organizational life and revolutionary struggles, and ensure the unity of ideology and will among the communist ranks as well as their solidarity. Therefore, we made sure that basic party organizations were formed first, that this was followed gradually by the formation of higher bodies to suit the specific situations in the units and districts concerned, and that all party organizations acted under the unified leadership of the KPRA Party Committee.

During the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we trained a large number of hard-core communists.

By hard-core communists I mean people who have acquired the revolutionary outlook on the world, who never falter in any difficulty or adversity and who are able to carry out the revolutionary tasks they have been given on their own responsibility. Hard-core communists are indispensable for forming the organizational backbone of the party, ensuring unity of ideology and will amongst the communist ranks and their solidarity, and consolidating the mass basis for the founding of the party.

The quickest revolutionary way of training hard-core communists was to enlist people in the anti-Japanese armed ranks and harden them in the practice of the arduous revolutionary struggle. The anti-Japanese armed ranks were a school for hardening and training people to be stalwart revolutionaries and hard-core communists. We enlisted fine sons and daughters of workers and peasants in the anti-Japanese armed ranks and hardened them steadily in the bloody fight against the enemy. Thus we trained them to be indomitable revolutionary fighters possessing the communist revolutionary spirit, to be hard-core communists qualified both politically and militarily.

A revolutionary organizational life is a powerful means of educating and hardening people. We saw to it that workers, peasants and progressive intellectuals who were highly class-conscious and had

been tested in the struggle were admitted to party organizations, and educated and hardened steadily through organizational life. As a result, party organizations trained a large number of people to be fine hard-core communists and to be the organizational backbone of the party, possessing a strong sense of organization and discipline.

The anti-Japanese mass organizations also played an important role in training hard-core communists. We formed various anti-Japanese mass organizations in the guerrilla zones and in wide areas in the homeland and abroad. Around these organizations we rallied workers, peasants and other broad sections of the masses who were opposed to Japanese imperialism. We gave them revolutionary training in the practical struggle against Japanese imperialism, and thus prepared a large number of people to become ardent communists.

These hard-core communists whom we trained during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle became the backbone of the party which was to be founded.

Another important factor in laying the organizational and ideological foundations of the party is to preserve the purity of the communist ranks and ensure the solid unity of their ideology and will.

A revolutionary party can only be established and its strength increased when the purity of the communist ranks and the unity of their ideology and will are ensured. The unity of ideology and will amongst the communist ranks and their solidarity are the basic condition for the founding, consolidation and development of the party as well as the source of its unconquerable strength.

During the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we worked tirelessly to ensure the purity of the communist ranks and strengthen the unity of their ideology and will. We exposed all the crimes which had been committed by the factionalists who had made a muddle of the early communist movement in Korea, got the communists to fight resolutely against the factionalists and established iron discipline in the organizations so as to prevent the slightest element of factionalism from infiltrating the revolutionary ranks. We also imbued the communists and the members of the revolutionary organizations with

the Juche-oriented Korean revolutionary line, strategy and tactics so as to ensure the ideological unity of the communist ranks and their concerted action.

Laying a solid mass foundation is important in preparing the organizational and ideological foundations on which to build the party.

A mass base is an important guarantee for the foundation of a powerful party which is deeply rooted amongst the different sections of the masses. Only a party which has a solid mass base can be invincible.

In order to form the mass base for the foundation of the party, it is necessary to awaken the masses and organize them. Although the people are masters of the revolution, they cannot play their role as such and serve as the party's dependable political base unless they are awakened and organized.

During the whole period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we worked hard to awaken and organize the masses. In those days we sent a large number of political workers to work among the masses in many places. They went deep among the people, educated them tirelessly, revolutionized them, and formed mass organizations so that broad sections of them were organizationally integrated. We made a massive effort to organize and mobilize the workers, peasants and all other people in the revolutionary struggle, and hardened them through the struggle. In the practical struggle, the class consciousness of broad sections of the masses was awakened, and they became a powerful political force.

The struggle to form the mass base for founding the party proceeded in step with the anti-Japanese national united front movement. On May 5, 1936 the Association for the Restoration of the Fatherland was formed. This historic event marked a new phase in consolidating the mass foundation of the party.

The formation of this association made it possible to unite the broad masses of all walks of life closely under the banner of national liberation.

The network of the association spread rapidly. Its subordinate

organizations were formed widely, not only in the districts on the Amnok and Tuman Rivers but deep in the homeland. These organizations bore different names to suit the specific conditions of their localities. As its organizational network extended over wide areas at home and abroad, broad sections of the masses rallied closely around the association, and even religious people joined these organizations and came out to fight against the Japanese. As a result, a change took place in ensuring party leadership over the masses of different sections, and the mass base for founding the party became stronger.

Because the solid organizational and ideological base on which to build the party was laid during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we were fully prepared to found the revolutionary working-class party in our country as soon as a favourable opportunity arose.

The brilliant revolutionary traditions of our Party were established during the arduous revolutionary struggle against Japanese imperialism.

Through the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, which cost us a great deal of blood, the system of the Juche idea was established, imperishable revolutionary achievements and fighting experience were gained, and the revolutionary work method and popular work style were created. The anti-Japanese revolutionary traditions contain a wealth of priceless ideological and spiritual assets, and valuable revolutionary exploits and experiences.

The anti-Japanese revolutionary traditions provided a sound base on which to found our Party after liberation and strengthen and develop it, and became the strong historical roots of our Party and revolution.

Relying on the organizational and ideological base for founding the party and on the brilliant revolutionary traditions established during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we immediately set about organizing the party after the country was liberated.

The situation in our country after liberation was very complicated. In particular, because of the US imperialist occupation of south Korea, there was a striking contrast between the situations in the north and the south of our country. In the north all the people, who had become the masters of the country, took part as one in the building of a new

country with the joy of liberation, but this was not the case in the south. There, a military government was set up by the United States, the revolutionary advance of communists and other patriots was mercilessly suppressed, and the people's committees which had been formed on the initiative of the people were dissolved by force. In this situation it was difficult to establish a united party including all the communists in north and south Korea immediately. But we could not afford to wait with folded arms until conditions for founding a united party matured. These different situations in the north and the south of the country required that the revolution be developed and the work of founding the party carried on in both areas in accordance with specific local conditions.

We immediately founded the party in the north, where a favourable situation had been created. This was necessary because only then was it possible to give unified leadership to the Communist Party organizations formed and active in all parts of the country, achieve the organizational and ideological unity of the communist ranks, rally the broad masses around the Party and carry on nation building successfully so as to develop the northern half of Korea into a solid base for the Korean revolution.

We ensured that the Party was founded with the hard-core communists who had been hardened and trained during the many years of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, and with those communists who had been active in different areas at home and abroad. At that time, there was a suggestion that the party should be founded only with those communists who had participated in the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. It was well within our capability to do so, but we refrained. Had we organized the party with them alone, other people would have tried to form parties of their own, and this would have resulted in the division of the communist movement in our country. That was why we saw to it that every communist was admitted to the Party when it was founded. It was true that some communists who had been working individually in different areas might lack organizational training, but since there was a dependable

corps of the backbone hardened and seasoned in the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we were able to admit them to the Party and unite them organizationally.

We sent hard-core communists who had been trained during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle to different parts of the country to reorganize and expand Party organizations there and to unite the communists who were working individually, while at the same time accelerating preparations for founding the Party. At last, on October 10, 1945 we formed the Central Organizing Committee of the Communist Party of North Korea, a powerful central leadership organ of the Party, proclaiming the foundation of our Party to the whole world.

The founding of our Party was the birth of the revolutionary Party of a Juche type, the first of its kind in history. It was the superb result of many years of struggle by the Korean communists to found a revolutionary party of the working class. It provided the Korean revolution with its own powerful, militant General Staff and enabled our people to promote the revolution and construction victoriously under its leadership.

## **2. THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA IS A REVOLUTIONARY PARTY OF JUCHE**

The Workers' Party of Korea is a new type of working-class party, a Marxist-Leninist party of a Juche type. In short, the Workers' Party of Korea can be described as a revolutionary party of Juche. It is guided by the Juche idea and is fighting to accomplish the cause of Juche.

A party is a political organization of people who are united on the basis of community of thought and ideas. It represents the common desire of a certain class, social group or society, and fights to fulfil this

desire. The character and mission of a party is defined by its socio-class basis and guiding ideology.

The Workers' Party of Korea is a revolutionary party of the working class and a mass party of the working people.

Our Party is composed of a backbone of vanguard fighters of the working class and a large number of excellent elements from among progressive workers, peasants and working intellectuals. Holding fast to the revolutionary stand of the working class, it carries out all its activities in keeping with the desires and interests of the working class and broad sections of the working masses. Its emblem clearly symbolizes its revolutionary and mass character.

The guiding ideology of the Workers' Party of Korea is the Juche idea.

The Juche idea is the revolutionary idea of the working class which represents the masses' desire for independence and the absolutely correct guideline for our revolution and construction. It is a man-centred revolutionary outlook on the world and a revolutionary doctrine to bring about independence for the masses.

The validity of the Juche idea has been fully proved in the practice of the Korean revolution, and this idea has become the steadfast guideline of our Party in the course of many years of struggle.

Our Party is guided by the Juche idea, and builds itself and carries on all its activities on the basis of this idea.

The Juche idea is the starting point of our Party building and activity. Proceeding from the Juche idea, our Party, in its building and other activities, focuses on man and subordinates everything to enhancing the position and role of the masses, and maintains independent and creative stands.

The Juche idea is the basis on which to consolidate our Party organizationally and ideologically. On the basis of the Juche idea, our Party strengthens itself organizationally and imbues itself with one ideology so as to ensure its unity and cohesion.

The Juche idea is the guideline of our Party in giving leadership to the revolution and construction. Guided by the Juche idea, our Party

formulates its line, and strategy and tactics for the revolution and construction. It implements its line and policy by trusting in the strength of the masses and mobilizing their creative power.

Our Party has always advanced under the banner of the Juche idea. It was founded, strengthened and developed in the struggle to implement the Juche idea and has led the revolution and construction to victory by applying this idea.

The basic mission of the Workers' Party of Korea is to fight for the victory of the cause of Juche.

The cause of Juche is the cause of the masses which has been pioneered and developed under the banner of the Juche idea. It is the noble cause of bringing about independence for the masses by implementing the Juche idea.

When we announced the founding of the Party, we put forward its programme of carrying out democratic social reforms and building a prosperous, independent and sovereign state by applying the Juche idea. This was the fighting programme which we had already published during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. Our Party has powerfully mobilized all its members and all the people in the struggle to carry out its programme. As a result, the first objective of this programme has been implemented brilliantly in the northern half of Korea. But it has not yet been accomplished nationwide.

The immediate revolutionary task of our Party today in carrying out the cause of Juche is to achieve the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea, and the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

Our Party has defined as its immediate objective the winning of the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea, and is fighting to put this into effect.

Attaining the complete victory of socialism and establishing a classless society is the most important revolutionary task in the cause of building communism after the establishment of the socialist system. A decisive change will take place in the accomplishment of this cause when socialism is completely victorious, the insidious intrigues of the

hostile classes and the corrosive actions of old ideas cease, the differences between town and country and the class distinctions between the workers and the peasants disappear, when the material and technical foundations of socialism are stable, and when working people are free from arduous labour.

Today, it is the mature requirement of our revolution to win the complete victory of socialism. Our Party has already carried out the tasks of national liberation and class emancipation, and pressed ahead with socialist construction in the northern half of Korea, thus laying a solid foundation for the complete victory of socialism in politics, the economy, ideology, culture and all other spheres of social life.

In order to win the complete victory of socialism, we must accelerate the work of transforming the whole of society after the revolutionary and working-class pattern and making them intellectuals, strengthen the material and technical foundations of socialism, and further consolidate and develop the socialist system.

On the basis of the successes already achieved in socialist construction, our Party is successfully carrying out the strategic tasks which arise in the course of attaining the complete victory of socialism.

Achieving the independent, peaceful reunification of the country is the most urgent fighting task facing our Party.

It is only when the independent, peaceful reunification of the country is achieved that national sovereignty can be exercised throughout the country, socio-political independence ensured for the south Korean people and the uniform development of the country and its people guaranteed.

In order to reunify the country independently and peacefully we must strengthen the revolutionary forces in the northern half of Korea and give strong support to the just, patriotic struggle of the south Korean people, and work hard to create an international environment favourable to our revolution.

Our Party is making every effort to achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country as soon as possible, and ensure the uniform development of the country and its people.

The ultimate revolutionary task of our Party in carrying out the cause of Juche is to build a communist society by modelling the whole of society on the Juche idea.

The communist society is mankind's ideal society, in which remnants of the old society no longer exist and where independence for the masses is completely realized.

The communist society, the ideal of mankind, can only be built successfully through the struggle to transform the whole of society as required by the Juche idea. We must model the whole of society on the Juche idea so as to change all members of society into communists of the Juche type, and transform society and nature thoroughly as required by the Juche idea. This is the way to occupy the ideological and material fortresses of communism and attain a communist society in which independence for the masses is realized completely.

Our Party has put forward the loftiest programme of building a communist society by modelling the whole of society on the Juche idea, and is pressing ahead with the work of transforming people, society and nature as required by the Juche idea.

Our Party is not only fighting for success in the revolution in our country but also for the victory of the world revolution.

The world revolution is the struggle to liquidate imperialism and colonialism, to achieve national liberation and class emancipation, and to build communism throughout the world.

The world revolution is a common international cause of all Communist and Workers' Parties and revolutionary people of the world; fighting for the triumph of the world revolution is the international duty of the working class and other people in every country.

The important task in speeding up the world revolution is to make the whole world independent. An independent world is a world in which imperialism and colonialism have been liquidated completely, a world where the complete sovereignty of all countries and peoples has been ensured. Global independence will pave a broad road for all countries and peoples to build a new, independent and prosperous

society, and provide the people with complete independence.

An important task in winning the victory of the world revolution is to give a strong impetus to the international communist movement. This movement is a noble cause for the victory of socialism and communism, and for human emancipation throughout the world. A worldwide victory of communism is essential for the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of independence of the working class and the rest of the masses.

If they are to emerge victorious in the world revolution, the working class and other people of the world must strengthen international solidarity and cooperation, and develop a powerful joint struggle against imperialism.

Under the banner of Marxism-Leninism, of proletarian internationalism, and of anti-imperialism and independence, our Party will unite closely with the fraternal Communist and Workers' Parties and other progressive parties in the world, oppose imperialism, colonialism and all acts of aggression and subjugation, and continue to fight to provide independence for the people.

Our Party's cause of independence for the masses can only be achieved through continuous struggle. Our Party will discharge its honourable mission to the end on the road of sacred struggle to bring independence to the masses.

The working-class party is fundamentally different from other political parties both in its character and its mission, in the mode of its activities and in its socio-historical position. Therefore, it must be built on the basis of the theory and principles which are peculiar to its nature and character. It is only then that the party can perform its leadership function and historic mission as it should.

The working-class party must build itself and act in such a way as to ensure political leadership for the whole of society, always keeping a tight hold on work with people. Providing political leadership for the whole of society by concentrating on work with people is the basic principle of building the working-class party.

Since its inception, our Party has regarded work with people as

fundamental to Party work and solved all problems arising in its development and in its activities through work with people.

Work with people is an undertaking to educate people in a revolutionary way and rally them organizationally so that they willingly join the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction.

It is a requirement of the Juche idea to concentrate on work with people, regarding this as the main factor in the party's activities. On the basis of the philosophical principle that man is the master of everything and decides everything, the Juche idea requires that everything should be considered as centring on people and should be made to serve them. Therefore, people must always be placed in the centre of party building and party activities, and every problem must be solved through work with people.

Work with people is the basic mode of government of the working-class party. Government by the working-class party integrates the will of the masses, and its basic requirement is that people should be educated and united in conformity with their rights to independence and interests and that they should be encouraged to participate willingly in the revolutionary struggle and construction. The party is not a power organ ruling the people but a political educator and organizer. The object of party work is people, and the duty of the party is to educate and organize its members and other working people so that they will join in the revolutionary struggle voluntarily and with a high degree of enthusiasm. Therefore, work with people is the main content of party work and the form of activity proper to the party. So party work and activities must always concentrate on work with people.

The party is the leading political organization of society. Under its leadership the working class and other working masses engage in political activity, and the revolution and construction progress. The working-class party gives unified leadership to the political activities of the masses, and here are to be found its particular position and role in society. It is only when the party provides political leadership for the whole of society that it can truly represent the people's rights to

independence and their interests, and serve as a genuinely leading political organization which guides the revolution and construction to meet the desire of the masses for independence.

Our Party has provided political leadership for the whole of society by concentrating on work with people, implementing the theory of building a revolutionary party. It has thus been able to work as a true defender of our people's rights to independence and their interests, and advance the revolution and construction triumphantly.

In order to strengthen and develop the party so that it will be a party which is durable and powerful organizationally and ideologically, a revolutionary party which leads the cause of independence for the masses to victory, we must adhere to the revolutionary principles in party building.

The basic principles which our Party maintains in Party building are, first, to establish a monolithic ideological system in the Party; second, to make the Party one with the people; and third, to ensure continuity in Party building.

The revolutionary party of the working class must establish a monolithic ideological system.

Establishing a monolithic ideological system in party building means imbuing the whole party with a single revolutionary ideology and, on this basis, ensuring unity of leadership.

The working-class party must be organized and guided on the basis of one ideology. It must be united around one centre, and all its activities must be conducted under unified leadership. In other words, a monolithic ideological system must be established in the party.

The establishment of a monolithic ideological system in the party is the only way for the party to preserve its revolutionary character, achieve the organizational and ideological unity of its ranks, and perform its function and role satisfactorily as the General Staff of the revolution.

There must be only one ideology in the working-class party, and the whole party must be imbued with one ideology. A party which lacks singleness of ideology cannot preserve its revolutionary character, nor

can it become an integrated party, all members of which act as one. A party which fails to ensure the unity of ideology and action cannot, in fact, be called a single party.

The unity and cohesion of the ranks is vital to a working-class party; it is the source of its unconquerable power. The unity and cohesion of the party can only be durable and powerful enough to withstand any storm and stress when it is based upon one ideology. If we are to ensure the unity of the Party's ideology and will, and its revolutionary solidarity, we must arm every Party member firmly with its guiding ideology so as to fill the whole party with one revolutionary ideology.

Imbuing the party with one ideology is the basis on which the party can ensure unified leadership, which in turn enables the party to perform its function and role satisfactorily as the leading political organization.

A working-class party must imbue itself with its guiding ideology so as to ensure that all its members think and act in accordance with the party's ideas and intentions, and that the whole party acts as one man under the unified leadership of its Central Committee.

The principle of establishing a monolithic ideological system is a party-building principle which implies democratic centralism. It requires that democratic centralism should be implemented thoroughly in party activities.

The party's lines and policies are its organizational goals, namely, the crystallization of the aspirations and desires of all its members. It is only when inner-party democracy is given full play that the party's lines and policies can incorporate the will of the masses correctly, and that these lines and policies can be accepted by the masses as their own. In addition, the system of unified leadership can only be established throughout the party when the discipline of democratic centralism is established, a discipline by which all party members and organizations accept and implement its lines and policies unconditionally, and by which party members obey party organizations, subordinate party organizations obey higher party organizations, and the whole party obeys its Central Committee.

The working-class party must become one with the masses.

The working-class party must strike deep roots amongst the masses and rally broad sections of the masses around itself firmly, so that the party and the masses become a harmonious whole which breathes the same breath, acts as one, and shares the same fortunes.

To be one with the masses is the natural requirement of the working-class party which is fighting for the good of the masses and is carrying out its work by relying on them.

The working-class party can only be invincible when it is one with the people. A party which is not rooted amongst the masses and is unable to win their support is like a castle in the air, and will be unable even to sustain its own existence. Only a party which is deeply rooted amongst the masses and enjoys their unreserved support and trust can be invincible, and continue to strengthen and develop.

By being one with the people the working-class party can link leadership with the masses properly and make them great creators of history. Organic unity between the party and the masses is what makes the party strong and the masses great. It is under the party's leadership that the masses, who are the subject of social history and undertake the revolution, can be the true masters of their destiny and the powerful motive force of the revolution. When it is one with the masses and provides them with revolutionary leadership, the working-class party can awaken and organize the masses, and encourage them to participate in the revolutionary struggle and construction with a high degree of revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity.

If it is to be one with the masses, the party must be developed to become a mass party of the working people, and must always champion their interests thoroughly and serve them faithfully.

The working-class party must preserve its continuity throughout its development.

Preserving continuity in its development means carrying forward the purity of its blood and maintaining its main principles throughout its development.

Maintaining its original qualities during its development is the law of the communist movement and of the party's development. The

communist movement and the cause of party building are things which continue for generations over a long period. Since the revolutionary cause of the working class continues through many generations over a long period, and since one generation is continually taking the place of another in the course of the development of the communist movement, the cause of party building must also continue for generations.

The fundamental thing in carrying forward the cause of party building for generations is to carry forward the oneness of the party's ideology and of its leadership.

If the oneness of ideology and of leadership is not carried forward in party building, it will be impossible to preserve the revolutionary character of the party and the achievements of its struggle, and ensure its leadership role whenever the revolutionary generations change. Consequently, the party will be unable to accomplish the cause of independence for the people.

The oneness of the party's ideology and its leadership must be carried forward and preserved intact in the whole course of the party's advance and social progress.

It is very important in carrying forward the cause of party building through the generations to preserve, carry forward and develop the revolutionary traditions of the party.

The revolutionary traditions are revolutionary treasures for the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of the working class and the cause of party building. They are the lifeline which provides a link between different generations of the party and the revolution. The revolutionary traditions comprehensively include the party's guiding ideology, theory and methods as well as the crystallization of the valuable revolutionary achievements and experience which have been accumulated in the whole course of the revolutionary struggle. The revolutionary cause of the working class and the cause of party building can only be accomplished successfully in the course of preserving, carrying forward and developing the revolutionary traditions. If the revolutionary traditions are not preserved and carried forward it will be impossible to maintain the lifeline of the party and

the revolution, and achieve the final victory of the revolution.

The working-class party must regard it as an important task in party building to carry forward and develop the revolutionary traditions. It must carry forward the whole content of the revolutionary traditions, which have been established, developed and enriched during the long course of the revolutionary struggle, ever since the beginning of the revolution.

Our Party has upheld the theory and principles of building a revolutionary party, and implemented them thoroughly in its development and activities. So it has been able to blaze a new path of party building, and strengthen and develop itself to be the revolutionary party of Juche that it is today. The historical experience of our Party building is valuable in that it has been gained in the course of developing itself into a new type of working-class party, a revolutionary party of Juche, by applying the Juche-oriented theory and principles of party building to all spheres of its development and activities.

### **3. THE ORGANIZATIONAL AND IDEOLOGICAL CONSOLIDATION OF THE PARTY RANKS**

The organizational and ideological consolidation of the party ranks is the main content of party building and the principal task in party work.

In brief, party building is the work of founding the party and steadily strengthening its ranks organizationally and ideologically. The party can only perform its leadership role satisfactorily and carry out its historic mission when it constantly strengthens its ranks organizationally and ideologically as required by the developing revolution. In party work, therefore, the main effort should be devoted to consolidating its ranks organizationally and ideologically.

Always regarding the organizational and ideological consolidation of its ranks as the main task of party work, we have pressed ahead with this work and, in the course of this, gained valuable experience and learned important lessons.

The most important thing in the organizational and ideological consolidation of the party ranks is to establish a monolithic ideological system throughout the party.

Establishing the party's monolithic ideological system is the main guarantee for the organizational and ideological consolidation of its ranks. It is only when the party does this thoroughly that it can build up its ranks firmly, achieve their sound unity and cohesion in ideology and will, and establish strict organizational discipline and a well-integrated organizational structure.

Regarding the establishment of a monolithic ideological system as the basic line of party building from the first days of its foundation, our Party has been working unremittingly to implement this.

The main effort which our Party made to establish a monolithic ideological system was the campaign to introduce Juche.

In order to establish the party's monolithic ideological system, the whole party must be imbued with one ideology. To this end, it is first of all necessary to overcome every expression of heterogeneous ideas which run counter to the party's monolithic ideology.

Our Party's campaign to establish Juche was one to implement the Juche idea in every sphere of the revolution and construction. At the same time, it was a fight to overcome flunkeyism, dogmatism and every other manifestation of heterogeneous ideas, and imbue the whole Party with its revolutionary idea, the Juche idea.

Flunkeyist and dogmatist tendencies existed widely in our Party for some time in the past because of the peculiarities of our country's historical development and its complicated circumstances.

Flunkeyism is a manifestation of slavish submission to powerful countries and the negative attitude of despising one's own nation. Anyone who is affected by flunkeyism will blindly worship and follow others and injudiciously despise what he himself has, favouring

foreign practices. Flunkeyists are, without exception, dogmatists.

Experience shows that a person who adopts flunkeyism, is sure to become a fool. If a nation falls prey to this disease the country is sure to perish, and if a party takes to flunkeyism, it will make a muddle of the revolution and construction. This is precisely the fatal nature of flunkeyism.

In the past, flunkeyism wrought untold damage to the development of our nation and the communist movement in our country. If we look back on our country's history, flunkeyism was the cause of both the ruin of our country and the failure of the early communist movement.

Even after the country was liberated, flunkeyism obstructed the revolutionary struggle and construction work, and created a huge obstacle to the building of our Party. People who were steeped in flunkeyism and dogmatism mechanically tried to copy foreign practices, instead of relying on our Party's line and policies, and tried to depend on others without believing in their own strength. The evil of flunkeyism and dogmatism was revealed more seriously during the war, and as the socialist revolution and socialist construction were pursued on a wide scale after the war, it could no longer be tolerated. Without eliminating flunkeyism and dogmatism, it was impossible to imbue the whole Party with its revolutionary idea, nor could the Party's leadership in the revolution and construction be exercised properly.

From the beginning of its leadership in the revolution and construction, our Party worked continuously to oppose flunkeyism and dogmatism, and establish Juche. After the war, in particular, it set out a determined policy on establishing Juche and has worked steadily to implement it. Our Party made certain that even the slightest manifestations of flunkeyism and dogmatism were not tolerated, but were overcome promptly through an ideological struggle. It has intensified ideological work so that all the cadres and Party members study our country's prevailing situation thoroughly and work by relying on its line and policies; it has worked hard to get officials to acquire the habit of solving all problems from independent and

creative standpoints. It ensured that even when foreign experience was introduced, it was done in such a way as to suit our existing conditions and was not copied mechanically.

Through the endeavour to establish Juche, a great change has taken place in the work of setting up the Party's monolithic ideological system. The whole Party is permeated with the Juche idea, its revolutionary idea, and all the cadres and Party members think and act as required by this idea. In our Party today, there are no instances of anyone looking up to or submitting to others.

Another major campaign waged by our Party to establish a monolithic ideological system was the fight against factionalism and every other sectarian element.

In order to establish the party's monolithic ideological system, the whole party must be imbued with one ideology and, at the same time, achieve organizational unity. The unity and cohesion of the party ranks can only be achieved successfully through the fight against factionalism and every other sectarian element.

Factionalism is an anti-party, counterrevolutionary element which undermines the unity and cohesion of the party, and destroys the revolutionary movement. Its ideological source is bourgeois ideas, especially individual heroism, fame-seeking and careerism. Therefore, factionalists use every means to become famous, further their careers and fulfil their ambitions to attain higher positions. If even the mildest factional elements are tolerated within the party it will be impossible to achieve the unity and cohesion of its ranks, and, eventually, it will be impossible to preserve even the party itself.

From the outset, our Party had to fight hard against factionalism. This is because we achieved the country's liberation without having overcome factionalism, which was common in the early communist movement. There was no unified working-class party in our country from the time that the party which had been organized in 1925 was disbanded because of factional strife and Japanese imperialist repression until the liberation of the country. Because of this, it was not possible to systematically investigate those communists who had been

working in isolation at home and abroad, nor was it possible to organize a strong attack on the factionalists. For this reason, factionalism continued, and the various actions of the factionalists went unchecked. After liberation our Party faced the historic task of overcoming factionalism, which had done immeasurable harm to the communist movement in our country.

With a view to embracing as many people as possible, our Party maintained the policy of condoning and winning over, and then re-educating even those people who had been involved in factional strife or who were under the influence of such people, provided that they repented of their errors and gave up their factional activities. However, in spite of the Party's unceasing education and repeated admonitions, the factionalists did not renounce their evil practices handed down from the past, but continued their activities, which presented a huge obstacle in the path of Party unity and cohesion. Whenever our revolution faced trials and difficulties, they made an appearance and challenged the Party. In order to achieve their ambitions, they adopted a counterrevolutionary course, teaming up with the enemy during the grim Fatherland Liberation War. And during the difficult period of postwar reconstruction they even plotted to overthrow the Party and the Government.

Our Party quickly saw through the insidious plots of the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists, exposed and thwarted them by enlisting Party organizations and members, and then liquidated these elements through organizational channels. At the same time, we launched a strong Party-wide ideological campaign to root out their ideological influences.

In the struggle against the factionalists, our Party adhered to the principle of sharply distinguishing between the prime movers and their followers, and dealing with every person according to the nature of his crime. It struck the prime movers hard and enlisted and educated their followers.

The Fifth Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee held at the time of the Fatherland Liberation War, the August 1956 Plenary

Meeting and the March 1958 Party Conference, which were held in the postwar period, were of great significance in opposing factionalism and cementing the unity and cohesion of the Party. On the occasion of the Fifth Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee we unmasked and expelled the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary spy clique, and at the August Plenary Meeting and the Party Conference we liquidated the last remnants of the factionalists. As a result, we defeated factionalism which had existed for a very long time, further strengthened the organizational cohesion of the Party ranks and achieved the strong unity of the Korean communist movement.

After it had eliminated factionalism, our Party waged a powerful campaign against the anti-Party revisionists, and so achieved a new degree of unity and cohesion within the Party.

Today the unity and cohesion of our Party has reached a very high level. The whole Party is rallied rock-solid around its Central Committee and is firmly united on the basis of the Juche idea. No force can destroy the unity and cohesion of our Party which has been achieved on the basis of this idea.

Our struggle against factionalism was very complicated and arduous. To be candid, although it was conducted against an internal enemy, it was as arduous as the Fatherland Liberation War against the US imperialists.

We were able to succeed in our difficult fight against factionalism. The main reason for this was that our Party's hard-core elements had been developed strongly. Our Party could successfully frustrate the moves of the factionalists because its hard-core ranks were composed of fine communists who had been tempered in the protracted and arduous anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. Another important thing which enabled us promptly to unmask and expel the factionalists who had attempted to break up our Party ranks was the fact that Party members and the working people had been well awakened politically, so that strong criticism, self-criticism and, in particular, criticism from subordinates, took place.

Because of its long struggle to establish a monolithic ideological

system, our Party has become a powerful party which is imbued with the Juche idea and firmly united in ideology and will on the basis of this idea. It has also become a revolutionary party, all the organizations and members of which act as one under the unified leadership of its Central Committee.

We must not rest content just because we have achieved a great success in establishing the Party's monolithic ideological system. We must never forget the fact that anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists who were lurking in the Party, attacked it in the past when our internal and external conditions were difficult and our revolution was sorely tried. We are still on the road of revolution. In the course of its progress, our revolution may encounter unexpected difficulties and trials. No one can say for certain that traitors will not appear once again within our Party if our revolution has to face difficulties at some time in the future. Moreover, there is no guarantee that all kinds of heterodox ideological trends such as flunkeyism, dogmatism and factionalism will not revive while there are still remnants of outdated ideas among us and the imperialists continue their ideological and cultural infiltration from outside.

Logically speaking, the work of establishing the monolithic ideological system of the party is an uninterrupted work which should be continued as long as a working-class party exists.

It is very important to continue to develop the work of establishing the party's monolithic ideological system both in the light of the law that governs party building and the practical experience gained in the building of our Party. We have to intensify this work still further as the revolution develops, and continue it from generation to generation.

The main thing in establishing the party's monolithic ideological system is to get the cadres and party members to maintain an unshakable loyalty to the party. It is only when they do this that they will fight staunchly against alien ideological trends which run counter to the party's monolithic ideology, defend the unity and cohesion of the party as the most important thing in their lives and share their destiny with the party to the end whatever storm and stress it

encounters. This is an important lesson and a valuable truth which we have learned in the work of establishing our Party's monolithic ideological system.

We must make certain that all the cadres and Party members retain their loyalty to the Party as their revolutionary faith, and faithfully support, defend and protect it politically and ideologically in any difficult situation or adversity, unconditionally accept the Party's line and policies and implement them to the end. We must also ensure that they arm themselves firmly with the Juche world outlook, resolutely defend the unity and cohesion of our Party which has been achieved on the basis of the Juche idea and faithfully follow the unified leadership of the Party Central Committee.

The practical experience gained in building our Party shows that in consolidating its ranks organizationally and ideologically it is very important to stress the establishment of the Party's monolithic ideological system. At the same time, we must be efficient in building up the Party ranks organizationally, educating the cadres and Party members in a revolutionary way and enhancing the functions and role of Party organizations. In light of the practical experience gained in the building of the Party we must continue to work well to build up the Party ranks organizationally, educate the cadres and Party members ideologically and increase the functions and roles of Party organizations.

It is very important to consolidate the Party ranks organizationally

The party is an organized body of its members. The Party can only become a real political organization which leads the masses when its ranks are built up with Juche-type revolutionaries and when the whole Party is made a compact organized whole.

If we are to consolidate the Party ranks organizationally, the ranks of cadres must be developed in a proper way.

Cadres are the backbone of the Party and the commanding personnel of the revolution. The Party is organized with cadres as the core, and all its activities are ensured by the role of the cadres. In the final analysis, cadres decide everything.

An important matter in personnel administration is to select and appoint cadres properly.

The first criterion for cadres is loyalty to the Party and the revolution. Cadres should arm themselves firmly with the Juche-motivated revolutionary world outlook, have a strong ideological resolve to share their destiny with the Party, resolutely defend and protect it and devote everything to the accomplishment of the Juche cause. At the same time, they must have wide knowledge and extensive technical and practical qualifications, skilful organizing ability and revolutionary drive. They must also possess a popular style of work. Unreserved loyalty to the Party and the revolution, remarkable practical ability and a noble, popular character—these are the qualities our Party requires of its cadres.

In personnel administration we must select people who have extensive qualifications as cadres and appoint the right man to the right post. In understanding, selecting and appointing cadres we should strictly observe the principle of judging people by putting the main emphasis on the person concerned. To this end, we should not judge people simply by examining their personal files; but we must examine and test them through practical work. This is the way to judge people correctly and promote as cadres those people who have been fully examined and tested.

In building up the ranks of cadres on a political and class basis, the continual improvement of their quality is important.

In building up the ranks of cadres, we must first of all pay attention to increasing the proportion of cadres of working-class origin. Ours is a revolutionary party of the working class. Therefore, when viewed from the perspective of class origin, the working class is the basic criterion of our Party's cadres. The Party can only maintain its unchanging class character and perform its role satisfactorily as the vanguard of the working class when the proportion of cadres of working-class origin is increased systematically in building up the ranks of cadres. The working class must be the main source of cadres for our Party, which must appoint as cadres many workers who have been tempered and

tested in labour, and, especially, core workers in key industries.

In building up the ranks of cadres it is important to maintain a correct balance between old and young people. Old cadres have wide experience and are skilful in dealing with matters, while young cadres are responsive to anything new, are full of energy and have strong initiative. It is only when the ranks of cadres are established by appropriately combining old and young people that we will be able to continue to develop our Party into an experienced and seasoned party, into a powerful party which is filled with spirit and ardour. Building up the ranks of cadres by appropriately combining old people with young people is also indispensable if we are to ensure continuity in the building of the Party and the development of the revolution. We must give every assistance to old cadres who have faithfully served the Party and the revolution for a long time, so that they will continue to work well, making full use of their abilities. At the same time, we must take the plunge and promote as cadres young officials who have received Juche education and have been trained in practical work.

An important factor in personnel administration is to revolutionize cadres thoroughly, and to keep on improving their political and practical qualifications.

Understanding people, and selecting and appointing them as cadres is only the first process in personnel administration. If pieces of iron are left in the open air unprotected, they become rusty and useless. In the same way, if people are not educated and trained all the time after their promotion as cadres, they may become ideologically degenerate and finally drop out of the revolutionary ranks. Every cadre must be revolutionized continually, and their revolutionization must be conducted on a higher level than that of the masses. We must continue to work hard to revolutionize cadres so that none of them will become ideologically senile but work faithfully with a high degree of constant loyalty to the Party and the revolution and unflagging revolutionary fighting spirit and enthusiasm.

The improvement of the cadres' political and practical qualifications is an important requirement for increasing our Party's

ability to lead and a determining factor in enabling them to fulfil their duty as the commanders of the revolution. The more intense the revolution and construction become, the more important it becomes to improve the qualifications of cadres.

If cadres are to improve their political and practical qualifications they have to study more. They must establish a revolutionary atmosphere of study and make it their routine, so as to acquire knowledge in many fields, including politics, the economy, culture and military affairs, and become efficient in their work. Senior officials, in particular, must study more. Party organizations must always ascertain how cadres study, and exercise rigid control so that they take their studies seriously.

We must continue to run the one-month training courses, which have already proved effective, so that every cadre will be obliged to attend one course every year. Meanwhile, we must also improve the qualifications of the cadres steadily by methodically re-educating them and by organizing model lectures, and so on, on a wide scale.

In personnel work it is also important to set up a proper cadre training system and train reserve cadres on a long-term basis.

The efficient training of reserve cadres will enable us to satisfy the ever-growing need for cadres and continue to improve the quality of the cadres' ranks. On the one hand, we must examine reserve cadres through practical work and give them systematic training; and on the other hand, we must develop cadre training centres so that we can produce large numbers of cadres with political and practical qualifications.

If the Party ranks are to be consolidated organizationally, they must be trained as an elite.

This means building up the Party ranks with elite revolutionaries. In other words, it means training every Party member to be a Juche-type revolutionary. A Juche-type revolutionary is a real communist who has acquired the best political and ideological qualities and qualifications which are necessary for communists. Developing the Party ranks as an elite is one of the basic requirements for building our Party.

In this respect, it is important to guide all the Party members to work and live in accordance with the Party Rules.

The Party Rules are the Party members' standards of life and their code of conduct. If the Party members follow the rules in their lives and work they will become fine revolutionaries. They must work and live in accordance with the rules and prepare themselves as real revolutionaries of a Juche type and ardent communists.

Another important task in developing the Party ranks as an elite is to train every Party member to attain excellence by building up the ranks of the Party cell hard-core elements and increasing their role.

A revolutionary working-class party is, by its nature, a collective of the progressive elements of this class. But its members do not all have the same level of political and ideological preparedness. Some of them have a high degree of political and ideological preparedness, and others have this quality to a relatively low degree. It is very difficult to train all the members to be revolutionaries of a Juche type, ardent communists, at the same time. Therefore, it is necessary to build up the ranks of cell hard-core elements with competent members first, and enhance their role and increase their ranks steadily until all the members reach a high standard.

In making the Party an elite it is important to deal with the admission of new members correctly.

The efficient recruiting of Party members will enable us to continue to expand the Party ranks with Juche-type revolutionaries and increase the fighting capacity of the Party.

The Party ranks must be enlarged in conformity with its class character and on the revolutionary principles. Competent, hard-core elements of workers, peasants, soldiers and working intellectuals can be admitted to our Party. The Party organizations must keep records of the reserves of Party members chosen from the working class and other sections of the working masses, educate them systematically and enrol new members as soon as they are qualified, according to the procedure of individual admission. In particular, they must enrol many of the younger generation who are strongly armed with the Juche idea, and

who are filled with revolutionary fighting spirit and stamina.

In the process of recruiting Party members we must guard against Right and “Left” tendencies. These are expressed in admitting people to the Party in an unprincipled manner on the pretext of increasing Party ranks, or in closing the door of the Party with the intention of ensuring the purity of its ranks. If we open the door of the Party in an unprincipled manner, we shall be unable to ensure the purity of its ranks; if we close its door, we shall not only be unable to increase its ranks but will also bring about a serious situation by divorcing the Party from the masses. The Party organizations must reject these tendencies and increase the number of Party members regularly on Party and class principles so that qualified people can be enrolled in the Party at the right time.

The work of recruiting Party members must be conducted in such a way that its forces will be posted uniformly in all spheres and at all units of the revolution and construction. This will enable the Party to give effective leadership to the revolution and construction, and to strengthen its ties of kinship with the masses.

In order to strengthen Party ranks organizationally, it is necessary to encourage democracy in the Party and establish revolutionary discipline.

The Party is a voluntary organization of people who share an identical idea and purpose, and the members are masters of the Party. Dictatorship and autocracy cannot be tolerated within the Party, and democracy must be thoroughly guaranteed. It is only when democracy is guaranteed within the Party that its members can take an active part in its work and activities as befits the masters of the Party with a high degree of enthusiasm and initiative.

If we are to give full play to democracy within the Party, we must respect the opinions of the Party members completely and provide them with suitable conditions to exercise their Party rights properly. Party leadership bodies at all levels must be elected on a democratic basis, all questions must be discussed and decided according to the collective will of the Party members, and criticism from subordinates

must be encouraged. These leadership bodies must work under the supervision and control of the Party members and report to them regularly on their work.

The Party is a political force organized to carry out the revolution, and its fighting capacity is derived from its strong sense of organization and discipline. Strict revolutionary discipline within the Party will ensure unity of action within its ranks and stimulate the whole Party to make concerted efforts to forge ahead with the revolution and construction.

Our Party's discipline must be revolutionary discipline to knit all its units and members closely with the bonds of organization and ensure unified leadership by its Central Committee. We must establish a strict organizational discipline, so that all Party organizations and all members follow its organizational principles and regulations, and so that the whole Party acts as one under the unified leadership of its Central Committee.

Party discipline is a discipline which binds all its members equally. There can be no superior or inferior members in the Party, and double standards of discipline cannot be tolerated. Party members have a duty to submit to Party discipline. They must all submit to a single Party discipline, irrespective of their position or merits.

Party discipline can only be maintained and demonstrate its strength on the basis of a high degree of voluntariness on the part of its members. Party members must observe Party discipline willingly and try hard to strengthen it.

Their willingness can be enhanced when it is combined with a strong need. Party organizations must set high standards for all the members in observing Party discipline strictly.

If we are to consolidate the Party ranks organizationally and ideologically we must intensify the Party life of its members.

This is the main link in Party work, ensuring the organizational and ideological consolidation of the Party ranks. An intensified Party life makes it possible for us to train cadres and Party members to be communist revolutionaries of a Juche type who are faithful to the

Party, and to solve every problem successfully in strengthening the Party ranks.

Party life is the political, organizational and ideological life of Party members. It is the utmost honour and prize for people, who are social beings, to become Party members and participate in Party life.

We must strengthen the Party life of the members so that all of them harden themselves organizationally and ideologically.

A Party member cannot live away from the Party organization for even a moment, nor can he preserve his political integrity. He must regard the Party organization as his own mother, respect it and work and live, relying entirely on it, and make every effort to accept its guidance and control. We must encourage Party members to improve their attitude towards organization and acquire the habit of leading their Party life willingly so that they will take an active part in it with enthusiasm, as required by the regulations of Party life.

The Party life of the members is the process of transforming their ideology through constant education and criticism. It is a process of organizational and ideological training to raise their revolutionary spirit. Party spirit, working-class spirit and popular spirit. These form the will to serve the Party, the revolution, the working class and the people faithfully and devotedly. These are noble qualities which Party members must acquire. Members must continue to enhance their revolutionary spirit, Party spirit, working-class spirit and popular spirit through Party life.

In order to strengthen the Party life of the members, Party organizations must organize it properly and guide it well.

The Party organizations should organize and conduct reviews of Party life, Party study and other organizational and ideological activities regularly, and encourage all their members to participate. They must also organize and run Party meetings efficiently on a high political and ideological level. In organizing and conducting the Party's organizational and ideological life it is important to operate the new system of Party life established by our Party in an efficient way. The Party organizations must properly operate the new system, which

is a creative application of the way of Party life of the anti-Japanese guerrillas to suit today's situation, and so revolutionize Party members thoroughly.

The Party organizations must give their members assignments suited to their preparedness, help them in every way to carry out these assignments, review the results promptly and constantly give them new tasks, so that Party members are always working on something. In particular, criticism must be increased so that Party members can lead a Party life in an atmosphere of strong criticism. If we are to encourage strong criticism, we must eliminate mistaken ideas and educate Party members in the spirit of principled criticism.

We must see that Party life is combined with the fulfilment of revolutionary tasks. This means that Party members must lead an organizational and ideological life which centres on what they do to carry out their revolutionary tasks. Party members' revolutionary activities are the process of implementing their revolutionary tasks. For Party members, therefore, there can be no Party life for its own sake, a Party life which is divorced from their revolutionary tasks. The Party organizations must always organize and guide Party life with the main emphasis on encouraging Party members to perform their revolutionary tasks with credit, and must judge their Party life by the result of their endeavours to carry out the revolutionary tasks.

Ideological education must be intensified among cadres and Party members in order to consolidate the Party ranks organizationally and ideologically.

This is the way to educate and reform cadres and other Party members along communist lines and strengthen the Party's unity of ideology and will, and its cohesion. The Party's intensive ideological education can only assist towards achieving success in the organizational consolidation of the Party ranks.

In Party work we must always pay the greatest attention to ideological work and give it absolute priority.

Party ideological work is essentially the work of imbuing the Party and the revolutionary ranks with a single ideology, and of rousing the

Party members and working people to the revolutionary struggle and construction.

The basic task of our Party's ideological work is to speed up the process of modelling the whole of society on the Juche idea by establishing the system of the Party's monolithic ideology amongst Party members and the working people, transforming them after a revolutionary and working-class pattern and encouraging the broad masses to revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity.

We must intensify ideological education amongst Party members and the working people in keeping with the aim and mission of Party ideological work.

Education in the monolithic ideology has always been the main concern of our Party in its ideological work.

The essence of monolithic ideological education is in educating Party members and the working people to be infinitely loyal to the Party. Loyalty to the Party is the noblest quality of communist revolutionaries. We must intensify education in loyalty, and thus establish the system of the Party's monolithic ideology amongst its members and the working people.

The monolithic ideology of our Party is the Juche idea. We must improve education in the Juche idea amongst Party members and the working people so that they all acquire a firm revolutionary world outlook of Juche, and understand the revolutionary theory and leadership method of Juche clearly.

Our Party's line and policies which embody the Juche idea are the correct strategy and tactics of our revolution. They are the guide in all our activities. We must intensify education in Party policy and give all Party members and working people a correct understanding of the essence and validity of Party policy so that they can accept it as their unshakable faith.

The brilliant revolutionary traditions of our Party contain all the ideological and spiritual wealth necessary for training people to be revolutionaries who are infinitely loyal to the Party and the revolution. They provide living examples of the noble qualities of Juche-type

revolutionaries. We must strengthen education in the revolutionary traditions amongst Party members and the working people so that they can arm themselves firmly with the revolutionary traditions of our Party and apply them completely in their work and life.

Revolutionary and communist education constitutes an important part of our Party's ideological work.

Intensive revolutionary and communist education will help Party members and the working people to become revolutionaries who are firm in their revolutionary outlook and who have acquired communist qualities. We must intensify revolutionary and communist education so as to train all Party members and working people to be true communists.

In revolutionary and communist education we must emphasize class education and the inculcation of collectivism, socialist patriotism and communist morality.

The working-class consciousness is the core of the communist ideology, and on this basis the ideological and spiritual qualities of communists are formed and consolidated. We must educate Party members and the working people to acquire strong working-class attitudes, to be infinitely loyal to the revolutionary cause of the working class, to hate imperialism and the exploitative system and to fight doggedly against these two evils. We must especially intensify class education among the younger generation, which has no experience of being exploited and oppressed, and has not gone through the trials of the arduous revolutionary struggle.

Collectivism is the basis of social life under socialism and communism; it is the communists' form of activity. From the ideological point of view, the building of socialism and communism is the process of overcoming individualism and selfishness, and of establishing collectivism. We must intensify education in collectivism amongst Party members and the working people so that they will oppose individualism and selfishness, and value the interests of the collective and society, and work, learn and live under the principle of collectivism—"One for all and all for one".

Socialist patriotism is patriotism for the working class and the other working masses who aspire to socialism and communism. It means love for the socialist homeland where reside the working-class party, the people's power and the socialist system. A person who does not love his country and people cannot be a communist revolutionary. Communists are real patriots. We must inculcate socialist patriotism in the minds of all Party members and other working people so that they will take great national pride in living and working for the revolution in the socialist homeland of Juche under the leadership of our Party, love their country and compatriots ardently, value the cultural heritage and traditions of the nation, and devote everything to the prosperity of the country and its people. Party members and the working people should be educated to value and take good care of state and social property, and manage the collective economy carefully and the economic life of the country properly.

Socialist patriotism is related to proletarian internationalism. Only those who are faithful to the revolutions of their own countries can be faithful to the revolutionary cause of the international working class, and only genuine internationalists can be real patriots. We must educate Party members and the working people so that they will strongly support and encourage the progressive people of the world in their revolutionary struggle for peace and democracy, national independence and socialism, and strengthen friendship and unity with them to fight for global independence and the victory of the world revolution.

Communist moral education must be strengthened amongst Party members and the working people so as to encourage them all to value communist ethics, display revolutionary comradeship, observe public morality and social order, and lead a life commensurate with the socialist way and standards.

Ideological education must be carried on in combination with the ideological struggle against outdated ideas.

The outdated ideas which have become deeply rooted in the minds of the people over a long period are very conservative and stubborn. Outdated ideas can be eliminated successfully by means of tireless

ideological education and a powerful ideological struggle. A powerful ideological struggle against the old ideas must be conducted amongst Party members and the working people to root out all remnants of the outdated ideas from their minds. In addition, we must strictly guard against the infiltration of the virus of reactionary ideologies from outside.

Through ideological and cultural infiltration, the imperialists are now trying to obliterate the national cultures of other countries, paralyze the sound ideological consciousness of the people, and make them decadent and degenerate. We must wage an uncompromising fight against the ideological and cultural penetration of imperialism, and so prevent reactionary bourgeois ideologies being spread by the imperialists and the corrupt capitalist way of life from spreading in our midst.

In order to succeed in the ideological work of the Party, we must define the correct forms and methods of this work, and depend on them in this work.

The basic form of our Party's ideological work is information and motivation work. Information work is an activity to bring the Party's ideas and theories, its lines and policies home to the masses; motivation work is an undertaking to rouse the masses to the struggle to carry out the revolutionary tasks. In the Party's ideological work, information and motivation work should be properly combined, and both of them must be conducted forcefully.

Information work must be perfectly logical, truthful, easy to understand and convincing; motivation work must be impressive and forceful, and be carried on in a flexible way to suit specific situations and occasions. Logical, truthful and plain information work, and appealing, militant and flexible motivation work will achieve the desired results and serve the required purpose.

If we are to succeed in the information and motivation work, we have to establish a well-regulated information and motivation work system, build up strong forces for this purpose and make wide use of various methods and media.

Party organizations must establish networks of education and lecture information properly and operate them in a regular manner. They must also set up a good motivation work system, launching forceful motivation work using different styles and methods.

The press, literature and the arts are powerful means of educating and mobilizing the masses. We must raise the political and ideological quality of the press and create many literary and art works of high ideological and artistic value so that we can use them effectively for information and motivation work.

We must build up the ranks of information workers such as instructors of study groups, public lecturers, motivation workers and members of information troupes, and must enhance their role. Because they educate others, information workers must have wider knowledge than anybody else. Only then can they carry on information and motivation work in an effective way, using plain language. Information workers should try hard to acquire wide and versatile knowledge, and increase their cultural attainments.

It is very important to ensure the unified guidance of the Party Central Committee for ideological work.

Ideological work is work concerned with people's ideology, and so the Party Central Committee should control and guide it in a uniform way. If it does not ensure its unified guidance of ideological work we shall not be able to guarantee the purity of this work or prevent the infiltration of heterodox ideas which are alien to the ideology of our Party. This is an important lesson our Party has learned in its ideological work.

Under the unified guidance of the Party Central Committee, all Party organizations should organize and conduct their ideological work in keeping with the Party's aims and requirements.

In order to consolidate the Party ranks organizationally and ideologically it is imperative to enhance the functions and roles of Party organizations.

The success of Party work in firmly establishing the Party's monolithic ideological system, consolidating its ranks organizationally

and educating cadres and Party members depends entirely on how Party organizations perform their functions and roles. It is only when all Party organizations improve their functions and roles that they can press ahead with the revolution and construction successfully.

With a view to improving the functions and roles of Party organizations, we must form them on a rational basis and build up their leadership bodies.

A party is the organic integrated sum of its organizations. When all its organizations are consolidated and involved in an undivided system as an organic body the party as an organized unit can perform its function satisfactorily.

Party organizations at different levels must be arranged in the appropriate units of administrative districts and production and other work units so that they can strengthen the Party life of their members, and give their guidance to the revolution and construction satisfactorily. In this regard it is particularly important to form the basic Party organizations properly. This will make it possible to strengthen the Party life of the members and consolidate the whole Party. Furthermore, the Party can strike deep roots amongst the masses of the people, and its pulse can reach everywhere the masses live. Therefore, we should always pay particular attention to forming basic Party organizations appropriately to suit the specific conditions of the units concerned.

With the development of the revolution and construction, many new production units will be established and some administrative districts may be reorganized. In keeping with the requirements of the developing situation, Party organizations must be reorganized immediately.

Organizing Party committees at different levels with qualified people is an important guarantee for increasing the role of Party committees as the staff of the units concerned. In forming Party committees at all levels we must do away with the tendency of stressing the positions of their members. In this regard we must combine cadres from different sectors who are completely familiar

with affairs in the relevant sectors in a rational manner with hard-core Party members who work on production sites, under the principle of staffing these committees with workers who are infinitely loyal to the Party, tactful in guidance and popular with the masses. In this way we should ensure that these committees increase their leading role and give full scope to the intelligence and creativeness of grass-roots Party members.

In constituting the Party Central Committee and the provincial, city and county Party committees it is important to implement our Party's idea of the associate alternate member system correctly. This is a system of admitting hard-core Party members who are directly engaged in productive labour to Party committees. This system enables the Party committees to strike their roots deep among the masses so that they can get to know fully how matters stand at lower levels, and so adopt proper measures to carry out Party policies, reflecting the requirements of the masses. Party organizations must pay great attention to admitting hard-core Party members who work on production sites to their Party committees.

In order to increase their functions and roles, the Party organizations at all levels must work satisfactorily in conformity with their positions and duties.

All Party activities can be carried out by Party organizations, and the Party's policies can be implemented correctly only by their unremitting efforts. In developing the activities of Party organizations it is particularly important to increase the role of county Party committees.

The county Party committee is the lowest guiding and executive unit of the Party which gives guidance directly to the basic Party organizations and implements Party policy itself. County Party committees must develop the basic Party organizations in a sound way, supervise and guide their activities every day and give unified guidance to the work of political, economic, cultural, military and all other sectors in the county. They must bring Party policy home to Party members and the working people, and efficiently mobilize them to carry it out.

The basic Party organization is the base of Party life to which Party members belong, and the militant unit which carries out Party policy itself. Increasing its role alone makes it possible to strengthen the Party life of members and improve their vanguard role so as to perform all revolutionary tasks facing the Party successfully.

You all know that the Party cell is the lowest organization of our Party. Its basic task is to organize and guide the Party life of its members. Party cells must work with the main emphasis on organizing and leading their members' Party life correctly as required by Party Rules. They must give their members revolutionary education, and train them organizationally and ideologically through Party life, and lead them to play the vanguard role in the fulfilment of revolutionary tasks.

In enhancing the functions and roles of Party organizations it is important to improve the Party committees' leadership function.

Collective leadership is the main form of activity of Party committees, as well as being a revolutionary method of leadership which relies on the intelligence and efforts of Party members. This leadership makes it possible to eliminate individual subjectivity and arbitrariness in the activities of Party committees and to give full play to the creativity and talents of the broad masses, so as to provide scientific leadership successfully.

Party committees at all levels must make it a strict rule to have collective discussions about the important problems arising in doing Party work and implementing the revolutionary tasks, and conduct all work in accordance with this. They must meet regularly to discuss the items on the work agenda and adopt decisions to satisfy the requirements of the Party and revolution, and in the interests of the masses, demonstrating full democracy, and performing efficient political and organizational work so that the decisions will be implemented correctly.

If Party committees are to fulfil their collective leadership function properly, their members must increase their sense of responsibility and their role. Members must participate in committee work with the

attitude of masters and carry out the Party's decisions and their assignments responsibly. The senior officials of these committees must organize their activities properly, supervise and guide members' performance of Party assignments regularly and set an example in putting their decisions into effect.

In order to stimulate the leading function of Party committees, it is necessary to increase the role of their departments.

These departments have to regularize their work according to their revolutionary functions, and assume responsibility for organizing and performing the work under their charge. On the basis of carrying out their functions creditably, all departments of Party committees must ensure tactful coordination and cooperation among themselves. The departments should consult about work regularly, carry out joint operations and cooperate closely in fulfilling the revolutionary tasks facing the committees.

In increasing the role of these departments it is important to improve the role of the organizational and information departments. The organizational department must regard the guidance of the members' Party life as its main task, and concentrate all its efforts on this. The information department must intensify information and motivation work to re-educate Party members and the working people to become communists of the Juche type who are loyal to the Party and revolution, and to inspire the broad masses to implement Party policy.

#### **4. UNITY AND COHESION BETWEEN THE PARTY AND THE MASSES OF THE PEOPLE**

To achieve unity and cohesion between the party and the masses is an important principle in building a working-class party, and provides a firm guarantee for the strengthening of the party and revolutionary ranks. When it establishes unity and cohesion with the masses and

consolidates its mass foundation the party can attain indestructible power and push the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction ahead successfully, drawing on the inexhaustible strength of the masses.

We have achieved this unity and cohesion creditably through our energetic efforts to implement the principle of Party building in making the Party and the masses a united whole.

To achieve this unity and cohesion it is important to build the party as a mass party of the working people.

It is only when a working-class party becomes a mass party embracing large numbers of the progressive elements of the workers, peasants and working intellectuals that it can strike deep roots amongst the masses as the vanguard representing the interests of the broad masses and form a perfect entity with them.

After liberation we put forward the policy of developing the Communist Party into a mass party of the working people in accordance with the prevailing situation in our country and the needs of the development of the Party itself, and put it into effect successfully within a short time.

Immediately after liberation, there were not many qualified communists in our country. The working class was still young, and the people lacked a correct understanding of communism. In this situation, unless the Communist Party was developed into a mass party, it would be impossible to expand and strengthen the Party forces rapidly and rally the broad masses around it.

The development of the Communist Party into a mass party was also an urgent matter because there was another party to which working people were affiliated at that time. In the northern half of our country after liberation there was the New Democratic Party which working people joined, in addition to the Communist Party, the working-class party. Since this increased the danger of splitting the working masses, it was necessary to inaugurate a mass party representing the interests of the working masses in a single way, with a view to preventing the revolutionary forces from being divided and to

uniting the working masses into a strong political force so as to press ahead with the building of a new country.

The need to build a mass party through the amalgamation of the Communist Party with the New Democratic Party was obvious to everyone. Nevertheless, the factionalists opposed it, claiming that the merger of the Communist Party with the New Democratic Party would reduce it to a petit-bourgeois party and that its guiding ideology would have to be changed.

We rejected the factionalists' moves against the merger sternly, and founded the Workers' Party by amalgamating the Communist and New Democratic Parties in August 1946, to meet the requirements of the development of the Party and the revolution. As a result, our Party was strengthened and developed into a mass party organized from among advanced elements of the workers, peasants and working intellectuals.

We merged the two Parties in such a way that the matter was discussed by their Central Committees first and then submitted for discussion by their lower-echelon organizations at different levels. Then the merger was ensured upwards from the cells. This was an absolutely correct measure which provided a democratic procedure for the organizational fusion of the two Parties.

The merger enabled our Party to strike its roots deep amongst the broad masses and rally the revolutionary forces more closely around it. The inauguration of the Workers' Party prevented a split in the working masses, consolidated the alliance of the workers, peasants and working intellectuals, and increased the role played by the masses of the people in the revolution and construction. This is a striking demonstration of the validity and vitality of the line of building a mass party, and a valuable achievement which is of great importance in the history of the building of our Party.

We put forward the line of building a mass party proceeding from the situation prevailing in our country immediately after liberation and the urgent requirements of our Party's development. But I think that it also meets the needs of the present age, when the broad masses are taking an active part in the struggle for independence, and their

aspirations for socialism and communism are growing keener with the passage of time. It also suits the lawful requirements of social progress in which the social and economic status of the working class, peasantry and working intelligentsia and their interests increasingly converge as the revolution and construction make headway, and solidarity and cooperation between them increase every day.

An important factor in achieving the unity and cohesion between the party and the masses is to establish working people's organizations which are the peripheral organizations of the party, and to increase their functions and role constantly.

The working people's organizations are the mass political bodies of the working people and the party's transmission belts. The working people's organizations educate the different sections of the masses to rally them around the party, and the party establishes ties with the masses through these organizations. Therefore, working people's organizations must be formed and their functions and role steadily increased in order to bring about unity and cohesion between the party and the masses.

In forming working people's organizations it is important to create ones unified by class and social section. When this is done and all members of the relevant classes and social sections are affiliated to them, it is possible to prevent the split of the mass movement and achieve the unity and cohesion of the revolutionary ranks.

After liberation, our Party, drawing on the experience in the building of mass organizations gained during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, put forward the policy of forming working people's organizations according to classes and social sections, and embracing the appropriate ones each as a unified organization. In accordance with the Party's policy we formed these organizations, by class and section, in a short time, and rallied factory and office workers into trade unions, peasants into the Peasants' Union and women into the Women's Union, irrespective of their party affiliations or religious beliefs. In particular, our Party formed the Democratic Youth League and worked hard to unite young people, the future masters of the country.

Immediately after liberation, a number of youth organizations, including the Young Communist League, Students' Union, Liberation Youth League, Young Men's Christian Association and Paegui Youth League, were active in our country. The class enemy tried in every possible way to form reactionary youth leagues and split the youth movement, and each political party also tried to attract young people. If this situation had been left as it was, the youth movement would have split. With a view to preventing the division of the youth movement and rallying young people of all sections and levels under the banner of democracy, our Party dissolved the Young Communist League on its own initiative and organized the Democratic Youth League. The Democratic Youth League was the only political organization of the young people who were active under the leadership of our Party, as a mass youth organization involving young people from all walks of life who had aspirations for democracy. The founding of this league enabled us to unite the broad sections of young people closely around the Party, and to strengthen the unity and solidarity of the youth movement.

Following the formation of working people's organizations, it is important to strengthen and develop them in accordance with the progress of the revolution. New circumstances which had been created as a result of the establishment of the socialist system in our country demanded that the working people's organizations be strengthened and developed to suit the situation. To meet the requirement of the changed conditions, our Party, with the intention of development, dissolved the Peasants' Union, an organization of peasants at the time of private farming, and formed the Union of Agricultural Workers. It also developed the Democratic Youth League into the League of Socialist Working Youth. Moreover, our Party defined the character and tasks of the trade unions in a new way, and improved the organizational system of the Women's Union and reorganized its work programme.

Our Party continued to increase its guidance of the working people's organizations in keeping with their characters.

Since they are political organizations, established and put into

operation by the party, the working people's organizations cannot operate and exist as mass political bodies without party leadership. They are only capable of fulfilling their mission and role under the leadership of the Party.

An important factor in Party guidance of the working people's organizations is to make them organizations which are infinitely loyal to the Party. Their most important mission is to protect and defend the Party. We ensured that the working people's organizations established the monolithic ideological system of the Party firmly within their ranks, and that they defended the Party line and policies resolutely and carried them out.

In giving Party guidance to the working people's organizations, it is also important to encourage them to fulfil their duties properly. Their basic duty is to educate their members, rally them closely around the Party, and mobilize them positively for the revolution and construction. We persuaded these organizations to intensify ideological education and organizational life amongst their members, and to enlist their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activity so as to bring about collective innovations in socialist construction.

If we are to let them discharge their duties properly, their independence has to be increased. This is the main requirement of Party guidance of their work. It is only when they are independent that they can work with their members independently and creatively in accordance with their missions and characters. Our Party has always indicated the correct directions for their work and the means to carry it out, in conformity with their characters, and has ensured that Party bodies boldly entrusted them with work, helped them solicitously and provided them with good working conditions.

Today the peripheral organizations of our Party—the trade unions, LSWY, UAW and Women's Union—have developed into its reliable transmission belts and are efficient in doing their work on their own initiative under its leadership.

In the future we shall have to improve the Party's guidance of the working people's organizations, so as to enable all of them to carry

through their missions better. We must especially increase the function and role of the LSWY organizations, so that young people and children, the reserves of our Party and heirs to the Juche cause, will be trained to become dependable pillars in the building of socialism and communism, and that young people will take the lead in performing difficult, arduous tasks on all fronts of socialist construction.

In achieving unity and cohesion between the party and the masses it is important to conduct united-front work efficiently.

In a class society there are various classes and sections who hold different socio-economic positions and political views from one another, and, accordingly, a number of political parties and social organizations representing their interests are formed and carry out various activities. For a working-class party to form a united front with the political parties and social organizations aspiring for democracy, is of strategic significance in extending and cementing its social foundation, in isolating and weakening the counterrevolutionary forces, and in building up the powerful revolutionary forces.

Immediately after liberation the democratic political parties such as the Democratic Party and the Chongu Party, and a number of social organizations representing the interests of different classes and sections operated in our country. It was an urgent requirement for the development of our revolution in those days that our Party should form a united front with the democratic political parties and social organizations. Therefore, our Party set it as its principal political line to form a united front in league with other patriotic and democratic political parties and social organizations, and, on this basis, found the Democratic People's Republic, and worked hard to implement it.

In establishing a people's government and carrying out democratic reforms, our Party acted on its own initiative jointly with other democratic political parties and social organizations, and, on this basis, formed the Democratic National United Front, a standing organ of the united front, in July 1946. As a result, the united front in the form of an alliance between different political parties and social organizations was organized in the northern half of Korea, and all the patriotic forces

were united closely with our Party as the centre.

Our Party improved the united-front work in keeping with changes in the situation in the country. In coping with the grave situation in which the US imperialists and their stooges were attempting to establish a ruinous separate government to perpetuate the division of the country, our Party formed a united front with all democratic forces in north and south Korea, and relied on it in waging a nationwide campaign against the moves of the US imperialists and their stooges to perpetuate national division. Kim Ku, for example, who had considered communists the enemy at one time, set out, hand in hand with us, on the road of great national unity and national reunification, admiring our Party's great magnanimity and just united-front policy. In conformity with the unanimous will of all the Korean people, our Republic was founded in the nationwide struggle against the machinations of the US imperialists and their stooges to divide the nation.

Our Party formed the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea in June 1949, with a view to uniting into a single democratic force all the progressive political parties, social organizations and patriotic people in north and south Korea, who loved their country and wanted reunification. The democratic front comprised more than 70 political parties and social organizations in the north and the south, except for the party under the direct control of Syngman Rhee.

In stepping up united-front work, our Party consistently adhered to the principles of maintaining its identity and playing the leading role. The working-class party must not lose its identity or abandon positions of principle on the pretext of forming a united front in league with other political parties and social organizations. Our Party adhered to its political position under all conditions and made no concessions or compromises on matters of principle. It improved the work of explaining and propagating its political line among all members of the united front, and always took positive actions in its relations with other political parties and social organizations, leading them to take the right road. In this way, they were inspired to follow our Party with complete faith.

Our Party also maintained the principle of forming the united front

with emphasis on the lower echelons, and, on this basis, promoting it at the higher echelons. This enabled the united-front work to proceed smoothly.

Our Party's experience in united-front work constitutes an extremely valuable asset in the efforts of the democratic political parties, social organizations and people of all walks of life in north and south Korea, and all our compatriots abroad to unite and achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. We must develop the experience of historic significance we gained in the past, when our Republic was founded by the united efforts of all the democratic forces in the north and south, so that we shall form a powerful anti-US, national-salvation united front, under the banner of great national unity, with all democratic political parties, social organizations and people in north and south Korea, and overseas Koreans who love their country and nation, and, on this basis, work harder to accomplish the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, the supreme national task.

In securing unity and cohesion between the party and the masses it is important to work well with people of different sections.

Our Party is the vanguard of the workers, peasants, working intellectuals and other toiling people, and the masses are its social base. Success in work with people of all walks of life is the way to unite the broad masses around the Party and consolidate its social basis.

In order to isolate the handful of reactionaries completely, and win over as many people as possible in accordance with the class and mass lines, our Party improved its work with the masses to suit the characteristics of each class and social section.

Our Party put its first efforts into work with the working class.

The working class is most progressive and revolutionary, and is the leading class of our revolution. It has a high degree of revolutionary awareness, organization and discipline, and plays the role of nucleus in the revolution and construction. It is only when its workers are closely united around it through efficient work with them that our Party will be strengthened and developed on a firm class basis and the work of

assimilating the whole of society to the working class will advance successfully.

Our Party strove to build up the working-class ranks organizationally and ideologically, and to revolutionize them. For the revolutionization of the working class, our Party steadily raised their revolutionary spirit, organization and discipline by increasing the functions and roles of Party organizations in factories and enterprises, and intensifying ideological education and organizational training among them. It paid particular attention to increasing the class consciousness of the workers of the new generation. As a result, the working class became the pillar and cornerstone supporting our Party, and played the vanguard role in the fight to accomplish our Party's revolutionary cause.

Today our working class is advancing vigorously in the van of socialist construction, faithfully supporting the Party's leadership and fulfilling its mission as the leading class of the Korean revolution with credit.

Our Party struck its roots deep in the rural communities, and improved its work with the peasants.

The peasantry is the most dependable ally of the working class and is a part of the main body of our revolutionary forces. When the party rallies the peasants around it through effective work with them, its rural position will grow stronger and the revolutionary ranks will become firmer.

In an effort to rally the peasant masses around itself, our Party showed a great deal of concern about the solution to the peasant problem in each period of the revolution, and put forward the correct class policies for rural communities before carrying them through. In particular, after the peasants were transformed into socialist agricultural working people through the socialist revolution, we improved work among them with the emphasis on promoting the process of revolutionizing them and imbuing them with the working-class spirit by raising their levels of ideological consciousness, and of culture and technology. Party organizations at

all levels worked well with the peasants in keeping with the specific characters of the country areas and with their preparedness, with the result that great progress was made in the efforts to model the peasants on a revolutionary and working-class pattern.

Today the rural position of our Party is solid, and the peasants, as dependable workers for socialist construction, support the Party's policy on building a socialist countryside, and are working hard to implement it.

Our Party has paid a great deal of attention to work with scientists, technicians and other working intellectuals.

The working intelligentsia, like the workers and peasantry, is a component of our Party, and a powerful force of the revolution and construction. Efficient work with intellectuals to unite them around the Party is the way to develop the economy, culture, science and technology quickly to meet the requirements of social progress and successfully intellectualize the whole of society. As the revolution and construction develop to a greater degree, and the role of science and technology increases in social progress, work with intellectuals becomes more important.

An important factor in this matter is to find a correct solution to the problem of the old-time intellectuals who served in the old society. Coming from prosperous families, almost all of our old-time intellectuals had worked in the former exploiter society. As intellectuals in a colony, however, they were subjected to national insult and discrimination, so they harboured anti-imperialist and democratic sentiments. Taking these characteristics into account, our Party adopted a policy of transforming them into intellectuals serving the Party and the working class, and educated them tirelessly. As a result, they were re-educated along socialist lines a long time ago, and the question of dual loyalty of the intelligentsia has been completely resolved.

As the old-time intellectuals have been re-educated along socialist lines and a large number of new ones from among the working people have been trained, our Party has concentrated its efforts on revolutionizing the intellectuals. We gave them revolutionary

education and training by increasing ideological work and strengthening organizational life, and we encouraged them to visit the places where action was taking place to experience the revolutionary influence of the working class. In this way we ensured that they all worked hard to revolutionize themselves thoroughly and serve the Party and the revolution faithfully.

Today our intellectuals, as socialist working intellectuals, are marching forward with confidence along the road indicated by the Party, and are devoting all their energy and talents to carrying out its policies in the political, economic, cultural and all other sectors.

Our Party worked patiently to get the people with dubious socio-political records or with complicated family backgrounds to become its ardent supporters and revolutionary activists.

The peculiarities of our revolutionary development complicated the socio-political composition of our people greatly. Most of those with chequered socio-political records or with involved family backgrounds were people who, though from the basic section of the population, had been used temporarily by the enemy because of their low class consciousness. Their relatives also belonged to the same category as these people. They were not hostile forces who deliberately opposed our revolution; they were people whom our Party had to win over. Winning over these people to the side of the Party and the revolution was very important in consolidating the mass foundation of the Party, increasing the revolutionary forces, and strengthening the politico-ideological unity and cohesion of the whole of society.

In dealing with these people, our Party consistently adhered to the principle of assessing each person mainly on his present ideology and behaviour, and winning over even one more person to the side of the Party and the revolution. A person's social origin means his ideological make-up. It will change as his social background and his social and economic status change. Even a person who has a complicated origin will become good when society develops and he is given revolutionary education.

Our Party did not judge people by examining their family

backgrounds and antecedents alone but with the main emphasis on their present state of thought. It trusted and embraced them boldly, and educated them positively. As for those who believed in and followed the Party, and worked enthusiastically, we did not discriminate against them in socio-political activities, but boldly assigned them to revolutionary tasks, and assessed the results of their work and their achievements fairly. This enabled them to work well with a high degree of pride in being dignified masters of our society and with optimism for their own future, dedicating themselves to the revolution and construction.

Our Party won over the people with complicated backgrounds to its side and the side of the revolution through positive education, and turned the whole of society into one large, cheerful and harmonious family. Our Party's experience shows that any people, with the exception of die-hard reactionaries, can be re-educated if they are trusted magnanimously and given constant education.

Work with people of all sectors and levels is still an important task today, when the revolution and construction have reached a very high stage. We must thoroughly revolutionize every member of society and assimilate them to the working class by working harder with people from all walks of life to meet the requirements of the developing revolution.

The mass line must be implemented in the Party's activities in order to achieve the firm unity and cohesion between the Party and the masses of the people.

Our Party's mass line is to defend the interests of the masses in the revolution and construction and to solve all problems arising therefrom by increasing their role.

Ever since the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we have considered it to be the most important revolutionary rule to defend the interests of the masses and to rely on them to settle every issue, and implemented the mass line thoroughly. Even after winning power, we paid particular attention to this.

If we are to carry out the mass line, we must protect the interests of the masses.

For the party to defend the working masses' interests means that it

respects their aspirations for independence and requirements in the revolution and construction, and works hard to realize them. The defence of the working masses' interests provides an effective guarantee for strengthening the bonds between them and the party, and for laying the firm mass base of the revolution.

The ties between the party and the masses are formed on the basis of the trust which the masses have for the party, and this trust is founded on the party's people-oriented policy. If it violates the interests of the masses or pursues a policy which goes against their inclinations, the party cannot enjoy their trust, and, accordingly, will fail to form close bonds of kinship with the masses and to win them over to the side of the revolution.

Our Party set the defence of the working masses' interests as the highest principle in its activities, and has always protected them and devoted everything to the well-being of the people. It took account of the people's needs as a matter of priority whenever it took any decision, and it considered the comfort of the people first even when it built a factory. Immediately after liberation, when the country was facing a very difficult situation with regard to steel, we destroyed the induction furnace of the Songjin Steel Plant in consideration for the health and safety of its workers. Every policy of our Party has been in the people's interests and well-being. That is why our people trust our Party completely with their destiny and fight on against all odds when it calls on them. The Party works for the good of the people and they trust and follow it. Herein lies the source of our indestructible force and the firm guarantee of every victory.

In order to implement the mass line it is imperative to enhance the role of the working masses in the revolution and construction.

This means giving free rein to the creative force and revolutionary zeal of the masses in order to solve all problems of the revolution and construction. When the creative force and intelligence of the working masses are properly harnessed it is possible to reach a satisfactory solution to any difficult problem, and gain victory in the revolution and construction.

Our Party has always enhanced the creative role of the masses of the people to carry out the enormous tasks of the revolution and construction, and has relied on their strength in overcoming the difficulties and trials which it encountered. It mobilized everyone to carry out the social revolution in different periods with credit, and it fulfilled the historic task of socialist industrialization successfully in a short time. By depending on the strength of the masses we overcame the grim trial of the Fatherland Liberation War and foiled the desperate attacks of the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists in the postwar period. All the victories and successes we achieved in the revolution and construction were the valuable results of our people's creative efforts.

We must continue to adhere to the revolutionary mass line and carry it through. We must follow the lines and policies which meet the requirements for independence and aspirations of the masses, and under no circumstances should we allow their interests to be violated. In addition, we must make them a strong political force, and enlist their creative intelligence and revolutionary enthusiasm in solving every problem.

## **5. THE PARTY'S LEADERSHIP IN THE REVOLUTION AND CONSTRUCTION**

The working-class party is the General Staff of the revolution. The future of the revolution and construction depends entirely on the leading role of the party, and the party's leadership is the main factor in the victory of the revolution and construction.

The party must guide the revolution and construction correctly. Strengthening the party ranks organizationally and ideologically, and rallying the broad masses around it to consolidate the revolutionary ranks are also ways of carrying out the revolution and construction

efficiently. Providing leadership for the revolution and construction is an important task of the working-class party.

The party's leadership of the revolution and construction is political leadership.

In essence, the party's political leadership is to guide the revolution and construction in accordance with its policy, and to lead the people by rousing them to activity through political work. The party must set a target and orientation for the revolution and construction, inspire the masses to implement the revolutionary tasks through political work, work with people, and supervise and lead them so that its line and policies are carried out correctly. The party is a political organization which educates people and mobilizes them. Therefore, it can only lead the revolution and construction by the party method, the political method, and not by administrative methods of giving commands and instructions.

Since it was founded, our Party has given correct leadership to the revolution and construction in our country and, in the course of this, has achieved valuable success and experience.

If the party is to lead the revolution and construction efficiently, it must plan and announce correct lines and policies, and skilfully organize and guide the struggle for their implementation.

The lines and policies of the party are the strategy and tactics of the revolution and construction, and the guides for action. When the party plans and states them correctly, the revolution and construction can proceed successfully in the correct direction and by correct methods.

Our Party worked out every line and policy independently, in conformity with the prevailing conditions in our country. Every line and policy put forward by our Party from immediately after liberation until now has been elaborated strictly on the basis of its faith and independent judgment, and in conformity with the situation in our country.

In laying down its line and policies, our Party particularly guarded against subjectivity. If the party becomes subjective in this, the consequences will be serious. If the line and policies are worked out in

a subjective way without considering the aspirations of the people and the prevailing conditions, they will not be acceptable to the masses, and, accordingly, they will not be carried out as they should be. Our Party has always gone deeply amongst the masses, understood their aspirations and needs accurately, analysed their conditions in a comprehensive way, and, on this basis, worked out its lines and policies to suit them. This is why all our Party's lines and policies have become the correct guide for the revolution and construction, and their powerful motive force.

Our Party not only worked out its lines and policies correctly but also organized and guided the work of their implementation properly.

The party's lines and policy can only be carried out successfully when the masses accept them as their own and try to implement them willingly. Our Party has widely publicized its policy amongst its members and other working people so that they can accept it as their own through understanding its essence and reasonableness, and how it should be implemented. Furthermore, it has enlisted the united efforts and creative intelligence of the masses widely in implementing the Party's policy through efficient organizational and political work.

An important task in the party's leadership of the revolution and construction is to solve the question of power properly, and, on this basis, to press ahead with the revolutionary struggle and construction.

The problem of power is the main problem in the revolution. The revolution is a struggle for independence, and independence is guaranteed by the state power. When the working-class party solves the power problem correctly, it can make the masses true masters of the state and society, and succeed in solving all the problems arising in the revolution and construction by relying on the inexhaustible strength of the masses.

Since the problem of power is very important, we set out to solve it immediately after liberation. Our Party's struggle to solve the question of power was very complicated and difficult. The division of our country by the US imperialists' occupation of south Korea after liberation and the mischief of the Right and "Left" opportunists who

crawled into the revolutionary ranks created many obstacles to the efforts of our Party to solve this problem. At that time the Right-wing capitulationists claimed that a bourgeois republic had to be set up in our country, while the “Leftists” insisted that a soviet government be established immediately to carry out the socialist revolution. Both of these were mistaken views which disregarded the objective requirements of social development in our country.

During the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we had already made a scientific analysis of the task of our revolution, and of the social and class relations in our country. On the basis of this, we set forth the Juche-motivated line of establishing power—a people’s government based on the worker-peasant alliance led by the working class, which relies on a united front of the broad masses. This line was put into practice in the guerrilla areas, and it proved to be valid.

After liberation, basing itself on the line of building the people’s government proposed during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and the valuable experience in the struggle to implement it, our Party successfully smashed every obstructive action of our enemies, both internal and external, and set up the people’s government, thus satisfactorily solving the problem of power.

Our people’s government is a Juche-motivated power which is chosen, established and run by ourselves in conformity with our own conditions in order to meet the requirements of the Korean revolution and the aspirations of the working masses. It is a truly democratic government which represents and defends the interests of all the people including the working class. It is also a genuinely popular government which is rooted in the broad masses and has close ties with them.

With the foundation of the people’s government our people became true masters of the state and society, with power in their hands for the first time in their history. In this government they came to acquire a powerful weapon for the revolution and construction.

Our Party strengthened the people’s government and continued to improve its function and role in accordance with the requirements of

the developing revolution. Thus, the people's government which emerged as a people's democratic dictatorship carried out the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution, and was strengthened and developed into a proletarian dictatorship in the period of transition to socialism.

Under the leadership of our Party the people's government has fulfilled its mission well as a weapon of the revolution and construction, and has satisfactorily provided an independent and creative life for the masses, the masters of the state and society.

Our people's government is, indeed, a most superior government which is suited not only to the stages of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution and of the socialist revolution but also the period of building socialism and communism.

Our Party has led the revolution and construction correctly, using the people's government as a weapon.

After liberation we were faced with the task of carrying out the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution. Our Party set this as its immediate fighting programme and worked hard to implement it.

The most important task in carrying out the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution was to solve the land problem. The correct solution of this problem would eliminate the economic basis of the reactionary forces who had settled in the rural areas, free the peasants from feudal exploitation and oppression, and develop the agricultural productive forces rapidly. Taking into consideration the class relations and the ownership of land in our rural areas as well as the centuries-old desire of the peasants for land, our Party correctly defined which land should be confiscated, and carried out agrarian reform in such a way as to confiscate the landlords' land and distribute it free to the landless peasants or to those who had little land. In order to ensure victory in agrarian reform we adopted the class policy of relying on the hired and poor peasants, allying ourselves with the middle peasants and isolating the rich peasants. We also inspired the peasant masses with revolutionary enthusiasm and strengthened the working-class guidance and assistance for the peasantry. In this way,

we completed the historic task of agrarian reform to the letter in less than one month.

Following agrarian reform, our Party nationalized the key industries and enforced other democratic reforms to ensure full democratic freedom and rights for the working people, thereby successfully fulfilling the task of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution and consolidating the revolutionary democratic base in the northern half of Korea.

It is axiomatic in the developing revolution that the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution led by the working class changes into the socialist revolution.

The situation created in our country after the war demanded that we proceed with the socialist revolution. Following the requirements of the prevailing situation, our Party put forward the line of promoting the socialist revolution on a fully-fledged scale in the April 1955 Theses.

Introducing the individual peasant economy into the cooperative is one of the main tasks of the socialist revolution. After the war our Party took into account the specific conditions in our country, advanced the policy of reorganizing the economic forms along socialist lines prior to the technical transformation of agriculture, and launched the agricultural cooperative movement.

At that time the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists opposed our Party's policy of agricultural cooperation, saying that it was "premature" to organize agricultural cooperatives when industry had not been developed and modern farm machinery was not available. Of course, it was true that the development of our productive forces and technology was not high. But agricultural cooperativization is not something which can only be done after industrialization. When circumstances urgently need the reorganization of the old production relations and there are sufficient revolutionary forces to tackle it, agricultural cooperativization must be introduced without delay, although the development of the productive forces and technology is comparatively low.

In leading the agricultural cooperative movement our Party ensured

that the voluntary principle was strictly observed. In this movement we rejected coercive methods and provided an experimental stage to show the peasants the superiority of the cooperative economy by practical example while strengthening their ideological education so that they could join the cooperatives voluntarily. In addition, taking into consideration the differences in the peasants' property status and ideological preparedness, we defined various forms of agricultural cooperatives and encouraged the peasants to choose whichever they preferred.

In admitting peasants of different backgrounds to the cooperative economy on the voluntary principle, our Party enforced the class policy of relying firmly on the poor peasants, strengthening the alliance with the middle peasants, and restricting the activities of the rich peasants and gradually reforming them.

Thanks to our Party's unique policy and active guidance, the agricultural cooperative movement in our country proceeded very smoothly, and was completed successfully in a short period of four to five years.

In addition to agricultural cooperativization, the socialist transformation of private trade and industry is an important task of the socialist revolution. In transforming private trade and industry along socialist lines, our Party considered the characteristics of capitalist trade and industry in our country, and followed the policy of reforming capitalist traders and industrialists, instead of expropriating them. It succeeded in the socialist transformation of private trade and industry by way of involving them in various forms of the cooperative economy.

With the successful completion of the socialist transformation of the old production relations in both urban and rural areas, an advanced socialist system free from exploitation and oppression was established in the northern half of our country.

After the triumph of the socialist revolution and the establishment of the socialist system, the three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural—became the main revolutionary task.

Even after the establishment of the socialist system, remnants of the obsolete society linger in the fields of ideology, technology and culture; this is why various differences such as class and labour distinctions remain in socialist society. As long as the remnants of the old society exist and differences in social life remain, the people's full independence cannot be said to have been ensured, even though the socio-political independence of the masses has been realized by the socialist revolution.

The independence of the masses can only be fully guaranteed when the legacies of the old society have been liquidated, and to eliminate these legacies the revolution must continue even in the socialist society. The three revolutions are a campaign to sweep away the remnants of the old society which remain in the main spheres of social life—ideological, labour and cultural—and to create a new communist ideology, technology and culture. Only through the vigorous three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural—is it possible to free the working people, who have already been freed from exploitation and subjugation, from the shackles of outdated ideology, technology and culture, and to provide full independence for the masses.

Our Party defined the three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural—as the main content of the revolution to be carried out in socialist society after the establishment of the socialist system, as revolutions which must be continued until communism has been built. It has promoted these three revolutions vigorously.

Our Party has adhered to the principle of giving absolute priority to the ideological revolution in carrying out the three revolutions. This is the most correct policy, which is based on a scientific analysis of the role of ideological consciousness in deciding people's actions and the importance of ideological work in the revolutionary struggle.

The ideological revolution is, essentially, the work of transforming people into real communist revolutionaries by imbuing every member of society with the revolutionary and working-class spirit: it is political work to increase the revolutionary zeal and creativity of the working people. Our Party ensures that ideological education and ideological

struggle are strengthened among Party members and the working people, and that they are continually trained and educated in a revolutionary way through organizational life. In addition, the Party is carrying on the ideological revolution in combination with practical revolutionary activities so that all the working people will temper themselves still further in the process of implementing their revolutionary tasks.

The technical revolution is an undertaking to improve the material well-being of the people, eradicate the essential differences in labour and relieve the working people from toil by developing the productive forces. This revolution is not merely a practical task of developing technology but is an important political task to free the working people, who have been emancipated from exploitation and oppression, from the shackles of nature. In order to accomplish the technological revolution, our Party is paying particular attention to enhancing the sense of responsibility and role of scientists and technicians, and to achieving creative cooperation between the workers and the scientists and technicians, and is launching a campaign for technical innovation on a mass scale.

The cultural revolution is a campaign to end the cultural backwardness left by the old society, and to create a socialist and communist culture. Its main task is to intellectualize the whole of society. In order to succeed in the cultural revolution, our Party put forward the line of building a socialist national culture, and is carrying it out in all fields of cultural development including education, science, literature and the arts.

With a view to strengthening its guidance of the three revolutions to meet the demands of the developing revolution, our Party initiated the three-revolution team movement and formed three-revolution teams with hard-core Party members and young intellectuals, and sent them to different branches of the national economy. This movement is an efficient way of giving revolutionary leadership to accelerate the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions. It is done by linking political and ideological leadership with scientific and

technical guidance, getting superiors to help their subordinates, and encouraging the working masses. We are pushing ahead with the three-revolution team movement so as to speed up the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions.

The validity and vitality of the three-revolution line have been fully confirmed in practice.

We must continue to maintain the momentum of the three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural—as the general line of socialist and communist construction, and strengthen our guidance so as to advance them. In this way we will transform every facet of social life along communist lines.

An important factor in the party's leadership of the revolution and construction is to strengthen its guidance of economic construction.

Economic construction is one of the most important revolutionary tasks facing the working-class party in power. Efficient economic construction will make it possible to enrich the country, achieve highly developed productive forces and steadily improve the people's material and cultural standards. It will also guarantee the country's political sovereignty and independence, and increase our defence capability. That is why the work of the party in power must always be integrated with the implementation of economic assignments, and all its activities must be geared towards effective economic construction.

Since the very first days after it won power, our Party has worked hard to develop the nation's economy rapidly and to increase its might.

Our Party put forward the line of building an independent national economy, applying the Juche idea in economic construction, and has correctly guided its implementation.

Building an independent national economy means building an economy which stands on its own feet and serves the interests of one's own people. An independent national economy is a comprehensive economy which is operated by one's own efforts, developed comprehensively and equipped with modern technology: it is a people-oriented economy which meets virtually all the needs for economic construction and the people's lives by domestic production.

In the building of an independent national economy, our Party has held fast to the basic line of economic construction, a line of giving priority to the development of heavy industry while simultaneously developing light industry and agriculture. Our Party's basic line of economic construction is a correct line based on a proper estimation of the lawful requirements and real possibilities of our economic development; it is a revolutionary line which is helping to hasten the successful building of an independent national economy.

Because we firmly maintained the line of giving priority to the growth of heavy industry while at the same time developing light industry and agriculture, we were able to heal our severe war wounds, lay a solid foundation for an independent national economy in a short time and turn our once-backward agricultural country into a powerful socialist industrial state.

Making the national economy Juche-orientated, modern and scientifically-based is an important task in building an independent socialist national economy. When we accelerate the implementation of this task so as to guarantee the independence of the national economy, continue to modernize its technical equipment and put all production on a scientific basis, we can build solid material and technical foundations for socialism and communism. We have directed our main efforts at making the national economy Juche-oriented while pressing ahead with the work of placing it on a modern and scientific basis at the same time, thereby achieving great success in socialist economic construction.

In the future, too, we must adhere to the basic line of economic construction of giving priority to the development of heavy industry while simultaneously ensuring the growth of light industry and agriculture, and work hard to make the national economy Juche-orientated, modern and scientifically-based.

An important task of the working-class party in speeding up economic construction after the establishment of the socialist relations of production, is to solve the problem of economic management correctly. The correct solution to this in conformity with the

characteristics of a socialist society will demonstrate the advantages of the socialist system in all respects, consolidate the socialist economic foundation and increase production rapidly.

Our Party solved the problem of economic management brilliantly by creating the Taean work system in conformity with the characteristics of socialist society and the requirements of the developing situation.

The Taean work system is an economic management system whereby factories and enterprises carry on all their management activities under the collective leadership of Party committees, give priority to political work and encourage the producer masses to perform their economic assignments, and whereby superiors help their subordinates in a responsible manner. The essence of this system lies in the fact that the revolutionary mass line is embodied in economic management. Herein lies the strength of the Taean work system.

In addition to the industrial management system, our Party established a new system of agricultural guidance and a scientific planning system, and ensures that all economic guidance organs give priority to political work as required by the Taean work system, organize economic work scrupulously and make good use of socialist economic laws and various economic levers so as to operate and manage the economy in a scientific and reasonable way.

In accordance with the Taean work system, our Party is leading all Party committees to play the role of efficient helmsmen in directing economic work. By Party committees' role of helmsmen in economic work I mean defining the direction and ways of implementing Party policies and adopting correct decisions on the basis of collective discussion in Party committees, and giving political backing so that Party members and other working people are mobilized for their thorough implementation. In other words, it means giving guidance to economic work by indicating its direction and methods on the basis of Party policies. This role of Party committees makes it possible to provide satisfactory Party leadership for administrative and economic work, and further enhance the independence and the responsibility of

economic organizations. Party committees at all levels must implement the Party's economic policy thoroughly by steering economic work skilfully.

An important part of party leadership of the revolution and construction is the building of revolutionary armed forces and the exercising of party leadership over them.

Revolution confronts counterrevolution by means of force. The revolution and construction proceed amidst fierce class struggle against imperialists, local reactionaries and other class enemies. If revolution is to defeat counterrevolution and defend the cause of socialist and communist construction against imperialist aggression and reactionary subversion it is imperative to establish revolutionary armed forces.

An important factor in building the revolutionary armed forces is to make them the party's armed forces, infinitely faithful to the party and the revolution.

Fidelity to the party is the life and soul of the revolutionary armed forces. Their basic mission is to defend the party and protect its revolutionary cause. In order to make them the party's armed forces faithful to their mission it is necessary to consolidate their ranks by enlisting the sons and daughters of the workers, farmers and other working people with the party's hard core as their backbone, and to provide complete party leadership for the military sector.

The basic principle which must be followed consistently in building the revolutionary armed forces is to introduce self-reliance into defence. Self-reliant defence means defending the country and nation by one's own strength. Every problem arising in the revolution and construction should be tackled with one's own strength. It is particularly important for the country to be able to defend itself without outside help. It is true that one can also receive aid from fraternal countries in national defence. However, one cannot defend one's country by relying on others, and foreign aid does not have any effect if one is weak. In national defence the basic factor must always be one's own strength.

Our Party has worked hard to build the revolutionary armed forces on the revolutionary principle of self-reliance.

A regular army is the main component of the revolutionary armed forces and plays the leading role in a just, revolutionary war. Building a regular army was essential for the establishment of a fully independent and sovereign state after liberation; it was also important and urgent in view of the prevailing situation in our country. Therefore, we pushed ahead with the building of the regular army, in addition to founding the Party and the people's government.

One important task in building the regular army was to train competent military and political cadres. Without such cadres it would have been impossible to build the regular army or to increase its capabilities. Giving priority to the training of military and political cadres above all other work in building the regular army was where we concentrated our main efforts. In order to solve the problem of providing the cadres necessary for building the regular army by ourselves, we set up the Pyongyang Institute and the Central Security Officers School in spite of all our difficulties immediately after liberation, and trained large numbers of military and political cadres of worker and peasant origin. On the basis of this preparation and the experience gained in building the revolutionary armed forces in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we changed the Korean People's Revolutionary Army into the People's Army, a regular armed force which is a staunch defender of the Party and the revolution.

The defence of the nation is also an undertaking for the people and by the people. If all the people unite rock-solid to defend the nation they will be perfectly able to defeat any aggressors. We formed the Worker-Peasant Red Guards and other militia forces, and continued to increase their combat capability.

Our Party set forth the military line the main content of which was to make the entire army a cadre army, modernize it, put all the people under arms and turn the whole country into a fortress. Through the implementation of this line, we strengthened our People's Army to be a

one-match-for-a-hundred revolutionary army, equipped all the people militarily and turned the whole country into an impregnable fortress.

In order to achieve defence self-reliance we must combine economic construction properly with defence building.

Of course, the important task of building a new society is the successful building of the economy. But we must not neglect defence building and concentrate only on economic construction. An independent, sovereign state must press ahead with both economic construction and defence building, and combine them well, as required by the situation.

Our Party has always paid particular attention to the building of the economy and defence, and, when the enemy's aggressive actions became particularly blatant and the danger of war imminent it set forth the line of carrying on economic construction simultaneously with defence building, and directed extra effort to defence building. In this way, we have constantly strengthened the material and technical foundation of the defence industry so that we can produce weapons and other combat equipment to meet our needs.

The military and political situation prevailing in our country at present demands that we continue to strengthen our revolutionary armed forces. We must increase these armed forces in every way to deal with the prevailing situation and make full preparations to be ready for an outbreak of war at any moment through the start by the enemy.

The working-class party must pursue its external activities and provide uniform guidance for the foreign affairs of the country.

The revolution in each country is a link in the whole chain of world revolution, and the working-class party in each country is a unit of the international communist movement. The revolutionary struggle of each country's party and people develops amidst international support and encouragement, and the victory of the world revolution will be gained by the joint efforts of different parties and peoples all over the world.

The working-class party must intensify its external activities and

ensure uniform guidance of the foreign affairs of the country correctly so that it can make the international situation favourable to the revolution in its own country and discharge its duty to the world revolution.

The underlying idea consistently maintained by our Party in foreign activities is independence, friendship and peace. Our Party has applied the idea of independence, friendship and peace to mapping out its foreign policy and, in accordance with this, conducted foreign activities and given correct leadership to government bodies and social organizations in their external affairs.

It is very important to hold fast to independence in foreign relations. We have shaped all our foreign policies independently in the interests of our people and as required by the revolution, dealt with all problems arising in international relations according to our own judgment and conviction, and developed our relations with other parties and countries on the principles of complete equality and mutual respect.

We have worked tirelessly to strengthen the unity and cooperation of the socialist forces and the international communist movement.

The socialist forces and the international communist movement are the most powerful revolutionary forces of our time and a decisive factor in developing history. We have always paid particular attention to consolidating friendly ties with the socialist countries. The socialist countries are class brothers who are fighting for common aims and ideas. We have done everything in our power to strengthen unity with the socialist countries, and develop friendly and cooperative relations with them, under the banner of Marxism-Leninism and proletarian internationalism.

Even when differences occurred between socialist countries we encouraged them to try for unity but did not do anything detrimental. We maintain that the socialist countries should, first, oppose imperialism; second, support the national-liberation movements in colonies and the working-class movement in all countries; third, continue to advance towards socialism and communism; and fourth, join with each other on the principles of noninterference in each other's

internal affairs, mutual respect, equality and mutual benefit, putting aside the differences between them even when these exist, if they observe these four principles.

Thanks to our tireless efforts, friendly and cooperative relations between our country and other socialist countries are now developing favourably on a new, higher plane.

Our Party has settled all problems arising in its relations with other Communist and Workers' Parties through contacts and negotiations in the spirit of mutual understanding and comradely cooperation, thus contributing greatly to strengthening the unity and cohesion of the international communist movement.

We are working hard to strengthen the Non-Aligned Movement and develop friendly and cooperative relations with the Third World countries. On the basis of the fundamental principles of non-alignment and the noble idea of independence against imperialism, we are consolidating friendship and unity with the non-aligned countries and the Third World countries, and are conducting wide economic and technical cooperation and cultural exchanges with them.

We have established good relations with the capitalist countries which respect our national sovereignty and are friendly towards our country, and are developing economic and cultural exchanges with them.

It is the noble internationalist duty of our Party and people to support and encourage the efforts of the struggling peoples. We are giving all possible help to the oppressed peoples' national-liberation struggles in colonies, supporting the working class and other working people in capitalist countries in their struggle for democratic freedom and class emancipation, and are resolutely supporting and encouraging the peoples of all countries in their struggles against imperialism and for independence.

Our Party is fighting for lasting peace and security throughout the world.

In company with the peace-loving people of the world, our Party and people are fighting resolutely against imperialist acts of war and aggression, and are striving to remove the danger of war and preserve

peace, particularly on the Korean peninsula and in other parts of Northeast Asia.

In the future, too, our Party will continue to develop unity and friendly and cooperative relations with socialist and non-aligned countries, and all other progressive countries of the world under the unfurled banner of independence, friendship and peace, so as to steadily consolidate international solidarity with our revolution.

## **6. THE PARTY'S ART OF LEADERSHIP**

Establishing the art of leadership is very important for party building and party activities, and particularly for leading the masses. However correct the party lines and policies, if party organizations and officials do not acquire the right art of leadership, they cannot organize and mobilize the masses properly or carry out party lines and policies successfully.

The art of leadership is a party's way of acting and its leadership ability in activating and guiding the organizations and the masses. It is only when a working-class party has an adroit and refined art of leadership that it can become a militant vanguard, and organize and mobilize the broad masses forcefully in the revolution and construction.

From the first days of the revolution until today, we have guided arduous and complex revolution and construction through a number of stages, and in the process of this have created a revolutionary and popular leadership art, and applied it to Party activities.

Our Party's art of leadership is that of Juche, which is based on the Juche idea and embodies the revolutionary mass line.

Our Party's art of leadership consists chiefly of the revolutionary work system, and revolutionary and popular work methods and styles.

For a party to perform its leading function correctly, it must

establish its own revolutionary work system.

The party work system is an order and system for organizing and conducting its work and activities. It is only when a revolutionary order and system of work has been completely established within a party that it can be an integral combat force which acts as one in accordance with uniform rules and discipline, and ensure its leadership of the revolution and construction.

In the light of the character and mission of a working-class party, its work system must be one which absolutely guarantees the uniformity of the party's ideology and leadership; it must be a work system that can encourage the masses' revolutionary zeal and creativity to the highest degree by working well with them. Our Party established its revolutionary work system by meeting this principled requirement.

An important aspect of our Party's work system is, above all, the revolutionary system and order whereby the whole of the Party acts as one under the monolithic leadership of its Central Committee.

The Party Central Committee represents the will of its entire membership and functions as the Supreme General Staff of the revolution. The party's ideology and leadership are, in the final analysis, carried into effect through the leading function of its Central Committee. Our experience shows that it is only when a revolutionary system and order whereby all the Party organizations and members act under the monolithic leadership of the Party Central Committee has been thoroughly established that the unity of the Party ranks in ideology, will and action can be achieved, and the revolution and construction advanced with success.

In order to make the whole Party act as one under the monolithic leadership of the Party Central Committee we must establish a well-regulated work system in the Party whereby Party lines and policies and the decisions and instructions of the Party Central Committee are precisely and rapidly passed on to all cadres and other Party members and working people, and whereby the lines and policies of the Party are unconditionally accepted and carried out by them. At the same time, we must establish centralized discipline and order to

concentrate important matters of principle arising in Party work and activity in the Party Central Committee, and deal with them according to its decisions. If Party organizations of different levels do not quickly report important matters to their Central Committee but dispose of them arbitrarily, it will cause disorder and confusion in Party activities and prevent the whole Party from acting as a single organism.

The second important factor in our Party's work system is getting all its committees to guide every activity in a coordinated way as the highest leadership bodies of their respective units.

They exercise this function under the leadership of the Party Central Committee. This will ensure unitary and uniform Party guidance for the revolution and construction, and efficiently organize the creativity of Party organizations and the masses in the implementation of the Party's lines and policies. Therefore, from the first days of its founding as a ruling party, our Party has upheld the policy of realizing its overall leadership and has carried it through in conformity with the development of the revolution and construction.

In order to establish their unified leadership system, Party committees of different levels must understand and lead all state and economic organs, cooperative organizations, educational and cultural bodies and social organizations in their respective units. The Party committees formed in provinces, cities, counties and other fields and units, as the highest leadership bodies of those areas and units, must sponsor and uniformly guide all the work done in those units. Meanwhile, officials and Party members in all fields and units must rely absolutely on the Party committees concerned, and conduct all work as collectively discussed and decided upon by these committees.

The third important aspect of our Party's work system is that the Party Central Committee and every other Party organization must understand and lead the organizations under them systematically.

Bringing leadership close to the subordinate units is our Party's traditional principle of leadership and work order. It is only when order is established in the work of higher Party organizations, which makes it possible to understand and lead the subordinate ones, that the whole

Party can work to fulfil the intentions of its Central Committee, and the function and role of all Party organizations can be enhanced steadily.

It is important for higher Party organizations to understand and control the work of the lower ones. Otherwise, it is impossible to plan and carry out Party work properly and provide specific guidance to lower Party organizations. Therefore, the higher Party organizations must inspect the lower ones' situations and activities regularly and systematically, and control them.

In order to understand and lead the lower Party organizations well, it is necessary for officials to visit them regularly. Officials from higher Party organizations must visit lower Party organizations at regular intervals, investigate their implementation of Party policies and give them the necessary guidance. Then they must come back to review the matter, and reorientate and replan the work before going back and inspecting them again.

The main purpose of Party officials visiting subordinate units is to help the lower Party organizations. Therefore, the higher Party organization officials must mainly give positive assistance to the lower Party organizations to enable them to do their work well, at the same time as working properly to understand and control their work.

Intensive guidance of lower Party organizations is a positive and revolutionary method of guiding their activities. The Party Central Committee and other Party organizations of different levels, while giving regular guidance to lower Party organizations, must arrange and conduct intensive guidance and inspection of the Party organizations in definite fields and units according to plan. The intensive guidance systematically carried out by the Party Central Committee for local Party organizations and various spheres has a great effect on enhancing the function and role of Party organizations.

If a party is to fulfil its leading function properly it has to establish a revolutionary party work method.

This is particularly important for a ruling party. Since it has power, the ruling party's officials are apt to work bureaucratically, issuing commands and orders, relying on the party's power, instead of on the

masses. In the past, in the case of our Party, too, there were many instances in which officials were alienated from the masses and behaved bureaucratically as they wielded Party authority. They were not firmly equipped with a revolutionary world outlook and had had no experience of working with the masses in difficult circumstances. Therefore, our Party declared that it was essential in party building to establish a revolutionary party work method, and carried out a vigorous campaign to stamp out officials' obsolete work method and apply its own traditional work method.

Our Party's traditional work method was created during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. Under the extremely difficult circumstances of this struggle we conducted underground and armed campaigns, and in the course of this created the revolutionary work method to solve all problems by mixing with the masses and relying on their creativity. We created the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method in the stage of building socialism by applying and developing the traditional work method established in the period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle to suit the new situation of socialist construction.

In brief, our Party's work method is a Juche work method. It is a revolutionary one which makes the masses uphold their position as masters of the revolution and construction, and fulfil this role.

In our Party's work method it is most important to keep political work ahead of all other work at all times.

Giving priority to political work is a revolutionary work method emanating from the requirement of the Juche idea for rousing people's ideological awareness to resolve all problems. By keeping political work ahead of all other work it is possible to increase the voluntary enthusiasm and creative activity of the masses greatly so as to press ahead with the revolution and construction. An administrative method restricted to issuing commands and orders, receiving reports and statistics and sending out decisions cannot educate and reform the people or rouse their enthusiasm.

Party organizations and officials, whatever revolutionary task they

may be doing, must always explain and disseminate the Party's policies and intentions to the masses, and educate and mobilize Party members and the working people, and rouse their revolutionary zeal. This political work must be the first and foremost process of all work. Thus everyone will clearly understand the objective and content of his or her revolutionary task and how to carry it out, and will proceed to carry it through willingly.

Political work must be done by means of persuasion and education. If the working people are to be encouraged to implement the Party's lines and policies willingly, they must be led to recognize their correctness and support them. This is why political work must always be conducted by means of persuasion and education, and conducted tirelessly and patiently until the masses fully understand the Party's policies and intentions, and are brought to ideological awareness.

Political work must be combined with revolutionary practice; it must never be divorced from revolutionary practice. It must be conducted so as to fulfil each revolutionary task well.

Political work must become the work of the masses themselves. Since this work deals with the broad masses, it cannot be done well by the efforts of a few officials alone. All Party officials, cadres and Party members have to be educators and information workers of the masses, and carry out political work. In this way they will educate and rouse the whole Party and all the people, so that one person will educate and rouse ten people, ten a hundred, and a hundred a thousand.

Another important aspect of our Party's work method is that higher bodies help lower ones and senior officials carry out revolutionary tasks, visiting the masses and always relying upon them.

The process in which higher units help the lower, and senior officials always mix with the masses and enlist their strength and wisdom in implementing revolutionary tasks is a communist work method which enables the senior officials and grassroots to unite and cooperate to carry out revolutionary tasks successfully. It is a revolutionary work method which links the leadership with the masses.

Relying scrupulously on the masses is one of the fundamental principles of our Party in its work, and a major factor of success in everything. Our Party has always mixed with the masses and relied on them in its work, and was thereby able to advance the revolution and construction victoriously. Whenever it was faced with hardships and trials, it believed in the masses, mixed with them and drew on their strength and wisdom, and so was able to triumph over adversity.

If officials are to use our Party's revolutionary work method, they must have a Juche mass viewpoint and become used to mixing with the masses. They must always mix with the masses and explain the Party's lines and policies, learn about their conditions and consult them so as to seek the right way to carry out revolutionary tasks. They must also live amongst them, educate them and learn from them.

A further important aspect of our Party's work method is to conduct Party work scientifically and creatively in conformity with the objective situation and specific conditions.

The Party's activity is a hard and complex struggle to transform men, society and nature, and all Party work is conducted in specific circumstances which are continually changing and developing. Accordingly, Party work has to be done on a scientific basis to meet the law of the developing revolutionary movement, and should be done creatively in keeping with the actual circumstances.

The correct combination of general and specific guidance is a scientific and practical work method which makes it possible to give uniform and detailed guidance to the masses.

Informing the masses of the Party's lines and policies, and the objectives and significance of the revolutionary tasks, and adopting directional, general measures for carrying them out—this general guidance should be done well in combination with specific guidance, that is, educating people in keeping with the specific conditions of each unit and the preparedness of the masses, and taking practical steps to implement Party policies and the revolutionary tasks which have been set.

An effective way of combining general and specific guidance is to hold up one unit as an example and generalize it. In the course of the

struggle to carry out its lines and policies, our Party gives intensive guidance to particular units, holds one up as an example, and generalizes it widely to develop the work of all other spheres and units.

To find the essential factor in all work and concentrate on that factor is a scientific work method to achieve the maximum results with the least effort, and to carry out all revolutionary tasks successfully. Party organizations and officials must visit the work sites and obtain a thorough understanding of what is happening, with Party policies as the criterion, and discover the most important factor. They must then organize the forces well and concentrate on this factor, using the method of finishing one thing at a time.

Party work must be carried out creatively by means of various methods and systems. Party work is creative work with actual people who have different levels of political awareness and their own characteristic features, and work in varied surroundings and conditions. Therefore, party work cannot follow a fixed pattern or be done in a set way.

Party organizations and officials must carry out all work in an innovative way using different methods and systems by defining the correct way of working suited to the features and specific conditions of the people concerned.

In our Party's work method it is important to wage a vigorous mass movement to attain the Party's goals.

A mass movement is an efficient way of mobilizing the masses. It is a revolutionary work method of accelerating the revolution and construction by relying on the collective strength of the masses. A mass movement raises the revolutionary spirit of the masses, strengthens solidarity and cooperation, and spurs them on to collective innovations, thereby advancing the revolution and construction dynamically.

At each stage of revolutionary development, our Party has initiated mass movements of different kinds and promoted them to meet the needs of the revolution and the revolutionary aspirations and preparedness of the masses.

After liberation, we inaugurated the general ideological mobilization movement for nation building to eradicate the ideological survivals of Japanese imperialism and feudalism, arm the working people with the idea of nation building and rouse them to build a new country. In the postwar period of building socialism, our Party initiated and forcefully carried out the Chollima Movement, to sweep away everything backward from all the economic, cultural, ideological and moral spheres, and greatly increased the speed of socialist construction. Today, in conformity with the new requirements of revolutionary development in which the task of modelling the whole of society on the Juche idea has become important, our Party is vigorously carrying out the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement in every sphere of socialist construction, so as to accelerate the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions, and to carry out both the communist transformation of the people and the development of the socialist economy successfully.

According to our experience, it is important in organizing and guiding a mass movement to define its methods in conformity with the real needs of revolutionary development, and with the political and ideological preparedness of the masses, and put forward clear goals and tasks.

To put forward an appropriate slogan is very important, especially when organizing and guiding a mass movement.

A revolutionary slogan is a powerful banner which shows the masses the goal and the course of action, and imbues them with courage and confidence. In the past our Party put forward extremely appropriate slogans which touched people's hearts by reflecting the needs of the revolution and the masses' aspirations accurately, thus strongly inspiring the masses to work hard for the implementation of the Party's lines and policies. Our Party put forward many slogans, such as "Land to the tillers!" "Everything for victory in the war!" "Advance at the speed of Chollima!" "Iron and the machine are the kings of industry!" and "Rice means communism." All these slogans impressed the masses and were highly effective in rousing the

revolutionary zeal of the people. Recently our Party has put forward such slogans as “Let us meet the requirements of Juche in ideology, technology and culture!” “Let us produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!” and “Let us live our own way!” These are good slogans which also accurately express the needs of our revolution and the revolutionary aspirations of our people.

Establishing a proper work style is very important in establishing the party’s art of leadership.

The party work style is the work style of a working-class party which is fighting for the revolution and serving the people; it is part of the political and moral quality of party officials and members. To establish a proper party work style means to establish a revolutionary and popular style within the party and equip all party officials and members with a revolutionary spirit and a popular character.

It is only when a working-class party establishes a proper work style that it can maintain its revolutionary character and form an integral whole with the masses, and skilfully guide them to carry out the revolutionary tasks.

Our Party has tirelessly striven to do away with the obsolete style of work and establish a revolutionary and popular one among its officials.

The most important thing in our Party’s work style is the fighting spirit of constant innovation and continued progress.

A working-class party is a revolutionary party, a fighting party. Its cause is a great cause aimed at eradicating everything obsolete from all realms of social life and creating the new, and building a new society. A working-class party cannot tolerate stagnation and inertia; only the revolutionary trait of constant innovation and progress can prevail throughout the whole party.

In order to keep advancing the revolution and construction we must always have a far-reaching plan and a new goal, and must establish the enterprising, creative habit of making and developing the new and discarding whatever is old. In any kind of work, we must aim high and carry it on boldly on a large scale, strongly rejecting complacency, inertia, passivity and conservatism.

Another important thing in our Party work style is the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude.

Revolution is accompanied by arduous struggle, and there are hardships and trials on the way. When the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude is established within the party it is possible to uphold the revolutionary banner indomitably on the arduous and difficult road of progress, and lead the revolution towards victory, overcoming difficulties and ordeals.

Our Party is carrying on the revolution and construction, determined to consummate the Korean revolution by our own efforts, and build socialism and communism in our country, making the greatest use of our people's labour and domestic natural resources.

We must make sure that the Party is dominated by the revolutionary spirit and fighting trait of solving any problem in the revolution and construction with tenacity and fortitude, relying on our own strength. Every Party official and member must be deeply conscious that they are masters of the revolution: they must produce the things which they do not have, seek what is in short supply, learn what they do not know, and carry their revolutionary tasks through to the end in a responsible manner.

The next important thing in our Party's work style is the habit of working and living full of energy and enthusiasm.

To make Party officials and members work and live in this way is an important requirement in making the Party active and militant, and in bringing about constant innovations in the revolution and construction.

We must establish the habit of working and living in a prepared and militant way in every sphere, full of revolutionary vigour and ardour, and opposed to senility, stagnation, idleness and laxity. Party officials and members must also have revolutionary optimism and a strong desire for work, and give full play to their creativity and zeal, so as to push ahead with all work energetically. At the same time, they ought to acquire high cultural attainments and live optimistic, cultural lives.

Next in importance in our Party work style is the need to be principled and fair.

The Party can only maintain its revolutionary position and preserve

its leading authority when it establishes this habit of working.

The Party must adhere strictly to revolutionary principles under all circumstances, and be consistent in carrying through its principles. It is also necessary to establish the spirit of fighting uncompromisingly against every negative practice which is contrary to Party and working-class principles. Party organizations and officials must always work from a revolutionary, Party standpoint, must not act in a narrow-minded and rash manner, but handle all matters fairly and skilfully after giving them careful consideration.

A further important aspect of our Party's work style is a popular trait and quality which makes the people feel the Party's embrace like that of a mother.

A working-class party is not a bureaucratic body which dominates the masses, but a motherly party which serves the people and takes responsible care of their future.

Our Party provides the people with valuable social and political integrity, and leads them to exalt it. The Party always looks after the material and cultural aspects of their lives meticulously and with the greatest concern. Therefore, our people truly regard the Party's embrace as a motherly one and entrust their future to it completely.

If a working-class party is to be a motherly party, it is essential to oppose bureaucratic and aristocratic tendencies within it firmly, provide the people with fully independent and creative lives, and share life and death and fair and foul with the masses to the end of the revolutionary road.

Party officials must always have a mother's care in dealing with people, and become their faithful servants and sincere workers. Party officials and members must honestly respect and love the people, and treat them gently and kindly. They must listen to what they say everywhere and at all times, regarding their pain as their own, meeting their needs and helping them to solve their problems quickly in a responsible way.

Next in importance in our Party's work style is that its officials and members should show infinite devotion to the Party and the revolution,

and set personal examples in their work.

It is their duty and noble quality to fight devotedly for the Party and the revolution, and be exemplary in their work and in their lives.

Party officials and members must have the noble quality of performing their revolutionary tasks thoroughly, with a high degree of Party and revolutionary spirit, demonstrating infinite devotion and self-denial. They ought to be unsung heroes and heroines who feel the worth and pride of life in their dedicated struggle for the sake of the Party, the revolution, the motherland and the people, and obediently devote their all to the Party's revolutionary cause, without seeking fame or promotion.

Today our Party officials are adopting the revolutionary work habit of carrying out their revolutionary tasks thoroughly and unconditionally without any pretence, excuses or complaints. They are imbued with a firm revolutionary determination that they do not even have the right to die before fulfilling the revolutionary tasks assigned to them by the Party. Many of our Party officials and members, whatever work they are doing and wherever they are doing it, do not seek honour or remuneration but work diligently with complete devotion to the interests of the Party, the revolution, the motherland and the people, whether people know they are doing so or not.

Since they are standard-bearers of the revolution and educators of the masses, Party officials and members ought to be exemplary in every respect.

The example which they set has a greater influence than hundreds of words in educating and leading the masses. They must not guide the masses by words but by actions. They ought to be the first to tackle difficult, backbreaking work, match their words with deeds and be models for the masses in work, life, labour, study and everything else.

Another important aspect of our Party's work style is that Party officials and members should be modest and simple, and live an upright and clean life.

It is only then that they can mix with the masses intimately, be respected and loved by the public, and work well with people.

Party officials and members must never abuse their authority or put on airs, no matter what they are doing in any post, but lead a simple life just as the ordinary people do, and act modestly and politely at all times and in all places. They must be honest, sincere, frank, and unaffected in their work and their lives. They must not be selfish or seek special benefits or privileges. They must reject useless formalities, display and degradation, and lead a noble socialist life.

The struggle to establish the art of Party leadership is a serious ideological struggle to root out the old ideological survivals from officials and apply the Juche idea of our Party and its revolutionary mass line. Our Party has fought hard to acquire a proper art of leadership at each stage of Party building and of the developing revolution and has thereby established a revolutionary and popular art of leadership throughout the whole Party. With the establishment of a revolutionary and popular art of leadership, the whole aspect of the Party has been improved, all work is now being carried out with energy and vigour, and the link between the Party and the masses has been further strengthened.

## **7. THE PARTY IS THE GUIDE OF SOCIALIST AND COMMUNIST SOCIETY**

The struggle of the masses for independence is a cause to be continued from generation to generation under the leadership of the party.

To lead the people's cause of independence to final victory, it is essential to continue to strengthen and develop the party, the vanguard organization of the working class, as the revolution advances and society develops. Based on the achievements and experience already accumulated in Party building, we have to keep strengthening and developing our Party to become a revolutionary Juche party which will

lead the revolution and construction to the end and guide socialist and communist society reliably.

In order to strengthen and develop the party to become the guide of socialist and communist society, the cause of the party should be correctly carried forward from one generation to another.

In carrying forward the cause of the party it is essential to solve the problem of the heir to the political leader correctly.

This problem in the building of a working-class party is one of inheriting the position and role of the political leader. The leading position and role of the leader must be continued by his heir. By whom and how the cause of a working-class party which continues throughout generations is continued is a vital matter which affects the destiny of the party and the revolution.

A working-class party must have as heir a leader of the people who is absolutely faithful to the party and the revolution, and who has the personality and qualities to achieve complete political leadership over the whole of society. This is essential to uphold the party's cause and carry it on without vacillation and free from vicissitudes, no matter what difficult or complicated situation might develop in the course of revolutionary progress.

In order to carry forward the cause of the party correctly, it is imperative to lay solid organizational and ideological foundations, and establish the leadership system thoroughly to ensure the leadership of the heir, while putting forward the right man.

It is only when work is done well to lay the foundation of the party and establish its leadership system that the fighting efficiency of the party and its leadership ability can be enhanced, the political and ideological unity and purity of the party ranks defended and the revolution and construction led to victory. Therefore, a working-class party must treat this work as an important matter in party building.

Our Party has satisfactorily solved the problem of carrying forward the revolutionary cause.

The top echelon of the Party has been built up, the organizational and ideological foundations of the Party laid as firmly as a rock, and its

guidance system solidly established so as to carry on the ideas and leadership of our Party. This is a brilliant success and a great victory in the building of our Party.

We have to continue to consolidate the organizational and ideological foundations of the Party. We must pay particular attention to cementing the political and ideological unity and cohesion of the Party around its Central Committee. Every cadre and Party member must fervently treasure the unity and cohesion of the whole Party around its Central Committee, and, firmly united behind it, should fight strongly against all practices which seek to destroy this unity and cohesion.

We must also establish the leadership system of the Party Central Committee more thoroughly.

If this leadership system is weakened, even slightly, the Party cannot be an organized militant force, nor can its cause be accomplished. We must work consistently to establish and consolidate the leadership system of the Party Central Committee thoroughly.

An essential matter in carrying on the Party's cause is the inheriting of its revolutionary traditions correctly.

The revolutionary traditions which our Party should inherit are those of Juche. The revolutionary traditions of Juche were created amid the flames of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and, after liberation, they were enriched in the course of performing revolutionary tasks during different phases of the revolution. They are still developing today, thanks to our Party's strenuous efforts. We must defend and carry on the glorious revolutionary traditions of our Party from generation to generation.

The most important thing in inheriting the revolutionary traditions is to preserve their purity.

Ensuring their purity means that we only recognize the revolutionary traditions of Juche achieved by our Party and carry them on, and recognize no other "traditions". At one time, the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists who had wormed their way into our Party attempted to mix heterodox elements with our Party's revolutionary traditions. They alleged that the traditions of the

anti-Japanese guerrillas could not be the only revolutionary traditions, and that the revolutionary traditions had to be broadened in every direction. They tried to muddle our Party's revolutionary traditions with things which had nothing to do with these traditions, in order to emasculate our revolutionary traditions and achieve their factionalist ambitions. We must not tolerate any attempt to adulterate or wipe out the revolutionary traditions of our Party, but pass them on intact from generation to generation.

The cause of a working-class party continues even after the building of communism, and, accordingly, the party has to be strengthened and developed to conform to the demands of a communist society.

The struggle of the masses for independence will continue, even in a communist society.

When the communist society is built, the independence of the masses or human liberation will be fully materialized. But even then, their demand for independence will continue to increase. In order to meet this need it is necessary to continue the struggle to educate people, improve social relations and harness nature. In a communist society the work of educating people and improving social relations will be done on a higher level, and the struggle to transform nature and create material wealth will be waged on a larger scale. Therefore, there must be a leading political organization like a party even after a communist society has been built. This alone can coherently lead the struggle of the masses for independence.

In a communist society, too, there must be a social function to organize and direct the activities of the people in a coordinated way.

In a communist society everyone will be transformed after a revolutionary and working-class pattern and intellectualized so that the social composition will be homogeneous and the fundamental demands and interests of all members of society will become identical. And yet, the society cannot be maintained and developed without a political leadership which organizes and directs the activities of the people in a unified way to meet the common needs and interests of society. There must be a social function, a political

leadership to put forward a common goal and course of action for society, and to coordinate the activities of the people in order that a social movement will be conducted and society developed in keeping with the common social needs and interests in a communist society. So, naturally, there has to be a leading political organization which performs this task.

A communist society is a highly organized society.

A communist society is one in which unity and cooperative relations between people are highly developed. It is a society the whole of which is closely knitted organizationally and in which all activities are conducted in an organized way. Unity and cooperation are a way of human existence. As social beings, people from the outset hew out their destiny by means of unity and cooperation. Unity and cooperative relations between people develop as society develops, and they attain the highest level in a communist society. The development of unity and cooperative relations, the organizational unity of society, must be brought about by a particular political organization. Only the most advanced political organization can achieve unity and cooperative relations between people on the highest level and satisfactorily achieve solid organizational cohesion and organized joint action throughout society.

A communist society is a society in which people enjoy a most valuable life with their socio-political independence fully guaranteed.

A valuable life means the independent and creative life of people who have acquired socio-political independence. If they are to enjoy this valuable life they must lead a political life affiliated with socio-political organizations, and strive devotedly for the good of society and the collective. People's aspirations for the valuable life increase as society develops. In a communist society people find it most fulfilling and worthwhile to lead a political life with the most precious socio-political integrity, and to fight for the common interests of society. To meet these desires and needs of the people in a communist society, there must be an advanced political organization which will provide them with the most valuable socio-political life and

lead them to exalt it in the common social cause.

A working-class party must keep strengthening and developing in conformity with this law of social development.

We have to build up the Workers' Party of Korea, with a far-sighted plan, to be a political organization commensurate with the law of the development of the masses' cause of independence, to be the guide of the socialist and communist society.

For this purpose we should imbue the whole Party with the Juche idea.

In short, imbuing the whole Party with the Juche idea means developing our Party into a revolutionary party of Juche in fact as well as in name. In order to imbue the whole Party with the Juche idea, we must develop all the members to become ardent Juche-type revolutionaries and carry on Party building and activities guided solely by the Juche idea.

It is only when the whole Party is imbued with the Juche idea that we can maintain the Juche character of the Party, and steadily raise its fighting efficiency and leadership ability so as to advance the Juche cause triumphantly.

In future, we must work more strenuously to imbue the whole Party with the Juche idea.

In order to build up our Party with a far-reaching plan to be the guide of socialist and communist society, we must further develop the idea and theory of Party building in keeping with the intrinsic need of socialist and communist society.

The idea and theory of Party building created, developed and enriched by our Party are a guideline which must be strictly adhered to in the struggle to strengthen the Party and complete the Juche cause of Party building.

We must apply our Party's Juche-oriented idea and theory of Party building thoroughly in the building and activities of the Party and, at the same time, continue to develop and perfect them in line with the intensification of the revolution and construction, and the progress of society.

\*

\*

\*

Our Party has, indeed, acquired a wealth of experience in Party work and activities. Our Party's experience of Party building will be a valuable asset in our future endeavours to consolidate and develop it further.

Party officials ought to study our historical experience of Party building deeply, improve their political and professional ability, and develop Party work in depth.

Our Party has very great expectations of Kim Il Sung Higher Party School.

I am sure that all the teaching staff and students of the Higher Party School will teach and study well with absolute loyalty to the Party, and carry out their heavy responsibility and honourable mission for the Party.

## **ON STEPPING UP RAIL TRANSPORT**

**Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting  
of Officials Working in the Sector of Rail Transport**

*June 12, 1986*

At this consultative meeting I would like to talk about stepping up rail transport.

As I have always emphasized, railways are the arteries of the country and an advance sector of the national economy. It is only when the rail transport sector advances ahead of other economic sectors that all other branches of the national economy can develop rapidly.

Because rail transport is very important in the development of the national economy I have long emphasized the need to develop it, and have ensured that great efforts are channelled into this sector. Recently, I have taken new measures to restructure it and appoint able cadres.

Since then, innovations have been taking place in rail transport. The daily volume of rail transport has increased greatly, and its present figure is 40 per cent greater than the figure in the first quarter of this year. In the past I was much worried over inefficient rail transport, but now I am extremely pleased at the smooth rail transport that has been achieved. The turnaround time of goods waggons has also been gradually shortened; last May the time was reduced by 0.6 days compared to the national standard.

If the rail transport sector organizes its work a little more carefully, it will be able to attain the target for daily transport set by the Party. If it

implements the Party's three-point policy on transport to the letter, and mechanizes loading and unloading, it will be able to transport an even greater volume of goods than the target for daily transport set by the Party. Then, there will be no delay in rail transport, which hampers production in various economic sectors.

Recent success in rail transport was due mainly to the fact that the management bureaux under the Ministry of Railways have been restructured to suit the developing situation. Some time ago, in order to remove bottlenecks in rail transport we set up three general bureaux under the Ministry of Railways, organized a railways management bureau in each province, and placed each railways management bureau under the dual control of the Ministry of Railways and the provincial Party committee. This step has brought rewards. Since the railways management bureaux are subject to the dual control of the Ministry of Railways and provincial Party committees, the provincial Party committees are paying close attention to the work of the railways management bureaux and giving them a strong impetus. When the railways management bureaux were controlled only by the Ministry of Railways, the provincial Party committees were mostly indifferent to rail transport. But they are now paying great attention to this work. It is gratifying that the provincial Party committees and the provincial administration and economic guidance committees are concerned with the work of the railways management bureaux and help them solve their problems in time to ensure transport.

Successful rail transport over recent months is also attributable to the fact that people who are familiar with railways have been appointed as Party officials in the railway sector. Since the Party has appointed officials who are well versed in railways work as the chief Party secretaries of the railways management bureaux, Party guidance of the railways is effective. Only when the Party officials working in the administrative and economic institutions are informed of economic affairs can they give effective Party guidance to administrative and economic work. If they are ignorant of economic affairs, they may indulge in the abuse of Party authority and fail to give proper Party

guidance to administrative and economic work.

Rail transport has been successful recently also because the senior officials in the railway sector are efficient in their guidance work. The Chairman of the Transport Commission and the Minister of Railways seem to be completely familiar with the railways now and to perform their duties with confidence.

The officials of the Administration Council and the Ministry of Railways must on no account rest content with their success in rail transport. Unless they take further measures to step up rail transport, feeling satisfied with the present level of efficiency in rail transport, it may fall back to its former state. You must make unremitting efforts to improve rail transport until you find a full solution to this problem.

The Administration Council and the Ministry of Railways must channel great efforts into rail transport, with a clear understanding that a solution to rail transport is important in implementing the decisions of the Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee and the decisions of the Central People's Committee.

You must, first of all, carry out the Party's three-point policy on transport to the letter.

The three-point policy—unit train transport, the joint operation of different transport services, and container transport—is an effective policy for satisfying the growing demands of the national economy for transport. This policy, however, is not being implemented properly. The task of developing unit train transport, the joint operation of different transport services, and container transport, has been decided by both the Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee and the Central People's Committee; but nowhere have the decisions been implemented properly as yet. It has been decided to construct a container factory in Chongjin within this year to produce a large number of various types of containers from next year, but this decision has not been put into effect as yet. The commissions and ministries of the Administration Council, too, have failed to fulfil their container production plans. The Commission of the Chemical and Light Industries is not producing the planned amount of sack containers

because of a shortage of raw materials. The Commission of the Metal and Machine-building Industries has an assignment to produce 1,000 containers of three-ton to five-ton capacity, and the Commission of the Extractive Industries is supposed to manufacture 1,000 containers of one-ton capacity. But they are not producing them. We must take appropriate legal measures against those who neglect the implementation of the decisions of the Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee and of the Central People's Committee. The Administration Council, and the commissions and ministries must take issue with the failure to produce containers as planned and ensure that large amounts of various types of containers are produced.

We must push ahead with the mechanization of loading and unloading.

Mechanization of loading and unloading will make it possible to shorten the waggons' standby time, and increase their utilization rate and transport. As matters now stand, however, the Administration Council, and the commissions and ministries are not enthusiastic about mechanization. For the mechanization of loading and unloading, it has been planned to produce 50 yard-switching engines this year and 80 next year for the industrial lines, and to produce two waggon tippers this year and three next year for factories and enterprises; but these are not being produced as planned. According to the plan, 100 forklifts should be produced this year and 200 next year, but up to now only 30 forklifts have been manufactured. Sixteen bulk-load unloading machines are to be manufactured this year and 20 next year, but only their design has been finished, and their production has not yet been started. As for derrick cranes, only lip-service has been paid to their production.

Because yard-switching engines, waggon tippers, forklifts, bulk-load unloading machines, derrick cranes and other machines have not been produced as planned, loading and unloading take too long, and the transport of goods cannot be increased. The present rules require that the goods for one unit train should be loaded or unloaded in one to two hours, but this requirement is not met because of the low level of mechanization. Unless loading and unloading time is

shortened it will be impossible to resolve the problem of rail transport.

You must investigate the factories and enterprises which have not mechanized loading and unloading, and take measures for mechanization. The chairmen and ministers of the Administration Council must visit these factories and enterprises, learn about their situation, determine the date by which each of these factories and enterprises can finish the preparation of its loading and unloading machines, and submit an integrated plan to me. If not, the project will trail off even as soon as this meeting is over. In particular, you must ensure that these machines are installed as soon as possible at the mines that supply bulk loads of coal and ore concentrates, and at the factories and enterprises that receive them.

The Premier, Vice-Premiers and other senior officials of the Administration Council should also visit large factories and enterprises, see how they are equipped with loading and unloading machines, and take appropriate measures. If the Administration Council merely circulates written orders to the commissions and ministries to make loading and unloading machines and does nothing further, it will get you nowhere. After the Administration Council has given the chairmen and ministers the assignments to make loading and unloading machines, the Premier or Vice-Premiers must visit factories and enterprises to learn how the assignments are being implemented. If these machines are not produced by the set time, the persons who are responsible for the failure should be punished or fined.

The mechanization of loading and unloading needs investment. If you emphasize the task without making any investment, the problem will not be solved. The State Planning Commission must acquire the details as to where and what sort of loading and unloading facilities are needed, and take measures to supply steel, cement, timber and other materials. Machines like waggon tippers and bulk-load unloading machines and forklifts must be produced as planned, and supplied to the factories and other enterprises and railways which need them for the mechanization of loading and unloading.

We must increase the production of coaches and waggons.

To this end, we must supply the rail transport sector with sufficient steel.

It is said that in May the planned amount of rolled steel was not supplied to the rail transport sector. For the rail transport sector to produce and repair coaches and waggons satisfactorily, it needs to get a monthly supply of 10,000 tons of steel. If we supply 10,000 tons of steel every month to this sector, it can produce and repair coaches and waggons properly. The Administration Council must organize work carefully, and ensure that this sector is supplied with 10,000 tons of steel every month without fail.

In order to supply enough steel to the rail transport sector, not only must metal works increase steel production, but also the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council must see that all the casting-steel furnaces at their disposal are in operation. The commissions and ministries are not operating their casting-steel furnaces; they only try to get steel supplies from the state. They must not do so. Attempting to get the steel supplies from the state while not working their efficient casting-steel furnaces, shows that our officials are not meticulous about economic management.

The commissions and ministries under the Administration Council must, as already assigned, operate their casting-steel furnaces at full capacity and thus increase steel production. All their casting-steel furnaces can be operated if scrap iron is comprehensively collected.

The Transport Commission must not rely exclusively on the Commission of the Metal and Machine-building Industries for steel supplies, but do its best to produce steel for itself by operating its own casting-steel furnaces at full capacity. If the Transport Commission only asks the Commission of the Metal and Machine-building Industries for steel while leaving its own casting-steel furnaces idle, the latter commission will not be able to meet the demand. The Transport Commission must produce steel for itself by operating its casting-steel furnaces at full capacity, and receive only what it needs to make up for the shortage from the Commission of the Metal and Machine-building Industries.

The munitions industry must also operate its casting-steel furnaces at full capacity to produce as much steel as possible to meet its own need.

The Administration Council must not supply all the amounts of steel requested by commissions and ministries but cut off the amount that can be produced by them through the operation of their own casting-steel furnaces.

In order to operate the casting-steel furnaces at full capacity, measures should be taken to supply electrodes. The construction of the base for the production of electrodes at the August 8 Factory must be completed quickly to produce large quantities of electrodes, and supply them to the casting-steel furnaces of factories and enterprises. Electrodes should not be imported but produced domestically.

The railway construction project in the western region must be promoted vigorously.

The construction of a new railway in the western region is an important undertaking to ensure success in the reclamation of tidal flats and the construction of salt farms and a potassic fertilizer factory to be undertaken in the western region in the future.

A railway needs to be built to connect Chongdan, Kaepnung and Pongsan.

Unless the Chongdan-Kaepnung-Pongsan line is laid, potassic feldspar cannot be carried satisfactorily to the potassic fertilizer factory to be built in Madong. The potassic feldspar mined in Chongdan County can be transported by the Sariwon-Haeju line but that line is overloaded. Therefore, a new railway needs to be built to transport the feldspar. The People's Army is now set on constructing a potassic fertilizer factory swiftly by mobilizing soldiers, so we must construct the railway between Chongdan, Kaepnung and Pongsan quickly to transport the feldspar.

In order to construct the railway quickly we have to build a siding between Chongdan Station and Tokdal-ri. I have already checked the design for this siding.

After the completion of the project for the siding between

Chongdan and Tokdal-ri, the railway bridge over the River Ryesong must be reconstructed and then the Paechon-Kaephung railway built to connect up with the Chongdan-Kaephung line.

The reconstruction of the railway bridge over the River Ryesong may be somewhat difficult, but the Paechon-Kaephung railway can be constructed with ease if rails are supplied.

The railway bridge should be reconstructed under next year's plan after making preparations this year, as it is difficult to include the project in this year's plan. When reconstructed, the railway bridge will increase the utilization rate of the railway between Kaephung and Sariwon, and facilitate the transport of potassic feldspar.

The railway bridge over the River Ryesong should be reconstructed by replacing only the damaged girders and reinforcing the existing piers. Sometime in the past the piers of the railway bridge at Kanggye were reinforced, and this dispensed with the construction of a new bridge. It would be a good idea to widen the piers of the railway bridge over the River Ryesong by 0.7 metres on each side so that trains, motor vehicles and pedestrians can all cross the bridge.

A new railway must be constructed to connect Namdong Station in Sukchon County and Onchon. This railway is second in importance of all the railway construction projects to be undertaken in the western region next year.

The Namdong-Onchon line is needed to transport necessary materials for the reclamation of tidal flats and speed up this project. We are planning to reclaim about 150,000 hectares of tidal flats in South Phyongan Province in future, and this is no simple task. To transport the materials necessary for this project, a railway must be built.

The Namdong-Onchon railway will be used effectively even after the completion of the project for the reclamation of the tidal flats. In the future, when a wide area of tidal flats has been reclaimed and crops are grown there, fertilizer and chemicals will have to be transported in, grain transported out. It would be impossible to transport all these goods by lorry because crude oil is not produced in our country. A railway must be built for trains to transport fertilizer and chemicals

needed for farming in the reclaimed tideland, and the grain harvested there must be transported by rail.

The Namdong-Onchon line will also be helpful in that the coal produced by the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex can be carried to Nampho and Haeju by rail.

The design for the Namdong-Onchon railway must be made as soon as possible so that the project can be started simultaneously with the project for the reclamation of tideland next year. Since this railway will be built on flat land, the project can be undertaken even through a social campaign so long as a few skilled railway construction workers are assigned to the task. The project needs just the building of the roadbed, the construction of a few short railway bridges and the laying of rails. No tunnels will be needed between Namdong and Onchon.

We must also build a railway between Ongjin and Jangyon. This line is the third in importance of the railway projects in the western region. Since this project is not pressing, it may be started later than other projects. The Ongjin-Jangyon railway, when completed, will be useful since it will make a loop line, but at present it is difficult to start the project at the same time as other projects.

You should also undertake the project of replacing the narrow-gauge tracks between Haeju and Ongjin with wider-gauge tracks. This project will be indispensable for timely transport of the salt to be produced at the salt farm to be laid out on the reclaimed Kangryonggang tidal flat. If a salt farm 5,000 hectares wide is built on the reclaimed Kangryonggang tidal flat, it can produce 500,000 tons of salt annually at the rate of 100 tons per hectare. The narrow-gauge railway will find it difficult to transport all that amount. Unless the narrow-gauge tracks between Haeju and Ongjin are changed to wider ones, it will not only be impossible to transport 500,000 tons quickly because the loads will have to be transported first by narrow-gauge rails and then transhipped to wider-gauge rails, it will also result in a lot of waste of manpower and salt. For the timely transportation of 500,000 tons of salt we must replace the narrow-gauge rails between

Haeju and Ongjin with wider-gauge tracks.

I think it advisable to start this project next year. Because rails are not in large supply now, it may be difficult to start this project immediately. Even though the project is not started right now, it will not create any big problem. However, materials needed for production are not transported quickly enough because the Haeju-Ongjin railway is now overloaded. So the narrow-gauge rails between Haeju and Ongjin will have to be replaced. You must calculate the condition for the supply of rails and, if possible, start the project next year. It is advisable to undertake the project of replacing the narrow-gauge rails between Haeju and Ongjin with wider-gauge ones ahead of the Ongjin-Jangyon railway project, even though you may have to put off the latter for some time.

We must speed up the building of railways in the northern region and finish the task as soon as possible. Since this project is very important it must be completed by next year, however many other construction projects may be required.

The construction of the railway section between Hyesan and Musan, the last section in the building of the railway in the northern region, is not so difficult as the construction of the Unbong-Hyesan railway section. The construction of the Hyesan-Musan section may be relatively difficult because the area is steep and there are many rocky hillsides between the Taehongdan County General Farm and Musan, which will have to be cut through.

On the Hyesan-Musan line, the Hyesan-Taehongdan section should be finished quickly, while the Taehongdan-Musan section may be constructed without haste. Even if the Taehongdan-Musan section is finished now, it will have no great demand for transport of goods. Calculations should be made to include the Hyesan-Taehongdan section for completion in next year's state plan.

The Administration Council has many railway construction projects to include in next year's state plan. Therefore, it must decide the priorities scrupulously and incorporate them into the state plan.

Rail production should be examined in detail. If rails are produced

in large quantities, there will be no problem in the railway construction next year.

We must build up solid bases for the repair of railway coaches and waggons to ensure better and speedier repair.

Maintaining coaches and waggons in good repair by building up repair centres will help towards easing the strain on rail transport and ensuring a decent passenger train service.

In order to build these repair centres we must ensure the supply of equipment and materials.

The Administration Council is not supplying the necessary equipment and materials for building the repair centres as it should. It has been entrusted with supplying 325 machine tools and providing 1,200 extra workers for this work this year, so as to build the capacity to repair 7,500 coaches and waggons annually, but it has not supplied the required number of machine tools up to now. It has not supplied the planned amount of steel for the repair of coaches and waggons, either. In consequence, a large number of waggons are reportedly awaiting repair. The Administration Council must unconditionally ensure the supply of the planned amounts of machine tools, equipment, steel and other materials for building the repair centres.

In addition to building the repair centres, we must ensure quality of the repair of coaches and waggons.

Yesterday while I was travelling by train I saw passenger trains at stations, which looked shabby because of poor painting. The Ministry of Railways says that it has repaired coaches and painted them again, according to the Party's policy on improving the amenities of passenger trains, but the paint has already become discoloured. So I asked myself why our workers could not even paint coaches properly. Even a single coach should be repaired properly.

You must study the method of painting coaches. Passenger trains are now pulled by electric locomotives, and I cannot understand why the colour of the newly painted coaches can change in less than a few months. If the painted coaches are discoloured by the iron powder produced by the friction of the brakes and wheels, sand, coal dust, and

dirt flying about the railways, as explained by the railway officials, the painting of coaches needs studying. It also sounds incredible that coaches are painted every six months in other countries. It would be a different matter if their coaches were repainted in one year or two, but painting them every six months will not pay. The Administration Council must study foreign information and give assignments to scientists and technicians to solve the problem of painting coaches. The scientists and technicians, if assigned to the work, will be perfectly able to solve this problem.

It is said that the passenger train service has now improved a little. The senior officials of the Administration Council should personally travel by passenger trains to grasp the details of the state of affairs.

In future factories and enterprises which damage waggons by careless handling must be fined and also made to repair them. Large enterprises like the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, if given the job, will be fully able to repair damaged waggons.

You must make a study of the work of the forestry sector.

Some officials propose time and again to get felling areas in a foreign country, instead of thinking of cutting trees on our mountains; they are wrong. Our country also abounds in trees. There are many trees that can be felled and used in the upper area of the River Amnok. In my opinion, there seems to be no problem to fell 4 million to 4.5 million cubic metres of timber every year in our country. If you cut 4 million to 4.5 million cubic metres of trees annually and plant trees where they have been cut, you will be able to rotate felling in a cycle of 25 to 30 years.

If we do not import timber but cut and use our own trees, it will be easy to transport them. It is now difficult to bring timber from the upper area of the River Amnok because of transport problems, but when the railway in the northern region has been constructed, it can be shipped by rail.

Trees must be felled at their economic age; aged trees are not usable because their hearts are rotten.

You must not attempt only to import timber but produce

approximately 4.5 million cubic metres annually in our country. If you find it difficult to produce that amount next year, you may produce 4 million cubic metres next year and start producing 4.5 million cubic metres in 1988.

In order to produce 4.5 million cubic metres of timber annually it is imperative to invest in forestry. In recent years the investment in forestry has been small; investment is essential for an increased timber production.

You must study the advisability of assigning timber stations to commissions and ministries under the Administration Council for specialized timber production.

If timber stations work as they do now, producing mining props when props are in short supply, and producing railway sleepers when sleepers are not available, instead of specializing in timber production for different economic sectors it will be impossible to satisfy the demands of the national economy for timber.

If timber production is to be specialized for different sectors, timber stations should be attached to the sectors, factories and enterprises which need large amounts of timber.

The rail transport sector, mining, construction, paper and fishing industries use the largest amounts of wood. If timber stations are attached to them to produce the timber they need, timber may be supplied smoothly.

The Transport Commission may get timber stations attached to specialize in the production of sleepers to meet its needs. Two timber stations, one for the eastern region and the other for the western region, should be attached to the commission.

The timber stations attached to the Transport Commission should produce larch-tree sleepers. Formerly, the Japanese used oak for sleepers. When I was engaged in the anti-Japanese armed struggle I went to a Japanese timber station in northeast China, where I saw oak trees being made into sleepers before being carried away. In those days the Japanese made oak sleepers and sold them at a higher price than for other types of sleepers.

Oak sleepers are good, but we cannot make them as we do not have many oak trees growing in our country. We should make sleepers of larch, which is abundant in our country. Larch sleepers can last for about ten years if they are oiled to provide against decay.

The rail transport sector mainly uses wooden sleepers; in the future it must use concrete sleepers mostly, instead of wooden sleepers. Wooden sleepers must be used for the newly constructed railways, and concrete sleepers for all the existing railways.

The Commission of the Extractive Industries should also have timber stations attached to produce wooden props.

Coal mines and ore mines are not producing regularly, for want of wooden props. If the Commission of the Extractive Industries has timber stations attached to specialize in prop production and supply props, the mines can produce at a steady level.

Wooden props are the most desirable. Concrete props are heavy and difficult to handle in pits. Miners are reluctant to use concrete props, which indicates that concrete props are not suited to the purpose. You must not order the mines to use concrete props.

It seems advisable for timber stations to be attached also to the munitions industry.

The fisheries and paper industries, too, must have timber stations at their disposal. Only then can they produce wooden boxes necessary for salting fish, and paper and pulp on a steady basis.

In the future the fulfilment of production plans by the timber stations which are under the control of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council, should be assessed according to their fulfilment of the quotas for specialized production. For example, the work of a timber station specializing in the production of props must be assessed according to the fulfilment of its prop production quota. If it has failed to fulfil the prop production quota, it must be assessed as having failed to carry out the state plan.

When attaching timber stations to the commissions and ministries, you must investigate the conditions of the forests with care.

The timber stations attached to the commissions and ministries

must be subject to the dual control of the commissions and ministries concerned, and of the general bureaux of forestry or the management bureaux of forestry of provinces. For instance, if you have attached a timber station in Ryanggang Province to the Commission of the Extractive Industries for the specialized production of wooden props, you must subject it to the control of both the Commission of the Extractive Industries and the General Bureau of Forestry of Ryanggang Province. Only then can the commission and the general bureau of forestry or the forestry management bureau of the province concerned pay attention to the work of the timber station and help its work attentively.

We shall study the work of forestry further and discuss it again in July. Originally, I intended to have the problems arising in the forestry sector discussed at this meeting and reach conclusions about them. But sufficient preparations have not been made, so it is difficult to do so. The Administration Council must prepare the measures for improving forestry work following what I said today. You must not prepare them subjectively, sitting at desks; you must go out into the field to get detailed information on the situation and formulate plans in such a way as to know which timber station should be attached to which commission or ministry, and recommend what measures should be taken to improve the work of the forestry sector.

We must take measures to protect farmland from waterlogging, in consideration of the heightened water level of the River Taedong due to the completion of the Nampho Barrage.

According to the data, if the water level of the Nampho Barrage is raised by 1.7 metres, 5,600 hectares of farmland in the areas which are lower than the water level of the River Taedong will be submerged. To drain this water, 196 pumping stations will have to be constructed and 376 water pumps installed. When constructing the Nampho Barrage you did not show any concern about this matter, and now the barrage has been completed and the reservoir of the barrage is about to be filled with water, you are suggesting starting a drainage project. You are wrong. Already when I was checking the draft plan for the Nampho

Barrage I assigned the task of undertaking the drainage project in keeping with the raised water level of the River Taedong. Then I instructed that as a large area of farmland would possibly be submerged when the water level of the River Taedong rose owing to the construction of the Nampho Barrage, embankments and pumping stations should be constructed under an annual plan in anticipation of the danger. If the construction of drainage had been included in the state plan on an annual basis during the construction of the Nampho Barrage and had been undertaken little by little, no problem would have cropped up now. The Administration Council, however, did nothing about the construction of drainage till the Nampho Barrage was completed by the People's Army. And now it is suggesting a drainage project. The Administration Council must grasp the details in the field and take measures to drain the stagnant water. Drainage is needed mainly in the area along the River Jaeryong.

The reservoir of the Nampho Barrage should be filled with the fresh water flowing down the River Taedong, not with salt water.

The next session of the Central People's Committee will be held around June 20. The State Planning Commission must study how the National Economic Plan for the second half of this year can be fulfilled and make a report.

## **FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE NON-ALIGNED MOVEMENT**

**Concluding Speech at a Joint Meeting of the Political  
Bureau of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party  
of Korea and the Central People's Committee  
of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea**

*June 20, 1986*

Today's joint meeting of the Political Bureau of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Central People's Committee of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea has discussed a number of questions concerning the Non-Aligned Movement, in anticipation of the forthcoming Eighth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries.

The Eighth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries is to be held this year, an important year which marks the 25th anniversary of the inauguration of the Non-Aligned Movement. We hope that this conference will be a historic meeting in upholding the principles and ideals of the Non-Aligned Movement and in the further development of this movement.

During the past 25 years the situation both within and outside the Non-Aligned Movement has been complex and the movement has been beset with many difficulties. But it has made rapid advances by overcoming these difficulties.

The Non-Aligned Movement, which was inaugurated with a membership of 25 newly-independent countries 25 years ago, has now

developed into a very extensive movement with more than 100 newly-emergent member nations, and into an organized political force. It has a great influence on revolutionary change in the world and on international political life.

The history of the Non-Aligned Movement clearly shows its vitality as an independent political force which is separate from any bloc, and patently proves that its policy is right.

Today the Non-Aligned Movement is faced with a heavy task: it must carry out its honourable mission by developing itself further so as to meet the requirements of the prevailing situation.

The noble mission which was undertaken by the Non-Aligned Movement at the time of its inauguration was, and always has been, to destroy imperialism and colonialism, end domination and subjugation in whatever form, oppose aggression and intervention, preserve peace and security, exercise national sovereignty, and achieve the freedom of social and economic development. This represents the aspirations and desires of the peoples of all countries and all nations for independence and prosperity, and for the building of a peaceful new world which is free from war.

Today on the international scene we witness developments which run counter to the aspirations and desires of the peoples of the non-aligned countries. The Non-Aligned Movement is facing a grave challenge from the imperialists and reactionaries of all types.

The peoples of the non-aligned countries and progressive people throughout the world expect that the Eighth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries to be held in Harare this year, will be an epoch-making event in carrying out the important tasks of the movement, and therefore they are showing great interest in this conference.

In the prevailing situation it is very important to increase the strength of the Non-Aligned Movement in every way and enhance its role further in the international arena.

With the Eighth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries forthcoming, I would like to speak about some questions which are

important to the strengthening and development of the Non-Aligned Movement.

## **1. THE PRESENT INTERNATIONAL SITUATION AND INDEPENDENCE IN THE FACE OF IMPERIALISM**

Today the international situation is very complex and tense.

The main trend of our time is, as ever, along the road of independence and sovereignty, peace and progress, but there is also an adverse current of domination and subjugation, war and destruction.

In many parts of the world acts of aggression and conflicts are taking place frequently, trampling upon the sovereignty of countries and nations, and destroying peace and security. Social and economic stagnation, catastrophes and instability continue, threatening people's very existence. The people want peace, but international tension is increasing daily, the danger of war is growing, and various acute and complex problems are arising one after another in the international community.

This situation, which is contrary to the common desire of progressive people throughout the world, is due to the intensified imperialist manoeuvres for aggression and plunder.

Aggression and plunder are inherent aspects of imperialism, and imperialism thrives on them.

Imperialism is the product of aggression and plunder, and it has grown fat on ceaseless aggression and plunder. Since the emergence of imperialism mankind has suffered disasters of recurrent aggression and war, and has been deprived of immeasurable amounts of property, wealth and the fruits of labour.

As monopoly capital grows, so its tentacles of aggression and plunder are extended overseas. This is an inevitable outcome and a law of the development of capitalism.

There is no limit to the wild ambition and greed of imperialism. The fatter it is and the fuller its stomach, the more ambitious and greedy imperialism grows, and the more persistent and violent its acts of aggression and plunder become.

The methods of its aggression and plunder have changed with the progress of time.

Today the imperialists are employing mainly neocolonialism to invade, dominate and plunder other countries.

After the Second World War the imperialist colonial system crumbled, and the peoples of many Asian, African and Latin-American countries cast off the yoke of colonialism and embarked on the road of independent development. In this new age the old method of imperialist colonial rule no longer worked. Without forming alliances, it became impossible for imperialism to maintain its position, and dominate and plunder other countries. Modern imperialism, which was realigned into a united force headed by US imperialism after the Second World War, has been dominating and plundering newly-independent countries and the developing nations by means of neocolonialism, which is less obvious and more crafty.

By entangling many developing countries in the neocolonialist web of so-called “aid” and “cooperation”, the imperialists have now seized the economic lifelines of these countries, made them nothing more than their sources of raw materials and their markets, and grown rich by squeezing tremendous amounts of profit out of them. Because of the imperialists’ neocolonialist policy of enslavement and because of the old, unfair international economic order imposed on them, many of the non-aligned countries and developing nations have not, in spite of their political independence, attained independent development and prosperity, and have not relieved their people of hunger and poverty. As time passes the gap between the wealth of the Western imperialist powers and the developing countries is widening. The tendency of the rich countries to grow richer, and the poor countries to grow poorer, is more pronounced on a world scale.

The imperialists are militarizing their economies and stepping up

their manoeuvres of aggression and war in order to meet the insatiable greed of the monopolies for overseas expansion, and to realize their wild dream of world domination.

The imperialists are directing the spearhead of their aggression at the non-aligned countries and other newly-emergent nations.

The US and other imperialists resort to ceaseless acts of armed intervention, subversion and destruction against the non-aligned and developing countries. Taking advantage of border disputes and various other complex issues, which are a consequence of their colonial rule, the imperialists are driving wedges between these countries, stimulating feuds and antagonism between them in an attempt to make them fight among themselves so as to take advantage of the situation. In carrying out their aggressive schemes against non-aligned and developing countries, the imperialists frequently use as shock troops the Israeli Zionists, the South African racists and other stooges whom they have trained and tamed.

Because of these acts by the imperialists, the peoples of the non-aligned and developing countries suffer greatly, experience disasters, and are confronted by many difficulties and obstacles in building a new society.

All the facts show that the imperialists are arch-aggressors and arch-marauders, the destroyers of world peace and security and the biggest obstacle to social progress.

It is an urgent necessity of our time to fight against imperialism and for an independent world.

The Non-Aligned Movement is, in essence, a movement against imperialism and for independence. It can only achieve its noble aims and realize its ideals through the struggle against imperialism and for independence. Intensifying this struggle is the way to preserve world peace and security, defend the people's interests and their right to independence, consolidate national independence and bring about social progress.

The peoples of the non-aligned countries and all the progressive people throughout the world must unite solidly with each other and

develop a powerful struggle against imperialism and for independence.

First, they must form an anti-imperialist common front on a world scale and intensify the struggle against imperialism.

Imperialism is the common enemy of the peoples of the non-aligned countries and the progressive people throughout the world. The allied imperialist force is challenging the just cause of the people for independence, peace and social progress. No country in the world is free from the threat of aggression and intervention by imperialism.

The people can only oppose and defeat the allied imperialist force by a united effort. It is the world's progressive people uniting into an anti-imperialist force that the imperialists fear more than anything else. The united strength of the people is unconquerable.

The peoples of the non-aligned countries and the progressive people throughout the world must form a close union within the ranks of the anti-imperialist struggle and take concerted action in this struggle for their common cause of independence, peace and social progress.

Second, they must fight against imperialism and for sovereignty stubbornly and comprehensively in every field of politics, defence, the economy, ideology and culture.

The imperialists are working towards invading and dominating other countries in every possible way and in different fields. They are trying to invade other countries and establish political domination over them by resorting to military force and underhanded methods. They are also scheming to subordinate them economically and infiltrate them ideologically and culturally by means of surplus goods, unfair economic relations, decadent Western culture and the bourgeois way of life.

The non-aligned countries and all the progressive countries must increase their vigilance against not only the overt aggressive moves of the imperialists but also their underhanded moves and crafty stratagems, which take various forms. They must thwart them at every step.

The anti-imperialist struggle must be waged not only comprehensively in all areas but also tenaciously, and never be given up half-completed.

The anti-imperialist struggle must not be suspended or weakened even for a little while. Suspending the struggle means retreat, and

retreat will result in defeat. The anti-imperialist struggle must be intensified continuously, without giving the enemy a breathing space. It must be carried to the end until the final victory is won.

Third, we must fight energetically to make the whole world independent.

The people who have taken their destiny in their own hands are advancing on the road of independence in the face of all forms of domination and subjugation. This is the main trend of our time. The struggle for global independence is the common cause of the peoples of all countries who advocate independence.

An independent world is a world in which all forms of colonialism have been abolished completely, and in which all countries and all nations are provided with complete sovereignty.

It is only when the whole world has become independent that all the peoples on earth can build a prosperous new society in which they can lead free and happy lives having cast off the yoke of domination and subjugation, and that they can build a new world where mankind can live in peace by putting an end to aggression and war.

The struggle for global independence is a decisive showdown between the anti-imperialist independent forces and the forces of imperialist domination.

The peoples of the non-aligned countries and those of all countries who advocate independence must fight for global independence.

## **2. THE PREVENTION OF NUCLEAR WAR AND THE ABOLITION OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS**

The prevention of nuclear war and the preservation of world peace and security are burning issues facing humanity at the present time.

To dominate the world by force, wielding nuclear weapons, is the world strategy which the imperialists have persisted in since the

Second World War. The danger from this strategy is growing as the days go by.

At present, the imperialists are building up arms on a large scale and accelerating the production and deployment of nuclear weapons in every possible way. As a result of their moves towards war, a large number of nuclear weapons have been deployed in many countries and in many parts of the world, nuclear fleets are constantly afloat on the Pacific, Indian and other oceans, nuclear armed forces are being massed particularly in the major regions of natural resources and in places that are strategic from a military point of view, and the number of new nuclear bases continues to increase. Military exercises and military activities which might lead to the outbreak of a nuclear war are being conducted ceaselessly on land, and in the territorial airspace and waters of non-aligned countries, and in the surrounding areas.

In recent years the United States has conceived the very dangerous “Star Wars” project in an attempt to extend the arms race into outer space, and is going to produce and deploy binary chemical weapons in different parts of the world.

The dark cloud of a nuclear war hangs heavily over all the continents and threatens the very existence of our planet. The danger of another world war, a nuclear war, exists in Asia and Europe, in the Middle East and Southern Africa, in the Caribbean region and the Indian Ocean, and throughout the world.

Today the danger of a nuclear war is most serious on the Korean peninsula.

More than 1,000 nuclear weapons of different types, including nuclear bombs, have been deployed in south Korea. The density of nuclear deployment in south Korea is four times as great as that in the member nations of NATO. With the exception of the NATO member nations, south Korea is the only part of the world into which US nuclear weapons are shipped on a large scale. South Korea, a US colony and military base, has become a huge nuclear arsenal and the largest nuclear outpost in the Far East.

While bringing a large number of nuclear weapons to south Korea,

the United States frequently stages nuclear war exercises in and around south Korea by mobilizing different kinds of nuclear weapons and large military forces. As a result, the danger of nuclear war is more acute in south Korea than anywhere.

If a nuclear war breaks out in our country, it will easily spread throughout the world. Then, not only the Korean people but also the whole of mankind will suffer from a nuclear holocaust.

The survival of humanity has never been in such serious jeopardy as it is today. The destructive power of atomic weapons that are now stockpiled on the earth is more than one million times as strong as that of the nuclear bomb dropped on Hiroshima by the United States during the Second World War. The world lives in constant fear that a nuclear war may be triggered by the smallest incident.

It is the solemn requirement of our time and the unanimous desire of mankind that another world war, a thermonuclear war, be prevented and that peace and security be preserved.

The Non-Aligned Movement is an anti-war, peace force, and the policy of non-alignment is a just, peace-loving policy. The Non-Aligned Movement must step up its activities in every way, regarding as its major task the prevention of another world war, a thermonuclear war, and thus preserve world peace.

First, it must fight to stop the arms race and to effect the complete abolition of all armaments, and of nuclear weapons in particular.

The arms race and the nuclear weapons deployed in many parts of the world are the basic factor in the increase of international tension and of the danger of a nuclear war. So long as the arms drive continues, and so long as nuclear weapons exist on the earth, the danger of a nuclear war will not go away, and mankind cannot be free of the constant nuclear threat.

The non-aligned countries must give priority to the abolition of nuclear weapons, fight to prevent their production and stockpiling, and abolish them completely once and for all. The existing nuclear arsenals must be frozen, and nuclear weapons reduced drastically and abolished completely so as to eliminate once and for all the danger of a nuclear war.

Stopping nuclear tests is the first step towards ending the nuclear arms race and abolishing nuclear weapons. The non-aligned countries must play the role of a catalyst in getting steps taken in international law to completely ban testing nuclear weapons in any form.

Outer space must only be used for peaceful purposes, not as a new theatre of the arms race. The non-aligned countries must, on no account, tolerate any attempt to extend the arms race into outer space.

The non-aligned countries must compel those countries with nuclear weapons to give a commitment to refrain from resorting to nuclear threats against those without nuclear weapons. They must also see that measures are taken as soon as possible to make provision for the abolition of nuclear weapons by steps taken in international law.

In order to abolish nuclear weapons and prevent a nuclear war, we must create nuclear-free, peace zones in many regions of the world and extend them all the time.

In many regions of the world good proposals are being made to create nuclear-free, peace zones. The non-aligned countries must give active support to all these proposals. Those countries which have nuclear weapons should respect the nuclear-free, peace zones and refrain from deploying nuclear arms in them.

The Government of our Republic and the Korean people will struggle energetically to make the Korean peninsula and the rest of Northeast Asia a nuclear-free, peace zone and, in unity with the other peace-loving people of the world, make every effort to create and expand these zones in other parts of the world.

In order to remove the danger of another world war and defend world peace and security, it is imperative to abolish nuclear weapons, and ban the development, production, stockpiling and use of chemical weapons.

At present, positive proposals for universal and complete disarmament are being made and initiatives taken in this regard, including those for the stage-by-stage abolition of nuclear weapons so that they are completely removed by the end of this century and those for refraining from engaging in an arms race in outer space. These are

important proposals and initiatives for removing the danger of a nuclear war, and preserving world peace and security. The non-aligned countries must make every effort to put into effect these positive proposals and initiatives for averting the danger of a nuclear war.

Second, we must fight against the imperialist policy of military blocs and of increasing military bases.

Military blocs are footholds for imperialist aggression and war, and aggressive foreign military bases and troops are the means to dominate and control those countries in which they are sited. It is only when all military blocs and means of aggression and war have been eliminated from the earth that world peace can be lasting and durable.

It is an important task of the Non-Aligned Movement to resist the presence of foreign military bases and foreign troops, and fight for the disbandment of military blocs.

The non-aligned countries should make strong demands for the withdrawal of aggressive foreign military bases and troops, and should not offer their territories to major powers as military and supply bases.

The imperialists are preparing to form new military blocs in many regions, including Asia and the Pacific, while maintaining and strengthening the existing ones. The non-aligned countries must resolutely oppose these schemes to form new military blocs, and fight to disband all the aggressive military blocs.

If the imperialists' aggressive military blocs are disbanded, those of the socialist countries will become unnecessary.

The non-aligned countries should not join any military bloc or any military pact, nor should they allow the imperialists to engage in war games, particularly nuclear war games, on their territories or in the surrounding areas.

We strongly demand that the US stop its manoeuvres in south Korea and the surrounding area to unleash a nuclear war and that it withdraw its troops, military bases and weapons of mass destruction, including nuclear arms, from south Korea immediately.

The non-aligned countries must give active support and encouragement to the peoples of all the countries who are struggling

for the removal of aggressive foreign military bases and troops from their territories.

Third, we must develop a powerful anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement.

The powerful anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement which is going on in Asia and Europe, and many other parts of the world is dealing a strong blow at the imperialists' war policy and their efforts to build up nuclear armaments.

The non-aligned countries must expose and strongly condemn the imperialists' policy of aggression and war, and their dangerous moves to provoke a nuclear war, and stifle their every move wherever they have stretched out their tentacles. The non-aligned countries must also refuse to follow the imperialists' policy of aggression and war, and to act as minions of war.

The non-aligned countries must strengthen solidarity with the anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement, and render support and encouragement to the movement in every possible way.

No non-aligned country must tolerate any violation of the recognized regulations and code of practice for international relations, and must make ever stronger condemnations of such violations.

This is an international year of peace. The peace-loving people throughout the world have the unanimous desire that this year will bring a new advance in the removal of tension, and in the elimination of the root cause of aggression and war throughout the world.

Today the danger of another world war, a thermonuclear war, is great; but war is not absolutely inevitable. If the non-aligned countries fight in unity with all the anti-war, peace forces of the world, they will be able to remove the danger of a nuclear war, and preserve peace and security.

We consider that the non-aligned countries should pay the utmost attention to the abolition of all armaments, and nuclear arms in particular, as they prepare for the Eighth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries so that the conference will provide a new opportunity for preventing another world war, a thermonuclear war, and ease international tension.

### **3. THE ELIMINATION OF COLONIALISM AND RACISM, AND THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF THE CAUSE OF NATIONAL LIBERATION**

It is an important part of the struggle against imperialism and for independence that colonialism and racism be eliminated, and the cause of national liberation be accomplished.

This is the age of independence. The people who were once oppressed have emerged as masters of the world, and are pressing forward with the trend of history. With the tide of the age of independence the imperialist colonial system is finally being eliminated from the world. The peoples of many countries in Asia, Africa and Latin America have achieved political independence and are making rapid advances along the road of creating a new life.

However, the imperialist colonial system still survives, and colonial slavery is still imposed upon many people. This is a serious contradiction which cannot be tolerated in the age of independence. Today the peoples of colonies and dependent countries are fighting fiercely under the banner of freedom and independence, and dealing a telling blow at the imperialists and colonialists.

In an attempt to maintain their crumbling colonial system by every possible means, the imperialists are trying to put down the people's cause of liberation by force of arms and, at the same time, encouraging racism in every way. They have proclaimed South Africa and Israel as their "friendly nations", as their "allies", and are strengthening what they call "cooperation" with these countries in politics, diplomacy, the economy, finance, military affairs, and in the nuclear field in particular.

Under the aegis of the imperialists, the South African racists and Israeli Zionists overtly pursue the racist and expansionist policy of aggression in all-out opposition to the cause of national liberation.

The South African racist regime pursues the vicious policy of apartheid, of racial discrimination, and the policy of brutal repression. It is trampling underfoot even the basic freedom and rights of the South African people, and is keeping them subjugated to the white people, who are the minority. The South African racists have occupied Namibia illegally and are tightening their colonial rule, resorting to the bloody suppression of the struggle of the Namibian people for national independence and national liberation. The South African racist regime continues to perpetrate acts of aggression, intervention and state terrorism against Angola, Botswana, Mozambique, Zambia, Zimbabwe and other frontline countries, persisting in their scheme of destroying the peace of these countries and overthrowing their legitimate governments. The recent air, ground and naval attacks by the South African racists on Zimbabwe, Zambia, Botswana and Angola clearly revealed their aggressive nature and brutality in the eyes of the world.

In order to realize their ambition to establish a “Great Zionist Empire” in the Middle East, the Israeli Zionists have occupied Arab lands and are pursuing the policy of establishing colonies. Under the active patronage of the imperialists they are flagrantly violating the national rights of the Palestinian and other Arab peoples, growing more blatantly ferocious and arrogant with each passing day.

Imperialists and colonialists are standing in the way of the people’s struggle for freedom and independence in Central America and the Caribbean region as well. They resort to overt military threats, intervention and destructive activities against the countries in these areas which are fighting in defence of their political independence and for independent development.

In the present situation in which colonialists and racists are trying to stifle the cause of national liberation, and intensify their colonial exploitation and domination, the progressive people of the world are faced with the important task of stepping up the struggle to eliminate colonialism and racism by a united effort. It is only when all forms of colonialism and racism have been eliminated from the globe that neither imperialist North America nor imperialist Western Europe will

exist any longer and that the people's liberation from the yoke of imperialism will be complete and final.

All the non-aligned countries must fight more energetically to eliminate colonialism and racism once and for all, and to accomplish the cause of national liberation. They must give every possible support and encouragement to the oppressed people who are struggling for national liberation and independence.

First, we must intensify together the struggle to put an end to the racist system of South Africa.

South Africa is a major stronghold of colonialism. South African racism is the cruellest form of colonialism. It is the major obstacle to the complete liberation and decolonialization of Africa. It is clear that without putting an end to the policy of apartheid in South Africa it will be impossible to accomplish the cause of national liberation, stabilize the situation in this area, and defend world peace and security.

The non-aligned countries must strengthen their joint efforts to support the South African people's struggle for freedom and liberation, the Namibian people's struggle against occupation by South Africa and for self-determination and independence, and the struggle of the peoples of the frontline countries and their neighbours against invasion and intervention by South Africa, and in defence of national independence.

The non-aligned countries must give political, diplomatic, material, financial, military and all other forms of support to the South African, Namibian and other peoples who are fighting in Southern Africa, and adopt active measures to isolate completely the racist regime of South Africa on the international scene. The Non-Aligned Movement should make sure that all its member nations and international organizations break off relations with the South African racist regime in all spheres of politics, the economy, culture, diplomacy and military affairs.

Second, we must foil the expansionist, aggressive schemes of the Israeli Zionists.

Zionism is a form of racism and colonialism. The aggressive, expansionist policy of the Israeli Zionists is the main factor obstructing

the triumphant advance of the cause of national liberation in the Middle East. Without thwarting Israel's aggressive schemes it will be impossible for the Middle East countries to achieve their independence, territorial integrity and progress, and will be impossible to guarantee lasting world peace and security.

The non-aligned countries must strongly denounce the criminal acts perpetrated by the Israeli Zionists in their opposition to the Arab peoples, and in their efforts to destroy the liberation cause of the Palestinian people. They must continue to extend active support and solidarity to the Palestinian and Arab peoples in their just cause. They should regard the struggle of the Palestinian and other Arab peoples as their common cause and take strong joint action to rebuff Israel in the fields of diplomacy, the economy, military affairs, culture, and marine and air transport in accordance with the decision of the Seventh Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries.

The just cause of the Palestinian and other Arab peoples for the restoration of land lost to them and of all the legitimate rights of Palestine, including the establishment of an independent country, must be accomplished. The Israeli Zionists must abandon their policy of expansion and annexation, and withdraw from all the occupied Arab land immediately.

The United States must stop giving the Israeli Zionists political and diplomatic support and military and economic aid, take their hands off the Middle East and discard their ambition for dominating this region.

Third, we must strengthen solidarity with those people who are fighting for independence and sovereignty, and to build a new society.

It is a duty common to all the non-aligned countries to give active support and encouragement to those peoples who are fighting for national independence and liberation.

The struggles of the people to win independence and sovereignty, and build a new society are linked by supporting and supplementing each other. If Africa is not free, Asia and Latin America cannot be free; if the struggle for independence and sovereignty, and for the building of a new society in Asia is successful, the conditions for the liberation

struggle of the African and Latin-American people will be favourable.

The non-aligned countries must give strong support to the struggle of the peoples of colonies for national liberation and independence, and extend more active encouragement to the Asian, African and Latin-American peoples who are fighting against imperialist aggression and intervention, and in defence of national independence and sovereignty.

The non-aligned countries must condemn the manoeuvres of the imperialists and their stooges to stamp out the people's just cause of creating a new life, completely isolate them, and never tolerate their aggression and interference, pressure and terrorism against sovereign states.

If the imperialists are allowed to infringe upon the non-aligned countries' sovereignty just as they please, their behaviour in the future may be even more arrogant, contemptuous of the fate of the whole Non-Aligned Movement. The Non-Aligned Movement must defend its member nations' sovereignty and independence, and their cause of building a new society from imperialist aggression and interference.

The downfall of imperialism and colonialism, and the triumph of the people's liberation cause are a historical trend that no force can ever check.

It is only when the non-aligned countries struggle energetically to eliminate imperialism and colonialism from the earth that the final victory of the national-liberation cause will be hastened.

#### **4. SOUTH-SOUTH COOPERATION AND ECONOMIC INDEPENDENCE**

South-South cooperation is a noble way for the developing countries to strengthen their economic independence and achieve complete economic freedom through close economic and technical cooperation.

Only when they are economically independent can the developing countries free their peoples from backwardness and poverty, starvation and disease, the consequences of imperialist colonial rule, and consolidate the political independence which they have already won.

A nation which is dependent on another country economically is bound to be politically subordinate. Economic dependence inevitably leads to political dependence, and economic subordination results in political subordination.

The struggle for economic independence is a second liberation struggle to remove economic backwardness and poverty and achieve complete national sovereignty.

The peoples of the developing countries have to take it upon themselves to attain economic independence. The imperialists never present developing countries with economic independence. The non-aligned and developing countries must pave the way for survival by effecting South-South cooperation under the banner of collective self-reliance, and build independent national economies.

Today the international economic situation is changing to the disadvantage of the developing countries. In these circumstances it is all the more urgent to effect South-South cooperation. As their people are faced with the threat of ever-worsening hunger and disease, the developing countries ought to pool their efforts, and support and cooperate with each other.

At the moment, the leaders of many non-aligned and developing countries are calling for close cooperation among these nations, insisting that they should shape their destinies independently and on their own responsibility. This is quite natural.

If they realize South-South cooperation, the developing countries will be able to build up sufficient strength to countervail and negotiate with the developed countries, and begin a period favourable to establishing a new international economic order.

There are many real situations and opportunities for South-South cooperation. The non-aligned and developing countries have vast territories rich in raw materials, and have acquired valuable experience

and expertise in the course of creating a new life. If they mobilize their manpower and material resources to the full, and build up economic cooperation and exchange on the principle of providing for each other's needs, the developing countries will find solutions to the difficult and complex problems that arise in building a new life without asking for the help of the developed countries. Historical experience shows that even poor and backward countries can achieve great things if they combine their efforts.

The non-aligned and developing countries must start in those areas where cooperation and exchange are feasible and urgent, and extend cooperation and exchange in every way so as to free their peoples from backwardness and poverty, hunger and disease, and achieve economic independence.

First, South-South cooperation must be expanded and developed in the sphere of food and agriculture.

Solving the problem of food and agriculture is of tremendous significance in pressing ahead with the building of a new society and promoting the people's welfare.

Cooperation and exchange in agriculture must be centred on laying one's own production foundations soundly with a view to attaining self-sufficiency in food within a short period of time.

It is a good and necessary thing that the UN and other international organizations are now taking steps to help some famine-stricken nations.

If the developing countries are to find a fundamental solution to the food problem, every country must increase grain production substantially by growing wholesome crops. Today many of the non-aligned and developing countries are unable to rid themselves of the hunger and poverty that are a result of imperialist colonial rule. This is not because farm lands are inadequate, but because they cannot raise crops properly on account of a lack of irrigation, machinery and technology.

We believe that firstly we must increase cooperation in the field of irrigation construction.

For the developing countries to avert damage from drought, and ensure good and regular harvests, it is necessary to establish an irrigation system. Most of the non-aligned and developing countries, including the African countries, have vast water resources, and the future for irrigation construction is promising.

It will be reasonable to work out together a “ten-year plan for irrigation construction in the developing countries” and a “ten-year plan for irrigation construction in Africa”, to establish an organization which coordinates cooperation in irrigation construction, and also set up irrigation enterprises jointly so as to put cooperation into effect in this field.

The non-aligned and developing countries must also cooperate closely with each other in their efforts to improve farming methods.

The most important way to increase grain production in the developing countries is to improve farming methods and grow crops scientifically and technologically. Improving farming methods alone will mean a great increase in agricultural production, even though a large investment is not required.

The developing countries must create new farming methods that suit the topographical and climatic conditions of every zone and country, and must make the beneficial experience gained in this improvement widely known.

The non-aligned and developing countries must establish wide cooperation and exchanges with each other in the field of seed selection and production.

Those countries whose technology and experience are good in this field must supply seed-selection and production technology to other developing countries, and provide progenitors where needed.

In order to increase grain production, it is necessary to intensify joint study and mutual cooperation in the field of agricultural science.

The non-aligned and developing countries must start a joint venture in agriculture.

A joint venture in agriculture is a rational way for the developing countries, including the African countries, to solve the food problem. If

they undertake an extensive agricultural joint venture the developing countries will not only be able to save the people from starvation by a rapid increase in agricultural production but also strengthen the foundations of agricultural production.

In this venture, it is important to organize and operate farms under joint management. These farms can be run in such a way that those countries which are backward in agricultural technology provide land and labour, and those whose agricultural technology is developed supply farm machinery, fertilizers, agricultural chemicals, other types of farming input, and technical knowledge.

It will be an effective measure for the non-aligned and developing countries to organize joint enterprises for the production of farm machinery and materials in order to satisfy their needs for farm machinery, irrigation facilities, fertilizers and agricultural chemicals. For the time being, it will be worthwhile for those developing countries which are relatively backward in expertise to build farm-machinery factories with the help of the more experienced countries, to increase the production of ox-drawn farm machines as well as other medium-sized and small farm machines and implements, and then use them.

We will intensify cooperation with the non-aligned and developing countries, and the African countries in particular, directing the main effort to ensuring that these countries lay solid foundations for agricultural production and attain self-sufficiency in food.

Secondly, cooperation and exchange must be promoted widely in the field of public health.

South-South cooperation in this field must be concentrated on solving the most urgent problems arising in providing health care for the people of every developing country by the year 2000.

The one problem which must be solved above all else in saving the peoples of non-aligned and developing countries from disease is to eliminate epidemics and parasitical diseases.

The non-aligned and developing countries must draw on the valuable experience gained so far in health care, at the same time cooperating actively to find more effective ways and means in this sphere.

In the first place, it is essential to develop medical science through a suitable combination of modern and traditional medicine, of modern treatment and folk remedy, and thus strengthen cooperation in this field.

If South-South cooperation in health care is to be substantial, efforts must be channelled into solving the problem of a shortage of medicines.

The non-aligned and developing countries must increase cooperation to develop the production of preventive medicines and also improve cooperation for the production of basic medicines. Cooperation to build medicine-producing bases in particular must be intensified. The establishment of joint-venture pharmaceutical enterprises is an important way of cooperating effectively in this matter. If joint-venture pharmaceutical enterprises are to be built and developed, it will be advisable to sign agreements on specialization in the production of medicines on a worldwide scale, in consideration of raw material resources, production capacity and the demand for medical supplies in each country.

The running of joint-venture hospitals will also be an effective means of cooperation in the sphere of public health.

Thirdly, it is necessary to take practical action to expand and develop cooperation and exchanges among the non-aligned and developing countries according to the programme for economic cooperation which has already been worked out.

First of all, in order to settle the problem of finance, a stumbling block in South-South cooperation, and to encourage mutual accommodation, it is necessary to establish a Bank of the South and adopt whatever measures are needed to promote trade and cooperation in the field of finance and currency.

Establishing a Global System of Trade Preferences between developing countries will be of great importance in the improvement of trade among these countries. The non-aligned and developing countries must make joint efforts to introduce this system as early as possible.

It is absolutely necessary to increase political support for South-South cooperation in order to implement the action programme for economic cooperation. The non-aligned and developing countries must discuss the

matter of South-South cooperation at high-level talks, and develop relevant conditions so that practical measures can be adopted.

The non-aligned countries must pay due attention to coordinating the economic cooperation programme of the Non-Aligned Movement and the economic cooperation programme of the Group of 77, and also to adjusting the cooperation items in the economic cooperation programme of the Non-Aligned Movement in a rational way.

The non-aligned and developing countries must ceaselessly explore and develop positive ways and means of widening South-South cooperation and increasing its effectiveness in line with the demands that arise in practice.

They must overcome all difficulties in developing economic and technical cooperation by displaying a spirit of mutual cooperation and solidarity to the highest degree.

If they effect South-South cooperation completely in agriculture, public health and other essential areas, they will make great strides in their efforts to wipe out poverty and disease, and win economic independence. In addition, if economic and technical cooperation between developing countries proves successful, the economic situation throughout the world will improve, and this will then have a positive effect on North-South relations.

## **5. THE ESTABLISHMENT OF A NEW INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC ORDER**

One of the important tasks confronting the non-aligned and developing countries today is to do away with the old international economic order and to establish a new, fair one based on the principles of independence, equality and mutual benefit.

In the past, these countries mapped out a joint strategy for the establishment of a new international economic order and fought to put it

into effect. As a result of the energetic efforts made by these countries, many international conferences, including a special session of the UN General Assembly, have adopted a declaration and programmes of action for establishing a new international economic order, taken the relevant steps and formed various international organizations.

However, owing to the unfair standpoint and attitude of the developed capitalist countries in maintaining the old international economic order, the struggle of the developing countries to establish a new international economic order has not made any real progress.

The developed capitalist countries are reluctant to give up meekly their monopolistic position in international economic relations, nor do they accept the proposal of the developing countries for negotiations to establish a new international economic order.

Relying, as ever, on the old international economic order, the imperialists are plundering the developing countries of their natural resources, paying only a pittance for the results of their peoples' labour and obstructing the economic development of these countries. Protective trade and the high-interest policy pursued by the developed countries along with the continually worsening terms of trade and the massive increase in foreign debts of the developing countries are severely hampering the social and economic development of the non-aligned and developing countries. Because of the unfair international economic order, the economies of the developing countries are growing weaker and becoming stagnant. The economic situation in the African countries in particular is worsening.

The long-drawn-out world economic crisis and the difficult economic situation in the developing countries, for which the unjust economic order is responsible, are making the world situation more unstable and threatening justice and peace.

In reality, without abolishing the old economic order, the product of the colonial system, and the lever of imperialist exploitation and plunder it will be impossible for the non-aligned and developing countries to free themselves from international exploitation and plunder so that they can develop.

It is only when they reorganize the wide range of unfair and unreasonable economic relations in all branches of trade, finance, currency and so on that the developing countries can eliminate the source of international exploitation and create favourable conditions for their economic development.

The non-aligned and developing countries must fight to establish a new international economic order in accordance with a joint strategy.

First, they must continue to make patient efforts to promote negotiations for the establishment of a new international economic order.

An important factor in implementing a strategy for negotiations is for the non-aligned and developing countries to take concerted action. The non-aligned and developing countries must together lay down the strategy for negotiations to suit the international economic situation, explore procedures and ways for negotiations, and effectively coordinate the policy and stand of negotiations so as to enhance the status of negotiations. For this purpose, it would be a realistic idea to set up a Ministerial Standing Committee of the non-aligned and other developing countries, as recommended by the Foreign Ministers' Conference of the Coordinating Bureau held in New Delhi.

The establishment of a new international economic order will be beneficial for the developed countries as well. The developed countries should accept the just proposal of the non-aligned and developing countries for holding negotiations on a worldwide scale to establish a new international economic order.

Secondly, efforts should be directed at establishing a fair and stable international system of finance and currency.

The economic difficulties of the developing countries and the world economic crisis have much to do with the unfair international system of finance and currency. This system must be reorganized to meet the needs of today and in favour of economic progress for the developing countries.

A new international system of finance and currency must be a fair one capable of facilitating economic cooperation on a worldwide scale and of revitalizing the world economy by eliminating the privileges and arbitrariness of the developed capitalist countries, and by

guaranteeing the stability of monetary circulation and the financial conditions for international trade. To this end, international financial agencies should adopt resolutions which will guarantee equality between developing and developed countries, establish a stable and realistic exchange rate system, create international liquidity according to demand and distribute it fairly between the developing and the developed countries.

The foreign debt problem of the developing countries, too, must be solved in a fair and comprehensive manner, thereby ensuring their social and economic development and stability.

The non-aligned and developing countries should, at an early date, hold an international conference on finance and currency for development to provide an occasion for setting up a new international system of finance and currency.

Thirdly, an active effort must be made to establish a new system of trade.

At present a non-equivalent exchange is being made, as ever, in trade between the developing and developed countries. The developing countries sell raw materials at low prices and buy manufactured goods at exorbitant prices, and the share that manufactured goods make up of the exports of these countries is continually decreasing. The result is that the trade deficit of the developing countries is increasing all the time, and their economic difficulties are becoming more serious.

The non-aligned and developing countries should prevent price fluctuations of primary products, and increase their earnings from exports by remodelling the unfair price system in trade and establishing a fair and profitable price system for primary products. What is important here is to strengthen the existing producers' associations, while at the same time forming new associations and enhancing their role.

The setting up of a common fund for the general plan of primary products will be an important step for the developing countries to stabilize prices and income through exporting primary products. In order to ensure that the common fund is inaugurated as soon as possible, the developing countries will have to hasten their approval of

an agreement for establishing this common fund.

The developed countries must give up their protectionist policies and make the markets more open to the developing countries. They should also remove tariff and non-tariff barriers for major products of the developing countries, take measures to stabilize export incomes for these countries and allow them to increase their share of the processing, sale, distribution and transportation of raw materials and products.

The preferential treatment that is given to the products of the developing countries must be further improved, and international efforts made to establish fair trade principles and regulations.

The developing countries should not allow the developed countries to use the system of general preferences as a means of putting pressure on them, but fight against any act of encroachment upon their permanent sovereignty over their natural resources.

If the non-aligned and developing countries wage a vigorous struggle together to establish a new, fair international economic order, the developed countries will have to comply, in the long run, with the demands of the developing countries whether they like it or not.

## **6. THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE NON-ALIGNED MOVEMENT**

To strengthen and develop the Non-Aligned Movement steadily is an important guarantee for the accomplishment of the cause of independence in opposition to imperialism.

The Non-Aligned Movement is a powerful independent force of our times which is opposed to imperialism. Only when this movement is strengthened will it be possible to succeed in repelling all forms of imperialist domination and subjugation, aggression and intervention, defend the sovereignty of the non-aligned countries and settle not only the problem of establishing a new international economic order but

also all other issues in the international arena in accordance with the aspirations and desires of the peoples of the newly-emergent countries for independence. And it will also make it possible to prevent a nuclear war, defend universal peace and security, and give a strong impetus to the cause of national liberation.

It is all the more urgent to strengthen the Non-Aligned Movement in view of the present complex international situation and the blatant moves of the outside forces to make the Non-Aligned Movement deviate from its original principles.

All the non-aligned countries should make strenuous efforts to strengthen and develop the Non-Aligned Movement so that this movement may creditably carry out its important duty to our times and to mankind.

First, the non-aligned countries should remain loyal to the ideals and principles of the movement which were confirmed at their previous Summit Conferences.

Adhering to the principles and ideals of the Non-Aligned Movement is a fundamental question on which the development of this movement and its future depend.

Independence in the face of imperialism is the basic ideal of the Non-Aligned Movement, and it is its fundamental principle to act independently and refrain from joining any bloc. Only when all its member nations hold fast to independence can the movement maintain its intrinsic character, strengthen its power and realize the noble ideal of independence in the face of imperialism. If they fail to maintain independence, the Non-Aligned Movement will inevitably deteriorate.

The non-aligned countries must always stick firmly to independence in all their activities. They must categorically reject all foreign interference and must not follow other countries blindly. They must respect the independence of other countries and refrain from interfering in others' internal affairs or infringing upon their interests.

They should consistently maintain the basic principle of remaining separate from any bloc and resolutely fight against any attempt to side-track the movement from its original principle and purpose.

All the member nations of the Non-Aligned Movement must advance boldly under the banner of independence, and thus contribute actively to the success of the cause of independence in the face of imperialism.

Secondly, the non-aligned countries must uphold and develop the tradition of unity.

Unity is the life and soul of this movement and the source of its power. Without unity, it is impossible to conceive that this movement could exist, nor could we talk about its power. Throughout history it has been proved: Together we stand, divided we fall.

The Non-Aligned Movement has endeavoured to achieve unity during the 25 years since its inauguration, and has fought using its unity as a weapon. As a result, a fine tradition of regarding unity as of the utmost importance and subordinating everything to it has been established. The non-aligned countries must preserve and develop this tradition, and consolidate the unity and cohesion of the Non-Aligned Movement.

They must make efforts to foster and develop the factors that unite them and get rid of those that divide them, and must work exclusively towards unity. They must not antagonize or quarrel with each other, duped by the imperialists' instigations and tricks, but must counter their manoeuvres for division and alienation with the strategy of unity.

The non-aligned countries must refrain from resorting to force against each other or turning disputes into military conflicts. At present, the disputes among these countries are a great obstacle to the unity and cohesion of the Non-Aligned Movement. The non-aligned countries must not allow the disputes between some of them to drag on, but take decisive steps to end them.

The disputes between non-aligned countries should be settled peacefully, by the parties concerned, free from foreign interference, through negotiations in the national interests of both sides and in the interests of the Non-Aligned Movement in general, based on the principle of unity. The non-aligned countries should not support or oppose either side in the disputes between newly-emergent countries

but, from an unbiased point of view, must help the parties concerned in every way to settle disputes by negotiation.

They should settle every issue arising in the relationships between them on the principles of complete equality, independence, territorial integrity, mutual respect and non-interference in each other's affairs. This is the only way that united and cooperative relations between the non-aligned countries can be realistic and durable and that the movement can develop as an integrated force.

Thirdly, new ways of further enhancing the effectiveness and capacity for action of the Non-Aligned Movement should be explored through joint efforts.

Increasing the effectiveness and capacity for action of the Non-Aligned Movement is the current requirement for strengthening and developing this movement. Today the Non-Aligned Movement is expanding on a worldwide scale, cooperation between its member nations is developing in greater depth, and complicated issues requiring prompt settlement are arising one after the other in international relations. In keeping with this situation, the effectiveness and capacity for action of the Non-Aligned Movement should be increased decisively.

To do so, it is important to adjust the activities of the non-aligned countries effectively, perfect their methods of action and their procedures and build up a proper structure, so as to enable the Non-Aligned Movement to take a more active part in settling international issues.

We are convinced that the Eighth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries will be a conference of historical significance in solving important problems arising at present in the Non-Aligned Movement, and in further strengthening and developing it.

The Government of the DPRK will in the future, too, remain loyal to the principles and ideal of the Non-Aligned Movement and will make every effort to strengthen and develop this movement.

**FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF PHYSICAL  
EDUCATION AND SPORT  
IN THE NON-ALIGNED COUNTRIES**

**Speech Made at a Luncheon in Honour of Those  
Attending the Second Conference of Ministers  
and Top Officials in Physical Education  
and Sport of Non-Aligned Countries**

*July 8, 1986*

Esteemed delegates,  
Comrades and friends,

Thanks to your devoted efforts, the Second Conference of Ministers and Top Officials in Physical Education and Sport of Non-Aligned Countries which has been followed with much expectation and interest by the progressive people and sportsmen throughout the world, is carrying out its work successfully.

Our people are delighted indeed that the Second Conference of Ministers and Top Officials in Physical Education and Sport of Non-Aligned Countries is taking place in this country, and offer a warm welcome to all their distinguished guests, the delegates from various continents.

This conference will be an important landmark in the promotion of physical education and sport in the non-aligned countries because they are sharing each other's success and experience gained in physical culture and sport, and are seriously discussing measures and ways in which to develop exchange and cooperation in this field. This will

make a great contribution to the strengthening of the Non-Aligned Movement as a whole.

At this conference, many delegates from different countries have expressed their firm solidarity with the revolutionary cause of our people, and have fully supported the proposal of our Republic for the cohosting of the 24th Olympic Games by the north and the south of Korea.

I express my warm gratitude to those delegates from various countries who have offered their active support, encouragement and inspiration to our people in their just struggle, and I offer my sincere good wishes for the success of this conference.

Today, the non-aligned and other developing countries are faced with the urgent tasks of consolidating the political independence they have already won and achieving economic self-reliance, whilst at the same time developing physical culture and sport.

Physical culture and sport are very important in training people to be fully developed social beings. Physical strength is guaranteed by physical training and sport, and only people with physical strength can become powerful beings with the physical and mental ability to work well. To develop physical education and sport, and prepare everyone fully for labour and national defence is the way to press ahead with the revolution and construction, and achieve national prosperity.

Imperialist colonial rule has had very harmful effects on physical education and sport as well in the newly-independent countries. The non-aligned countries must work hard to improve rapidly their shortcomings in physical education and sport which are a result of the old society and to develop them to meet the requirements of the new society that is under construction.

Physical education and sport in the non-aligned countries must benefit the people and promote the health of the masses. The non-aligned countries must reject professionalism and commercialization in physical culture and sport, and develop them on a mass basis so as to let all the people take part in physical training and sporting activities, and to make these activities contribute to the

realization of the people's cause of independence.

In order to develop physical education and sport, the non-aligned countries must strengthen international cooperation and exchanges in this field.

Today the aspirations of the non-aligned countries to develop their national sporting activities are growing incessantly in their hard struggle to build a new, independent society, and a number of the non-aligned countries have achieved great success in the Olympic Games, world championships and other international events. If the non-aligned countries share each other's experience and techniques, send sports teams to each other frequently and strengthen their support and cooperation in various aspects based on the success they have had in sport, they will all be able to rapidly develop sporting skills and contribute to the promotion of solidarity, and friendly cooperative relations among the non-aligned countries.

An important task facing the peoples and sportsmen of the non-aligned countries today is to oppose imperialist high-handedness in sporting matters, and fight to establish a new order in international sport.

The imperialists, still relying on the old and outmoded order in international sport, are holding the most privileged position and are domineering in sporting matters, precipitating professionalism and commercialization in sport. This is absolutely intolerable both in view of the noble aim of sport and from the humanitarian point of view. Even more intolerable still is the fact that the imperialists are trying to use the Olympic Games and other international sporting events for an ulterior motive, a political purpose.

The decision to hold the 24th Olympic Games in Seoul has revealed in full the schemes on the part of the imperialists to use sport for a sinister political end. By holding the 24th Olympic Games in Seoul the US imperialists are seeking to attain their insidious political purpose of painting south Korea, their colony, as an "independent state" and inciting discord and confrontation between the north and the south so as to perpetuate the division of our country into "two Koreas". In this

way US imperialism is creating grave difficulties for the reunification of our country, which is the greatest national desire of our people, and is driving the Olympic movement to the point of division, contrary to the desire of the world's people.

We proposed the cohosting by the north and the south of Korea of the 24th Olympic Games with a view to saving the Olympic movement from division, holding the forthcoming Olympic Games without any problems and creating a favourable environment for the peaceful reunification of our country.

If the 24th Olympic Games are cohosted by the north and the south of Korea, the problem facing many of the world's countries of whether or not to participate in the Olympic Games, particularly in the case of Seoul, will be settled smoothly, the Olympic movement will be saved from crisis, and it will have a good influence on settling the question of the reunification of our country. Because it is reasonable and rational our proposal that the Olympic Games should be cohosted enjoys positive support and is welcomed by the governments and peoples of various countries of the world, including the socialist and non-aligned countries.

Comrades and friends,

An urgent matter now facing the peoples of the non-aligned countries and peace-loving people throughout the world is the prevention of another world war and the safeguarding of peace. It is only when peace is guaranteed that the non-aligned and newly-emergent countries will be able to succeed in building a new society, and also develop physical culture and sport.

The world's people want peace, but the imperialists are continuing their aggressive war games more openly. As a result, the present international situation is becoming more complicated and tense than ever before, and the threat of another world war, a thermonuclear war, is growing.

In order to avert another world war and safeguard peace, all the peace-loving people of the world should form a broad united front and strongly promote an anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement. The

peoples of the non-aligned countries and all the other peace-loving peoples in the world should make a concerted effort to hold in check the imperialist policy of building up arms and their manoeuvres to militarize outer space and should try hard to establish and expand nuclear-free peace zones throughout the world.

The Eighth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries is to be held soon in Harare, the capital of Zimbabwe. This conference will be an important landmark in strengthening unity and solidarity in the Non-Aligned Movement, and in furthering its development.

All the peoples of the non-aligned countries should strive to strengthen and develop the Non-Aligned Movement, which is a powerful anti-imperialist force standing for independence in our times, and lift it to a higher level. They should hold fast to the ideals and principles of the Non-Aligned Movement, and strengthen their unity, fighting to put an end to the privileges and high-handedness of the imperialists in international affairs and establish a new, just international order and system.

It is the unfailing policy of the Government of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea to work hard to strengthen and develop the Non-Aligned Movement. The Government of our Republic will also, as in the past, uphold the banner of independence, friendship and peace, unite and cooperate closely with all the non-aligned countries, and work with them for the common cause.

We offer our active support to and firm solidarity with the peoples of all the countries of Asia, Africa and Latin America, including those in the Middle East, Southern Africa and Central America, who are fighting against imperialism, colonialism, racism and Zionism, and for national independence and the building of a new society.

We will make every effort to actively promote cooperation and exchanges between the non-aligned countries in the field of physical culture and sport, as well as in the fields of politics and economics, and to implement those steps agreed upon at the Second Conference of Ministers and Top Officials in Physical Education and Sport of Non-Aligned Countries.

I wish those attending this conference every success in their efforts to develop physical culture and sport in the future. I would like to propose a toast:

To the friendship and solidarity between the people of Korea and those of the non-aligned countries,

To the development of physical culture and sport in the non-aligned countries,

To the strengthening and development of the Non-Aligned Movement,

To the health of the ministers of physical education and sport from various countries and all other foreign guests who are attending the conference, and

To the health of all comrades and friends present here.

**CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE  
TO THE VARIOUS POLITICAL PARTIES,  
SOCIAL ORGANIZATIONS AND PEOPLE  
OF ALL STRATA UNDER THE DEMOCRATIC  
FRONT FOR THE REUNIFICATION  
OF KOREA**

*July 21, 1986*

Today our people are greeting the 40th anniversary of the formation of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea (DFRK) at a time when the burning desire of the whole nation for the country's independent and peaceful reunification, and their aspiration for great national unity are increasing with the passage of time.

On the occasion of this meaningful day I extend warm congratulations to the various political parties, social organizations and people of all strata under the DFRK who have waged an unremitting struggle for the independent and peaceful reunification of the motherland, and for the prosperity and development of the nation over the past 40 years.

The DFRK is a nationwide united-front organization which has been formed in accordance with the common aspiration of the patriotic and democratic political parties, social organizations and people of all strata to completely realize and defend national sovereignty, and achieve the prosperity of the country and the nation, as well as with the requirement of the law of revolutionary development in our country.

The formation of the DFRK was the brilliant fruit of our

united-front line which we have firmly maintained since the period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. It was a historic event of great significance in our people's struggle for the building of a new society and for the reunification of the country. With the formation of the DFRK all the democratic political parties, social organizations and patriotic people that love the country and wish the reunification of the nation came to be united as one under the banner of reunification and unity, irrespective of their differences in ideologies, political views and religious beliefs. Moreover, relying on the united efforts of the nation, they were able to wage a more vigorous struggle for the building of a new society, and for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

Over the past 40 years since its formation, the DFRK has travelled a glorious road of struggle and victory, and creditably carried out the honourable task assigned to it.

The DFRK has dynamically organized and mobilized various political parties, social organizations and broad sections of the masses under it for the struggle for the prosperity of the country and the nation. The people of all strata in the northern half of Korea have bravely surmounted the difficulties and hardships they faced on the way to building a new country, and worked devotedly. They have thus successfully carried out the democratic and socialist revolutions, and established a very advanced socialist system in this land. They have converted our country, which was once subordinated and backward, into a glorious socialist country which is independent in politics, self-sufficient in the economy and self-reliant in defence.

The DFRK has conducted an unremitting nationwide struggle to achieve the reunification of the country, a long-cherished desire of the nation, in an independent and peaceful way. It has exposed and frustrated all the manoeuvres of the divisionists at home and abroad to keep our nation divided for ever and given active support and encouragement to the south Korean people in their struggle for independence, democracy and reunification. It has vigorously worked to firmly rally all the Korean compatriots in the north, south and

abroad into a single great national united front.

Through the glorious struggle for the prosperity and development of the country, and for national reunification, the DFRK has been developed in strength into a united-front organization which is more solid and powerful than ever.

I highly appreciate the great exploits the DFRK has accomplished for the country and the people in the past, and I am extremely pleased that the DFRK is now admirably playing its role as a united-front organization for realizing the great unity of the whole nation under the banner of reunification.

The fundamental mission of the DFRK at present is to firmly rally all the Korean compatriots in the north, south and abroad into the ranks of a single united front and dynamically mobilize them to struggle for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

Our people's cause of national reunification has not yet been realized; to reunify the country is still the most urgent task facing the entire Korean people.

The Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic have put forward many reasonable policies to reunify the country in an independent and peaceful way, in accordance with the unanimous aspiration and desire of the entire Korean people, and have made every possible effort to put them into effect.

However, the United States and the south Korean authorities refuse to accept our fair proposals for peaceful reunification. Moreover, they are resorting to every conceivable scheme to divide our country into "two Koreas" for ever. In order to perpetuate Korea's division and realize its strategy towards Asia, the United States has turned south Korea into an enormous nuclear armoury and the largest advanced nuclear base in the Far East. It is increasing the danger of war in our country by frequently holding large-scale war manoeuvres.

The present reality in our country raises a serious question for the entire Korean people—whether the Korean nation should be divided into two for ever in accordance with the "two Koreas" policy of the United States or realize reunification at the earliest possible date,

whether they should allow the US imperialists to turn their dear homeland into a nuclear battlefield for the fulfilment of their aggressive ambition or should resolutely prevent war and defend peace.

All those who love their motherland and value the future of the nation, should turn out for the accomplishment of the common cause of the nation for peace and the peaceful reunification of the country. They must resolutely fight to check the moves of the divisive elements to create “two Koreas” and provoke a new war, and to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country in firm unity, by transcending differences in ideologies, social systems, party affiliations and political views.

The people in the northern half of Korea should speed up the revolution and construction more energetically for the country’s reunification and the prosperity of the nation. In hearty response to the programme of modelling the whole of society on the Juche idea, they should make a new advance in socialist construction, and do everything possible to strengthen the politico-ideological unity and cohesion of the entire people.

At present the patriotic young people and students, and the people of all strata in south Korea are bravely fighting for the sovereignty of the nation and for their democratic rights as well as for the peaceful reunification of the country in defiance of the military fascists’ harsh repression and persecution. They are directing the spearhead of their struggle against the US imperialist aggressors and the south Korean puppet rulers. The democratic political parties, social organizations and the people of all strata in south Korea should wage an unremitting and dynamic struggle, upholding still more the banner of anti-US independence and anti-fascist democracy. They should thus drive out the US imperialists from south Korea, achieve social democracy and accelerate the country’s reunification.

The struggle of the south Korean people is a struggle to make south Korean society independent and democratic. At the same time, it is one facet of the nationwide struggle for the country’s reunification. The

people in the northern half of Korea and the overseas Korean compatriots must give active support and encouragement to the righteous patriotic struggle of the south Korean people in every possible way.

Striving for the country's reunification is a noble duty of the entire Korean nation, including our overseas compatriots. All the overseas Korean organizations and our compatriots of all strata abroad, including Chongryon and the 700,000 Korean compatriots in Japan, should rise up in firm unity for the nationwide struggle for the country's reunification.

In order to hasten the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, we should continuously strengthen our solidarity with the revolutionary forces of other countries. All the political parties and social organizations under the DFRK should make every effort to develop the relations of friendship and cooperation with their progressive counterparts in various countries. They should thus increase the ranks of the supporters and sympathizers for our revolution and create a climate abroad which is favourable to our country's reunification.

The DFRK is entrusted with an extremely heavy duty in the struggle for achieving the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, which is the supreme desire of our people.

I firmly believe that all the political parties, social organizations and people of all strata under the DFRK will, in the future too, as in the past, discharge their honourable duty with credit by making strong endeavours for the country's independent and peaceful reunification, and for the prosperity and development of the nation.

# **PREVENTING WAR AND PRESERVING PEACE ARE THE BURNING TASKS OF MANKIND**

**Speech at a Banquet Given in Honour of the Participants  
in the Pyongyang International Conference  
for Denuclearization and Peace on the Korean Peninsula**

*September 6, 1986*

Esteemed delegates,  
Comrades and friends,

At this time when it is the burning task of mankind to prevent a new world war, a thermonuclear war, and preserve peace, an international conference for denuclearization and peace on the Korean peninsula is being held in Pyongyang, the capital of our country, as an expression of the common aspiration and desire of the Korean people and peace-loving people throughout the world.

I am very pleased to see this conference being held in our country in the International Year of Peace, and I should like to express my warm welcome to you, the delegates to the conference, who have come with a high sense of duty to the cause of world peace and with feelings of firm solidarity with our people.

Easing tensions and removing the danger of nuclear war on the Korean peninsula are burning questions that await solution in the international political arena.

The present situation on the Korean peninsula is very tense, and the danger of nuclear war is growing with every passing day. Armed

soldiers in the north and the south of our country are aiming their guns at each other from both sides of the Military Demarcation Line. To the south of this line there are more than 40,000 US troops equipped with nuclear weapons and nearly one million south Korean soldiers. They are prepared to attack the north at any minute.

US nuclear warheads are constantly levelled at Pyongyang, where you are now holding a conference. It is precisely here that the delegates, champions of peace and preeminent figures from many countries, are meeting in behalf of denuclearization and peace; this fact arouses a keen awareness of the danger of nuclear war and the need to fight for peace and stresses the great importance of this meeting. This Pyongyang international conference, which is attracting attention from the world's public, will be a severe blow to the imperialist nuclear maniacs and warlike elements. It will give the Korean people and peace lovers throughout the world great strength and inspiration in their struggle for peace.

The tension and the danger of nuclear war on the Korean peninsula are the direct products of the United States' Korean policy and Asian strategy.

The aim of the United States with regard to Korea is to maintain its domination over south Korea as its colony by keeping Korea divided forever through the creation of "two Koreas" and, with south Korea as its stepping-stone, to invade the northern half of Korea, the socialist countries in Asia and, further, the whole of the Asian continent.

In order to achieve their aggressive aims the US imperialists are strengthening their aggressive armed forces, including nuclear weapons, on a large scale in south Korea and making frantic efforts to unleash another war. As you well know, the United States has introduced into the small land of south Korea a vast number of nuclear weapons, a number four times greater than it has in the NATO area in terms of density of nuclear deployment. Not satisfied with this, the United States is going to ship more new types of nuclear and chemical weapons into south Korea in the future and build scores of special nuclear armouries there. The US imperialists are growing more

enthusiastic about their manoeuvres to unleash a nuclear war from south Korea. Because of this, not a day passes without the rumble of gunfire and the air is thick with fumes of gunpowder in south Korea.

The US imperialists are more blatantly conspiring to form a tripartite military alliance among the United States, Japan and south Korea for the purpose of drawing Japanese militarists into implementing their aggressive Asian strategy. This shows that the United States' actions for aggression and war in the Far East are progressing at a more dangerous stage as the days go by.

In view of the aggressive policy of the United States, our Party and the Government of our Republic are working hard to ease the tension and preserve peace on the Korean peninsula and to settle the Korean question by peaceful means.

Holding fast to the basic policy of achieving national reunification in an independent and peaceful way true to our heavy responsibility to the Korean nation and with a noble sense of duty to the cause of world peace, we have put forward many reasonable and constructive proposals for peace and made most sincere efforts to put them into effect.

Our fair and reasonable peace proposals, including the proposal for tripartite talks to replace the Korean Armistice Agreement with a peace agreement and adopt a nonaggression declaration between the north and the south, have already been widely publicized to the people of the world. This year alone we made an important proposal for talks between military authorities to remove the tension and military confrontation on the Korean peninsula and, through a statement by the Government of our Republic, also made a positive peace proposal to convert the Korean peninsula to a nuclear-free peace zone.

But none of our peace proposals has been put into effect so far, and the situation on the Korean peninsula is becoming more and more acute. This is entirely because the United States and the south Korean authorities do not want detente and peace, but are continuing to pursue the policy of aggression and war.

So long as the United States' Korean policy and Asian strategy

remain unchanged and so long as US troops are stationed in south Korea, resorting to manoeuvres for aggression, it is impossible to guarantee lasting peace on the Korean peninsula and settle the question of the reunification of our country. If we are to ease the tension and guarantee peace on the Korean peninsula and settle Korea's reunification question in a peaceful way, we must get all the nuclear arms and the US troops withdrawn from south Korea.

The issue of keeping peace and security on the Korean peninsula is directly related to the question of preserving peace and security in the world, and without peace and security on the Korean peninsula, world peace and security are unthinkable.

Because south Korea has become a forward nuclear base, the largest of its kind in the Far East, and because the acute situation continues on the Korean peninsula, war may break out at any minute in our country. If war breaks out in Korea, it can immediately develop into a global nuclear war. Therefore, the present situation on the Korean peninsula can only be a grave threat not only to our people, but to our neighbours and people in the rest of the world.

Today peace-loving governments and peoples of many countries are watching and showing deep concern for the critical situation on the Korean peninsula and giving active support and encouragement to our people in their struggle to prevent war, preserve peace and achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

If the US troops are compelled to withdraw from south Korea and a nuclear-free peace zone is established on the Korean peninsula by the joint struggle of our people and progressive people throughout the world, one of the most dangerous sources of nuclear war in the world will be removed and great progress will be made in preserving peace in Asia and the world.

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of our Republic, I take advantage of this opportunity to express my deep thanks to the fraternal socialist countries, non-aligned countries, and all the other progressive countries and peace-loving people in the world for their positive

support and encouragement for our people's struggle for peace on the Korean peninsula and the peaceful reunification of the country and for their active support for and solidarity with our proposal to convert the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free peace zone.

Delegates,

Dominating the world by force is an immutable world strategy of US imperialism. Its strategy for world domination is now all the more dangerous because of the adventurous attempt of the US rulers to carry it out through nuclear superiority.

With the evil aim of gaining a nuclear advantage, the US imperialists are now increasing nuclear armament, accelerating the large-scale development, renewal, production and deployment of nuclear weapons, and stepping up their acts of aggression against progressive countries in all parts of the world. In particular, they are trying to extend the nuclear arms race to outer space by putting forward an adventurous "Star Wars" programme. They are producing binary chemical weapons, new mass destruction weapons, in an attempt to deploy them in many parts of the world.

Because of their war policy and stratagems to increase nuclear weapons, the black cloud of nuclear war is now hanging heavily over the world and mankind is being threatened with this war. Unless nuclear war is prevented, humankind will have to suffer irretrievable calamities and holocaust. Nuclear war, which threatens the existence and civilization of humanity, must be prevented in every possible way, and peace must be preserved.

In order to prevent another world war, a thermonuclear war, and preserve peace, we must develop a powerful worldwide struggle to check the imperialists' nuclear arms race and their plans for a nuclear war.

The imperialists are subservient to the strong and violent toward the weak. If people who love peace and justice throughout the world are closely united, they can be invincible and, by their united efforts, frustrate the imperialists' plans for a nuclear war and defend peace.

By forming a broad united front and spiritedly carrying on the

anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement, all the peace-loving people of the world can check the imperialists' reckless manoeuvres to build up nuclear arms and militarize outer space, bring about complete nuclear disarmament and frustrate their plans for aggression and war, which are daily becoming more blatant.

As long as nuclear weapons exist on our planet, the danger of nuclear war will not disappear and mankind cannot be free from constant nuclear threat. Therefore, the testing, production and deployment of nuclear weapons must be banned, existing weapons of different kinds reduced and, further, all nuclear weapons abolished. This is the only way mankind can free itself once and for all from the danger of nuclear holocaust and maintain lasting world peace.

At present, the call for denuclearization and peace is ringing out loudly from Asia, Europe and many other parts of the world, and the anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement is developing strongly.

The Communist Party and Government of the Soviet Union made positive peace proposals to ban nuclear tests, reduce nuclear armaments, prevent the militarization of outer space and abolish all nuclear and chemical weapons by the end of this century. Recently, they also took a step on their own initiative to extend the period of the unilateral freezing of nuclear tests to January 1, 1987. This clearly shows the responsible attitude and peace-loving foreign policy of the Communist Party and Government of the Soviet Union to remove the danger of nuclear war and defend world peace and security.

We firmly support the peace proposals of the Soviet Union to preserve universal peace and security and extend solidarity to the Soviet people in their struggle to implement them.

Establishing nuclear-free peace zones and expanding them are important ways to bring about nuclear arms' reduction, prevent nuclear war and defend peace.

We fully support the socialist countries and peoples in Europe and the Balkans in their struggle to create nuclear-free peace zones on the Balkan Peninsula and in many parts of Europe and express our firm solidarity with them in the struggle.

We also strongly support the peace-loving people of the world in their struggle to establish nuclear-free peace zones in different parts of the world, including Africa, the Middle East, the Indian Ocean and the South Pacific Ocean.

Our people love peace, and working for peace is a consistent foreign policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic. Our Party and Government will, in future as well, resolutely fight to prevent nuclear war and preserve peace in firm unity with the peoples of socialist countries, non-aligned countries and all peace-loving people throughout the world, under the unfurled banner of independence, friendship and peace.

In the hope that the Pyongyang International Conference for Denuclearization and Peace on the Korean Peninsula will proceed satisfactorily and achieve excellent results and that you delegates will win a new victory in your future efforts for peace against imperialism, I should like to propose a toast:

To militant friendship and solidarity between the Korean people and the peoples of socialist countries, non-aligned countries and other peace-loving people the world over,

To denuclearization and peace on the Korean peninsula,

To world peace and the prosperity of mankind,

To the health of all the delegates, representatives of international organizations and all the other foreign guests taking part in the conference, and

To the health of all the comrades and friends present here.

## **CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE TO THE 14TH CONGRESS OF THE GENERAL ASSOCIATION OF KOREAN RESIDENTS IN JAPAN**

*September 26, 1986*

On the occasion of the historic 14th Congress of the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan (Chongryon), which will be a new milestone in developing the movement of Koreans in Japan, I extend my warm congratulations to the deputies attending the congress with the great pride and honour of their devoted patriotic activities, and to all 700,000 Korean compatriots in Japan.

During the period under review, the officials of Chongryon and other compatriots have successfully carried out the honourable patriotic tasks set by the 13th Congress, out of their ardent love for their socialist motherland and with firm conviction, and written a brilliant chapter in the glorious history of Chongryon.

By working hard to establish the ideological system of Juche within its ranks, Chongryon has united its officials and other compatriots more solidly behind our Party and the Government of the Republic, strengthened its organizations at all levels as reliable patriotic organizations of Juche and laid strong organizational and ideological foundations which will ensure the future of the movement of Koreans in Japan.

During the period under review, Chongryon has powerfully roused its officials and other compatriots for the patriotic struggle for the prosperity of their socialist motherland, and for the independent and

peaceful reunification of the country, successfully overcoming challenging difficulties and obstacles despite the complicated circumstances. It has thus accomplished great deeds for the motherland and nation and added to its honour as an organization of overseas citizens of Juche.

Our motherland and our nation take great pride in having such a powerful organization of overseas compatriots as Chongryon which has been tempered through trials for a long time and united solidly in ideology and purpose, such loyal ranks as the Chongryon officials who are totally devoted to the cause of Juche, and such ardent patriots as the compatriots in Japan who value the destiny of their motherland and nation above all.

I speak highly of the revolutionary enthusiasm and patriotic devotion displayed by the Chongryon officials and other compatriots during the period under review, and express my warm thanks to all of them.

Chongryon, at its 14th Congress, will set important tasks for developing the movement of Koreans in Japan onto a higher stage.

In order to meet the requirement of the movement of Koreans in Japan at the stage of a new turning-point, Chongryon must strengthen its organizations at all levels in every way, adhering more firmly to the policy of modelling its ranks on the Juche idea, and win a greater victory in the work for national reunification and in all other patriotic activities.

Chongryon must give priority to establishing the ideological system of Juche thoroughly within itself, and further building up its organizations at all levels organizationally and ideologically.

To strengthen Chongryon organizationally and ideologically is a pressing requirement of the developing reality and a fundamental question bearing on the destiny of the movement of Koreans in Japan. In keeping with the changed circumstances and the characteristics of the compatriots, Chongryon must build up its organization internally, improve its work system and methods steadily, mix intimately with the compatriots to listen to their opinions, and actively protect their rights

and interests, thus winning over many more compatriots to its side.

Making an active contribution to the cause of national reunification and the building of the socialist motherland is an important task of Chongryon.

Meeting the prevailing situation on its own initiative, Chongryon must strive to frustrate the moves of the enemy for “two Koreas”, conduct organizational and political activities energetically among the compatriots to hasten the day of national reunification, and further strengthen friendship and solidarity with the progressive Japanese and other peoples of the world so as to reinforce the ranks of the people who support and sympathize with national reunification and our revolutionary cause.

Chongryon must fully enlist the intense loyalty and patriotic enthusiasm of its officials and compatriots so that they love their motherland warmly and render active contributions to the building of socialism in their motherland.

All the officials of Chongryon, fully aware of the important mission entrusted to them by the motherland and nation, must enhance their sense of responsibility and role, always working and living with alertness by displaying their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative ability, thus making new progress in their patriotic activities.

Victory and glory surely await Chongryon, which is fighting for the completion of the cause of Juche and the prosperity of their socialist motherland.

I believe that the 14th Congress of Chongryon will mark an important turning-point in effecting a new upswing in the movement of Koreans in Japan and in powerfully mobilizing the Chongryon officials and other compatriots for reunifying their country, and for implementing all the patriotic tasks. I wish it great success.

## **THE MISSION OF CONTEMPORARY LITERATURE**

**Speech at a Banquet Given in Honour of the Participants  
in the Pyongyang International Symposium on Literature  
and in the Session of the Executive Council  
of the Afro-Asian Writers Association**

*September 29, 1986*

Esteemed writers from different lands throughout the world,  
Comrades and friends,

I am very happy to spend this pleasant and meaningful time with you, renowned writers and distinguished men of letters from many countries, the vanguard and standard-bearers in the field of culture and arts and representatives of intellectuals.

Allow me to offer, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, the Government of our Republic and the Korean people, a warm welcome to you who have come to our country to participate in the international symposium on the role of contemporary literature in the struggle for independence, friendship and peace and in the session of the Executive Council of the Afro-Asian Writers Association.

It is very important for the renowned writers of many countries to meet in an international conference. This eventful Pyongyang international conference of writers will serve as a momentous occasion to develop contemporary literature so as to meet the aspirations of the people and as required by our time by sincerely discussing the tasks of

contemporary literature in the struggle for independence, friendship and peace, by sharing with each other success and experience in literary and artistic creation and by strengthening ties of solidarity and cooperation among progressive writers.

Comrades and friends,

Progressive literature and writers play a very important part in the people's cause of justice.

Literature is a humanics; it portrays, by means of language, the lives of the people, masters of the world and makers of history, and serves the people. Literary practice as a Juche-oriented humanics is the philosophy of life; it answers human questions by artistically describing the lives of the people.

Progressive literature, representing the lives of independent people, has a tremendous cognitional and educational significance. It sings the praises of the noble and beautiful aspects of human life, condemns social evils and injustice, teaches people the truth of life and shows them the way to advance. In this way it contributes to their just cause for freedom, peace and social progress. History shows that the masterpieces of renowned writers serve the people as priceless social treasures and as inspirers of struggle and life and that they influence not only their contemporary societies but the distant future.

Literature must serve as a textbook in life and as the banner of the people's struggle. It has the mission to show the people the path of struggle by mirroring life truthfully.

If they are to discharge the mission of literature, writers must delve into the thick of life and struggle, and pay attention to the urgent questions required by the people and raised by the times.

The most urgent question now facing the progressive people of the world is that of opposing the scheme of the imperialists who pursue aggression and war, domination and plunder, of preserving world peace and security and of building an independent new society.

Imperialism is an incarnation of aggression and plunder; there is no difference between imperialism of the past and that of the present. Nowadays the imperialists are wielding nuclear weapons, guns and

bayonets in an attempt to threaten the people of the world and to realize their evil scheme of aggression against the socialist and newly-emergent countries. In the meantime, they are unceasingly manoeuvring to subjugate and plunder developing countries economically and dominate them politically by enmeshing them in the web of so-called aid and cooperation. Because of these manoeuvres of the imperialists the sovereignty of countries and nations is being encroached upon in many parts of the world, great obstacles are being thrown in the way of the people's struggle for creation of a new society and a new life, and the black clouds of nuclear war hang heavily over the globe, threatening the existence and civilization of humankind.

The present situation demands that all the progressive countries and peoples of the world fight more vigorously under the unfurled banner of anti-imperialism and independence, the banner of peace against war. An independent new society and a peaceful new world, which people aspire to, can be built only through the struggle of the people themselves.

The people's struggles to defend the sovereignty of countries and nations, build a prosperous new society, remove the danger of nuclear war and safeguard universal peace are going on forcefully in all regions and on all continents, including Asia, Africa, Europe, Latin America and the rest of the world.

By giving a correct representation of these developments of our time, contemporary literature can serve as a torchlight to encourage the people in the cause of justice and as a sledgehammer to punish the war maniacs. This is the way contemporary literature can fulfil its mission as Juche-oriented humanics and contribute to the people's cause of independence.

As intellectuals who hate all injustice and social evils and champion justice, writers ought to see reality clearly, judge the pressing issues of our time correctly, and wield the pen of justice for the realization of people's aspirations and desires and for social progress, independence and peace. The pen of justice can be a more powerful weapon than the oppressors' chains, guns or shells.

In their creative activity writers must concentrate on the people's desires and the urgent problems of the present age and describe the just struggle of the masses, the main trend of our time, and create beautiful images of independent men and women fighting in the front ranks. They must instil hatred for aggression and war and love for justice and peace in the broad masses, including workers and peasants, and expose and scathingly condemn all manoeuvres of the imperialists, colonialists and racists. Writers must pay particular attention to the education of the younger people, masters of the future, so that they will grow to be true men with sound thinking ability and valiant fighting spirit and dependable heirs to the just cause of the masses.

Building and developing a Juche-oriented national culture is an important question for the people of newly-emergent countries in building a new society, and you writers are directly in charge of building national culture.

The key to building a national culture is to wipe out the consequences of imperialist colonial rule and create a culture that accords with the feelings and independent desires of one's own people. Progressive writers must devote all their wisdom and talent to the worthwhile work of enlightening and awakening the masses, who were kept in ignorance and darkness by the imperialists and colonialists, so as to make them real masters of modern civilization and bring into full bloom literature and art in their own countries.

It is very important in building a national culture to prevent imperialist cultural infiltration. Cultural penetration into newly-emergent nations is a major component of the neo-colonialist policy of the imperialists. The reactionary culture of imperialism is a narcotic drug to paralyze people's sound minds and fighting spirit and a poison detrimental to the development of national culture. Progressive writers must not harbour any illusion about the Yankee brands of "modern culture" and "modern civilization" loudly advertized by the imperialists and must never allow the infiltration of imperialist reactionary culture.

A writer is the mouthpiece of social life and the cultivator of human

minds. If writers are to discharge their honourable duty and responsibility to society and the people, they must not remain mere onlookers in the development of reality, but experience struggle and life firsthand and staunchly fight for justice. The world-famous writers enjoying the love and respect of people were all their true friends, sharing the sweet and the bitter and staunchly fighting at the risk of their lives for the cause of justice.

In our country writers and artists are playing a very important role in building a new society and developing a national culture.

Under the correct leadership of our Party they have created a great many excellent literary and art works of high ideological and artistic quality, thereby educating the people in a revolutionary way, powerfully encouraging them in socialist construction and the struggle for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and enriching the treasure house of national culture. The heyday of national culture our people are now witnessing is the great result of the correct leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea and of the creative efforts and devoted struggle of our writers and artists, who are boundlessly loyal to the Party.

Independence, friendship and peace are the common ideas of the progressive people, writers and artists all over the world. Writers and artists in all countries must unite, support and cooperate closely with each other in their efforts to realize their common ideas. Progressive writers and artists must contact and visit each other frequently, share with each other their successes and experience in literary and artistic creation and steadily extend the scope of the ties of solidarity and cooperation.

Our writers and artists value highly international solidarity with their colleagues throughout the world. In future they will make positive efforts to strengthen solidarity and cooperation with the progressive writers and artists in the socialist, non-aligned countries and all other countries.

I warmly congratulate you on your success in the Pyongyang International Symposium on the role of contemporary literature in the

struggle for independence, friendship and peace and highly appreciate the excellent Pyongyang Declaration adopted by the conference.

The Pyongyang International Symposium on Literature, which was attended by renowned writers and distinguished men of letters from many lands throughout the world, will contribute greatly to the people's anti-imperialist cause of peace and to the development of human culture.

I express deep gratitude to you, the participants in the symposium, for the cordial and inspiring letter of thanks addressed to me.

To wish the progressive writers of all countries, the pioneers of the times, new success in their future creative activities, I propose a toast:

To strengthening friendship, solidarity and cooperation among the progressive writers in all countries,

To brilliant efflorescence and development of progressive, people-oriented literature and art,

To durable world peace and security,

To the health of all the foreign guests who have come to attend the Pyongyang International Symposium on Literature and the session of the Executive Council of the Afro-Asian Writers Association, and

To the health of all comrades and friends present here.

## **ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF OF THE EGYPTIAN NEWSPAPER AL MASSA**

*October 16, 1986*

**Question:** Your experience in the struggle to build a new society has won worldwide admiration.

Mr. President, would you please tell me briefly about this experience?

**Answer:** Over the past 40 years our people have struggled under arduous conditions and achieved great success in building a new society. Under the correct leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea they have carried out social revolutions of different stages successfully and pressed ahead with socialist construction. They have established the most progressive socialist system on this land and built a people's paradise.

We have gained a great deal of valuable experience in the struggle to build a new society.

The most important experience has been the establishment of Juche as the decisive guarantee for all victories and successes.

Establishing Juche means acquiring the attitude of masters towards revolution and construction. In other words, it means maintaining an independent position, so that we solve problems through our own efforts and on our own responsibility by discarding reliance on others and displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. It also means adhering to the creative position that we should solve all problems in

the revolution and construction to suit the specific situation in our country.

Revolution and construction are undertaken in a country or a nation as a unit. Revolution and construction in different countries and under different socio-historical conditions cannot be guided by the same formula. The people of each country must establish Juche and solve all problems in revolution and construction through their own efforts to suit the specific situation in their country. This is the way to build a new society successfully, free from any deviation.

In building a new society we have always made tireless efforts to establish Juche.

We have formulated all our lines and policies independently in accordance with the specific conditions of our country and in the interests of our people and implemented the principle of solving all problems in the revolution and construction by our own efforts and on our own responsibility. Even when adopting foreign experience, we did not swallow it whole, but introduced it creatively in conformity with our historical conditions and national characteristics. In other words, we adopted foreign experience when it was in accord with our specific situation and in the interest of our revolution and not when it did not suit them.

We have established Juche in all spheres of the revolution and construction and have done all our work in our own way. We carried out the democratic revolution in our own way, accomplished the socialist revolution in our own way, educated and reformed people in our own way, and developed the economy, culture and national defence in our own way.

In establishing Juche, we first endeavoured to equip the working masses with the Juche idea. As a result, our people overcame flunkeyism and dogmatism, acquired a high sense of national pride and independence and displayed a high spirit of self-reliance.

By establishing Juche in ideology and by thoroughly implementing the revolutionary line of independence in politics, self-support in the economy and self-reliance in national defence, we have developed our

country into a developed socialist state with complete political sovereignty, a powerful independent national economy, strong defence capability and brilliant national culture.

Another important aspect of our experience is that we have carried out the mass line in the struggle to build a new society.

The masses of the people are the masters of the revolution and construction and they are also the motive force of the revolution and construction. Success in revolution and construction depends, in the long run, on how we bring into play the inexhaustible strength and creative enthusiasm of the masses, who directly undertake these missions.

If we are to mobilize their unfathomable strength and creative enthusiasm skilfully, we must implement the mass line. The mass line requires that in revolution and construction the interests of the masses be championed thoroughly and that all problems arising in the revolution and construction be solved by enhancing their role.

Ever since we assumed leadership in building a new society, we have paid close attention to carrying out the mass line, regarding championing the interests of the masses and solving all problems by relying on them as our most important code of conduct.

We have always mixed with the masses, explaining the Party line and policy to them and enhancing their creative role, and have thus carried out our revolutionary tasks. We have also surmounted the difficulties and trials in our revolutionary advance by relying on the strength of the masses. It was the strength of the masses that overcame the severe trials of the three-year-long Fatherland Liberation War, and it was also the strength of the masses that started the Chollima Movement in the postwar years by overcoming difficult conditions in the spirit of self-reliance and fortitude. We have solved all problems by defending and rousing the interests of the masses. This is precisely the secret of our success in maintaining a high speed and continuous upsurge in the building of a new society.

Our experience shows that if Juche is established in all fields of revolution and construction and if the mass line is implemented

thoroughly, a country, however backward in the past, will be able to build a new society in a short time and achieve lasting national prosperity.

**Question:** Korea has become a socialist industrial state in a short time.

Would you please indicate to me the prospects of your economic construction?

**Answer:** As you have rightly pointed out, we carried out the historic task of socialist industrialization successfully in a short period, in 14 years, after the war and thus developed our country, once a backward agrarian land, into a socialist industrial state with modern industry and developed agriculture. After socialist industrialization our people worked hard to improve the structure of the national economy still further, raise the standard of its technical equipment, and increase the capability of their independent national economy. They take great pride in having developed their once backward country into a socialist industrial state with a powerful independent national economy.

Our economy, which is steadily developing on a solid, independent basis, has a very bright future.

The Sixth Congress of our Party, held in 1980, put forward ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction. These objectives are to produce annually 100,000 million kwh of electricity, 120 million tons of coal, 15 million tons of steel, 1.5 million tons of nonferrous metals, 20 million tons of cement, 7 million tons of chemical fertilizer, 1,500 million metres of fabrics, 5 million tons of seafood, and 15 million tons of grain and reclaim 300,000 hectares of tideland in the near future.

These objectives are a magnificent blueprint to bring about change in our economic development. They are difficult and gigantic tasks.

When the objectives have been attained, our country will rank among the nations leading the world in economic progress, the people's material and cultural standards will have risen high, and a decisive advance will have been made toward the complete victory of socialism.

Our people have worked hard to achieve these objectives in the past years and have already achieved great success.

We intend to reach the objectives completely in the new long-term plan period that will begin next year. We have a sure guarantee for this. The potential of our independent national economy is immense and our country has abundant mineral resources and inexhaustible scientific and technological resources. We have millions of working people steeled in the practice of building socialism as well as a large army of talented scientists and technicians. During the Second Seven-Year Plan we extended the production capacities of major factories and enterprises on a large scale and built a great number of modern industrial enterprises.

At present our working people are pressing ahead with construction of the Thaechon Power Station, the Suncheon Vinalon Complex, the expansion project of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex and other major projects for key industries and the reclamation of tideland and effecting another upsurge in all spheres of socialist economic construction.

Judging from the fighting spirit of our working people, I am confident that the ten objectives of socialist economic construction will successfully be attained in the new long-term plan period.

**Question:** Your country is confronted, in fact, by the United States rather than south Korea.

What are the prospects of the struggle of your people to reunify the country independently and peacefully, free from US interference?

**Answer:** At present our people are directly confronted by the United States with the Military Demarcation Line in between.

The United States has divided our nation into north and south and is obstructing the reunification of our country. Occupying half the territory of our country by force for more than 40 years, she is lording it over there and stubbornly hampering our country's reunification in an attempt to create "two Koreas" and keep south Korea as her

complete colony and a military base. The United States is instigating the south Korean authorities to seek anti-communist confrontation and pursue a fascist policy and is resorting to ceaseless manoeuvres in south Korea to unleash a new war in order to invade the northern half of Korea and the whole of Asia.

As long as the United States is occupying south Korea by force, the south Korean people cannot rid themselves of colonial slavery and the independent and peaceful reunification of our country cannot be achieved. If our country is to be reunified independently and peacefully, it is necessary, first of all, to end the US domination of south Korea and her interference.

Since the first days of the country's division we have been making untiring efforts to reunify it independently and peacefully on a democratic basis, free from foreign interference.

At the Sixth Party Congress we proposed to establish the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo in order to reunify the country on the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity. Recently we have advanced many peaceful proposals, including the one on holding tripartite talks between the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, the United States and south Korea.

If a peace agreement is concluded between our Republic and the United States to replace the Armistice Agreement and a nonaggression declaration is adopted between the north and the south through the tripartite talks, the root cause of war will be removed from the Korean peninsula, and a favourable prerequisite to the country's independent and peaceful reunification will be created.

Our proposal for the tripartite talks fully considers the desire of the US and the south Korean authorities, so there is no reason for their not accepting it. However, the United States has not yet responded to our proposal, although much more than two years have passed since the proposal was made. She is also ignoring our proposal for talks between the military authorities, which was put forward last June, and is deliberately increasing the tension on the Korean peninsula.

The reunification of our country is very difficult, because the

United States is holding south Korea as her colony and aggressive military base and does not want to give it up. However, we are optimistic about the prospects of national reunification.

Our people are firmly resolved to reunify the country. They do not want national division; they desire only reunification. No matter how hard they try to keep our nation divided into north and south forever, the Americans can never check the desire and aspiration of our people to lead a happy life in their reunified country, displaying their talents and courage as a homogeneous nation.

History shows that those who go against the people's aspiration and the trend of the times are doomed without exception to failure.

Our people will fight to ease the tension in our country, to remove obstacles to national reunification and to put into effect our reasonable proposal for the reunification of the country as soon as possible through dialogue and negotiation.

We are firmly convinced that the cause of national reunification will be accomplished through the tireless struggle of all the Korean people and with the positive support and encouragement of progressive people throughout the world.

**Question:** Would you please tell me your opinion of the nuclear weapons policy?

**Answer:** Because of the movements of the imperialists to unleash a nuclear war, large numbers of nuclear weapons are being deployed in many countries and many parts of the world, nuclear armed forces are being reinforced on a large scale, and nuclear military bases continue to increase. At present dark clouds of nuclear war are hanging heavily over the globe, menacing the very existence of mankind. If we fail to check the nuclear war movements of the imperialists, mankind will suffer irretrievable misfortunes and calamities. A nuclear war must be prevented, come what may, and peace must be maintained without fail.

With a noble sense of responsibility for the cause of world peace the Government of our Republic is stubbornly fighting to thwart the

nuclear armament race and nuclear war manoeuvres of the imperialists. We assert that the testing, production, stockpiling and use of nuclear weapons should be banned in all parts of the world, that existing nuclear weapons should be reduced and, further, that all nuclear weapons should be abolished.

Today the Korean peninsula is fraught with the greatest danger of nuclear war. The United States has greatly reinforced aggressive armed forces in south Korea, which is of great strategic importance, and shipped there more than 1,000 nuclear weapons. Unsatisfied with this, she plans to take there more new nuclear weapons and other weapons of mass destruction and to build scores of special nuclear armouries. As a result, south Korea has been turned into the most dangerous hotbed of nuclear war in Asia and the largest advanced nuclear base in the Far East.

In order to remove the danger of nuclear war and ease the tension on the Korean peninsula, the Government of our Republic and the Korean people strongly demand that all nuclear weapons deployed in south Korea be taken away and their testing, production, stockpiling and use be banned totally in this part of the world.

To create and expand nuclear-free peace zones in many parts of the world is an important way of effecting nuclear disarmament and preventing a nuclear war. Our people are fighting to convert Northeast Asia, including the Korean peninsula, to a nuclear-free peace zone and are making every effort to create and expand nuclear-free peace zones in different parts of the world.

We fully support the struggle of the people to create nuclear-free peace zones in Africa, the Middle East, the Indian Ocean and the South Pacific Ocean and many other parts of the world and express our firm solidarity with the struggle of the European socialist countries and the people in this region to create nuclear-free peace zones on the Balkan Peninsula and in many other parts of Europe.

**Question:** How do you think relations between the DPRK and the Arab Republic of Egypt will develop?

**Answer:** Friendship and cooperation between the Korean and Egyptian peoples have a long history. A long time ago our two peoples established friendly and cooperative relations on the basis of independence and noninterference and have supported and cooperated closely with each other in their struggle to oppose the imperialists and their stooges and to build a new society.

Whenever the imperialists and the Zionists provoked an aggressive war in the Middle East, the Korean people stood firmly on the side of justice and gave positive support and encouragement to the struggle of the Egyptian people. During the war in October 1973 our airmen fought shoulder to shoulder with the Egyptian brothers on the same front.

The Egyptian people have always supported and encouraged our people in their efforts to build a new society and reunify the country independently and peacefully.

The visit to our country by President Mohamed Hosni Mubarak in April 1983 was a turning-point in moving the relations of friendship and cooperation between the Korean and Egyptian peoples onto a new, higher stage.

Since the meeting of the leaders of our two countries these relations have developed on a broad scale in all fields of politics, the economy and culture. In recent years contacts and visits between our two countries have been increasing, their solidarity in the political field has been strengthening, and economic and technical cooperation and cultural exchange have been expanding.

I am satisfied that relations between Korea and the Arab Republic of Egypt are developing rapidly in all respects.

Our people set great store in friendship and cooperation with the Arab Republic of Egypt and hope these relations will continue to develop.

There are great possibilities to expand and develop relations of friendship and cooperation between our two countries. Both Korea and the Arab Republic of Egypt are member states of the Non-Aligned Movement and are interested in the development of these relations.

That is why I can say that the prospects for relations between them are very good.

The Government of our Republic and the Korean people will, in future as in the past, make every effort to expand and develop relations of friendship and cooperation with the Arab Republic of Egypt.

I firmly believe that the friendship and cooperation between Korea and the Arab Republic of Egypt will continue to improve in all fields of politics, the economy and culture through the joint efforts of our two peoples.

On this occasion I sincerely wish the Egyptian people greater success in their efforts to build a free, prosperous and new society.

## **OPEN LETTER TO VOTERS THROUGHOUT THE COUNTRY**

*October 27, 1986*

Voters' meetings held in all constituencies of the country nominated me as candidate for the post of deputy to the Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea. This is an expression of their unanimous trust and deep faith in our Party and the Government of our Republic, and a manifestation of their firm determination to fight to the last for the revolutionary cause of Juche under the banner of the Republic.

I extend warm thanks to the entire electorate of the country for expressing their deep trust in me, and for making a firm determination to fight to the last for the victory of our revolutionary cause.

There is nothing more worthwhile than serving the people with sincerity and enjoying their trust. I will live up to the people's deep trust and expectations by devoting my all continuously to the people's happiness and prosperity of the country, and to the victory of socialism and communism.

According to the Rules on the Elections of Deputies to the People's Assemblies at All Levels of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, a candidate for deputy shall be registered at one constituency only. So, I decided to be registered as a candidate to the Supreme People's Assembly at the Taean Constituency No. 651 for the election of deputies to the Eighth Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

Our people's government is a powerful weapon for the revolution and construction, and a genuine people's government which serves the people. The guarantee of all our victories and the source of everlasting happiness of our people lie in strengthening the people's government.

The election of deputies to the Eighth Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea is a political event of great significance in the strengthening and development of our people's government, and in the social and political life of our people. The forthcoming election will consolidate our people's government rock-solid, and further improve its functions and role, encouraging our people to strive for the complete victory of socialism, and for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

All the voters should display a high degree of political consciousness and revolutionary enthusiasm in the election, and elect faithful servants of the people as deputies to the Supreme People's Assembly, and thus demonstrate once again the unbreakable unity and cohesion of our people rallied rock-firm behind our Party and the Government of our Republic, and further strengthen the people's power.

I firmly believe that all the voters and the entire people will achieve greater success in the sacred struggle for hastening the complete victory of socialism and the independent and peaceful reunification of the country by rallying closely around the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, upholding the banner of the Juche idea.

## **ON DEVELOPING THE JUCHE-ORIENTATED LIGHT-METAL INDUSTRY**

**Talk to Senior Officials in the Field of the Economy**

*November 10, 1986*

Today I shall dwell on some problems arising in developing the light-metal industry.

Light metals are widely used in various fields of the national economy—the machine industry, the power industry, light industry and the building-materials industry, as well as in the defence industry and the people's life. Probably, there is no sector which does not make use of light metals.

Light metals are light and resistant to corrosion. Therefore, lorries, tractors, ships and planes as well as a variety of machines and fittings made with light metals and their alloys are light and have a pleasant appearance. Tractors made with aluminium alloy will be good for tilling paddy fields as they are light and do not easily get stuck. Many countries in the world are now making machines lighter by making use of such metals.

Developing the light-metal industry is of great importance in strengthening the independent and Juche character of the national economy, developing science and technology, and in improving the people's standard of living.

The demand for light metals is increasing radically at present, with the rapid development of the country's science and technology, and of the national economy. Only when the light-metal industry is developed

will it be possible to further the structures of the industrial branches, produce sufficient quantities of light metals needed for developing science, technology and the national economy, and give fuller play to the might of the independent national economy.

In the past, we put forward a line of building an independent national economy and made strenuous efforts for its realization. As a result, our country produces on its own nearly all the raw and other materials needed for economic construction. However, we still fail to exploit and utilize fully the natural resources of the country, or to perfect the structures of the branches of the national economy in keeping with the requirement of the independent national economy. We should establish many new industrial branches which rely on our own resources, and adjust and reinforce the production processes of industrial branches to improve the structures of the industrial branches.

The light-metal industry can be said to be a weak branch of our industry. At present, the material and technical foundations of other branches of industry are firm, but the foundation of the light-metal industry is not solid enough to produce and supply on its own the light metals needed in various fields of the national economy. The factories which produce light metals are few, and their output is not considerable. Consequently, we import quite large quantities of light metals from other countries. When we were expanding the Moranbong Stadium, we had to import light metals to cover its roof as we were short of them. But we cannot continue to import them from other countries.

We must exert efforts to develop the light-metal industry to satisfy the demand of the national economy for light metals. Just as other industrial branches, so the light-metal industry should be developed by relying on our own resources. In other words, we must build a Juche-orientated light-metal industry.

Our country has very abundant light-metal resources, like nepheline, potassic feldspar and titanite ore. According to the prospecting conducted so far, the Sakju area, North Phyongan Province, has a deposit of nepheline which can be exploited for over 50 years at the rate of four million tons a year, and the Chongdan area, South Hwanghae

Province, has a deposit of potassic feldspar that can be mined for 100 years at the rate of three million tons a year. Large amounts of titanite ore are deposited in several places including North and South Phyongan Provinces, North Hamgyong Province and Kangwon Province. If we intensify geological survey in the future, we will be able to discover greater deposits of potassic feldspar, nepheline and titanite ore.

If we exploit and process the light-metal ores which are abundant in our country, we can produce aluminium and titanium in large quantities.

Aluminium is a typical light metal. It is widely used in producing electric wire as well as machines. At present, we fail to produce a great amount of electric wire for lack of copper. If we produce electric wire with aluminium, we can solve the problem of electric wire needed for developing the power industry while saving great quantities of copper.

If we produce building materials with aluminium alloy, we can build public buildings and dwelling houses for the working people after a modern fashion. Window frames of the dwelling houses and such public buildings as theatres, cinemas, schools and shops made of the aluminium alloy render it easy to build them; they also look light and are pleasing to the eye. Wooden frames of windows of dwelling houses are not good for they become deformed, but not the frames made of aluminium alloy. On my visit to a foreign country, I found that the window frames of 15- and 20-storied apartment houses were made of aluminium alloy. They looked clean and brightened up the city. The production of tablewares, kitchen utensils and other daily necessities with the aluminium alloy will help to provide the working people with hygienic and cultural living conditions.

When we process nepheline and potassic feldspar in a comprehensive way, we can produce not only aluminium but also potassic fertilizer and cement. This is tantamount to killing two birds with one stone, as the saying goes.

Our Party long ago advanced the task of producing aluminium by relying on domestic resources. The Fourth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea put forward the task of producing aluminium with the

nepheline deposits which are abundant in our country.

Nevertheless, our officials have tried in the past to produce aluminium from alunite and bauxite, instead of taking measures to produce it from nepheline. As a result, although they invested a lot of time and labour, they have not yet solved the problem of aluminium. As a matter of course, it is preferable to produce aluminium from alunite and bauxite. Many countries in the world are producing large amounts of aluminium from bauxite. But our country has few resources of bauxite. If our officials had taken a firm Juche-orientated stand and adopted from the beginning measures to mine and process nepheline and potassic feldspar, which are abundant in our country, they would have solved the problem of aluminium supply.

Some years ago I again raised the matter of processing nepheline in a comprehensive way and ensured that the Administration Council adopted measures to intensify research into this matter, and establish an intermediary pilot plant that processes nepheline in a comprehensive way.

In recent years, many scientific and technical problems have been solved in the production of alumina, potassic fertilizer and cement by processing nepheline and potassic feldspar in a comprehensive way. Last April I inspected the trial products of alumina produced from potassic feldspar by the intermediary pilot plant in Sunchon, which processes nepheline in a comprehensive way, and the fineness was very high. The experiment of producing cement with the residuum remaining after processing nepheline and potassic feldspar, was successful; the quality of the cement was not inferior to that of the cement produced at the Sunchon Cement Complex.

When we process four million tons of nepheline from the Sakju-area deposit a year, we will be able to produce 460,000 tons of alumina, 200,000 tons of potassic fertilizer, 5.4 million tons of cement, 80,000 tons of sodium carbonate, 200,000 tons of concentrated magnetite ore and 160,000 tons of concentrated apatite ore; and when we process three million tons of potassic feldspar from the Chongdan-area deposit a year, we will be able to produce 450,000 tons

of alumina, 510,000 tons of potassic fertilizer and ten million tons of cement as well as large quantities of sodium carbonate.

More than 450,000 tons of aluminium can be produced with the alumina produced by processing four million tons of nepheline and three million tons of potassic feldspar. This amount outruns the domestic demand. If we export the aluminium that remains after using what we need in our country, we can earn a large sum of foreign currency. In view of the present world trend, it is difficult for us to export steel even though we produce it in a large quantity. But it is different with aluminium as many countries want to buy aluminium, and its price per ton is higher than that of steel. Of 450,000 tons of aluminium produced by processing nepheline and potassic feldspar, if we export 260,000 tons we can earn about 300 million US dollars, with one ton priced at 1,200 US dollars. We will be able to earn several times more foreign currency than that if we process 260,000 tons of aluminium and produce plates, pipes and electric wire with it for export. If it is difficult to produce aluminium from alumina at once, it is advisable to produce and export such alumina products as high-grade alumina bricks and grinders. In this way, we can earn a considerable sum of foreign currency.

If four million tons of nepheline and three million tons of potassic feldspar are processed in a comprehensive way, we can produce about 700,000 tons of potassic fertilizer, greatly boosting crop production.

The fertility of the crop land in our country has decreased, as it has been cultivated for so long. It is said that rice was already cultivated in the Jaeryong Plain in the middle of the Ri dynasty. Since then, our country has had a history of 300 years of rice cultivation. In order to increase the grain output, we should carpet the paddy and non-paddy fields with fresh soil and humus to raise their fertility while spreading nitrogenous, phosphatic, potassic, and other fertilizers in an appropriate way. Potassic fertilizer is one of the three types of fertilizer indispensable to raising crops. Currently, our country produces a remarkable amount of nitrogenous and phosphatic fertilizers, but only a small amount of potassic fertilizer. Consequently, we fail to spread a

sufficient amount of potassic fertilizer and thus to raise the per-hectare output of grain which is within our reach.

If nepheline and potassic feldspar are processed to produce potassic fertilizer at the rate of 700,000 tons a year, we will have more of it than we need. It is advisable to apply 200 kg of potassic fertilizer per hectare of fields. As the cultivated land in our country, including orchards, is about two million hectares we will be able to apply 200 kg of potassic fertilizer per hectare if we have only 400,000 tons of it. Then, we can produce much more grain, fruits, vegetables and industrial crops than we do now.

If we build a cement factory to produce cement with the residuum from the comprehensive processing of four million tons of nepheline and three million tons of potassic feldspar, we can produce 15 million tons of cement. We are now producing cement in large quantities, and if we produce 15 million tons more in the future, our country will become a flourishing cement producer.

I want to have two factories which process respectively four million tons of nepheline and three million tons of potassic feldspar built simultaneously, but the present situation does not allow it. Due to the shortage of electricity in the country, it is impossible to build the two factories at the same time. Originally, it was planned to build a factory that processes nepheline first. But nepheline contains less potassic element than potassic feldspar does. So, we cannot solve the problem of potassic fertilizer, which is urgently needed for developing our agriculture, by processing nepheline. In order to solve this problem radically, it is necessary to process in a comprehensive way the potassic feldspar deposited in the Chongdan area, which contains a large amount of potassium. This is why we decided to build first a plant which processes potassic feldspar. The meeting of the Political Bureau of the Party Central Committee held in May this year decided to build the factory in the Sariwon area, and defined it as one of the five major projects. Since the major object of building this factory is to increase the production of potassic fertilizer, we named it the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Factory.

We should press ahead with the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Factory.

It was expected to have 12 revolving kilns installed in the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Factory with each two kilns tied together. Provided that four revolving kilns could process one million tons of potassic feldspar a year, 12 kilns would process three million tons of it a year. Further studies should be made as to whether we should install 12 revolving kilns at a time or one or two kilns first and gain experience through trial operation before installing the other kilns.

As the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Factory is a gigantic project, you should tackle it only after making sound preparations. The project started some time ago, and the soldiers of the People's Army who had participated in the building of the West Sea Barrage have been mobilized for it. The spirit of the workers, technicians and soldiers of the People's Army participating in this project is very high. The point is how officials organize the supply work. They should give priority to designing, supply the equipment and materials needed for the construction in good time, organize strong forces for construction and offer proper supply services for the welfare of the builders.

The whole country should render active labour and material support to the building of the factory.

In parallel with the project, auxiliary projects should be pushed forward. A potassic feldspar mine should be developed and sidings laid. And measures should be taken in advance from now on to supply electricity and coal to the factory when it begins operation in the future.

When the economic problems facing North and South Hwanghae Provinces were discussed at the meeting of the Central People's Committee held some days ago, I dwelt on the detailed tasks for the construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Factory, so I will not speak more about the matter.

After finishing the construction of this factory, we are going to build a factory which processes nepheline. It will be advisable to build the factory in the Kaecheon area. There is a site for the factory in the area, and there will be no big problem in transporting raw materials and

fuel, or in supplying power and industrial water to it.

The production of titanium should be increased.

As titanium is light, hard and resistant to heat, it is used widely, along with aluminium, in various fields of the national economy. Since the production of titanium is important, I have stressed on many occasions the task of increasing the production of titanium, but nobody pays attention to it. This is wrong. You must bring the production of titanium into step with the actual demand of the developing national economy. In order to increase the production of titanium, you should both develop more titanium mines and intensify research into its production. You should draw up a plan for developing the titanium industry and submit it.

Measures must be taken to produce alloys of various kinds of light metals from aluminium and titanium.

If aluminium and titanium are produced in great quantities in future, various kinds of light-metal alloys should be made. Only then can light metals be used widely for the development of the national economy. If you do not take measures from now on to produce light-metal alloys on a large scale and try to do it at the time when light metals are produced in a large amount, you will hinder the development of the light-metal industry correspondingly.

A solid base for processing light metals should be built.

The processing of light metals is no less important than their production. Even though we treat quantities of potassic feldspar and nepheline in the coming years to produce a large amount of aluminium, it will be of no significance if we do not process it properly. We cannot make use of the pellets of aluminium or its alloys as they are; they should be rolled or elongated to be made into pipes, plates, wires and various other products. At the moment, there is a factory in our country which processes light metals, but its capacity is small and its level of technical equipment is low. Without building up a solid base for processing light metals, we can neither process all the light metals which will be produced in great quantities in the future nor ensure the quality of processed goods.

The base for processing ferrous metals in our country is strong at the moment, so establishing a base for processing light metals poses no problem. The principle of processing ferrous metals is the same as that of processing light metals. If officials organize the work scrupulously, they can build up an excellent base for processing light metals. It is advisable to establish the base in a place such as Kusong, where there are many machinery factories.

Geological prospecting should be conducted properly to find light-metal resources.

There is a great variety of light-metal deposits in our country, but as prospecting has not been carried out properly, their full extent has not been discovered nor their quantity decided. We must have a clear knowledge of the kinds of light-metal deposits in our country and their amounts; only then can we orient properly the development of the light-metal industry and promote it with confidence. The prospecting sector should intensify prospecting so as to discover all the resources of light metals and define the deposits of potassic feldspar, nepheline and titanium.

In order to develop the Juche-orientated light-metal industry, it is necessary to enhance the role of scientists and technicians.

Our scientists and technicians have achieved some success in solving the scientific and technical problems in the development of the light-metal industry, but there is no reason for them to be content with that. The scientific research in the field of the light-metal industry in our country is just at the beginning. It still has to solve many scientific and technical problems—how to reduce the power consumption in the production of aluminium, how to produce higher-quality alloys of light metals, etc. Taking a firm Juche-orientated stand, the scientists and technicians in the field of the light-metal industry should strive to solve the scientific and technical problems arising in developing the light-metal industry, by relying on our own raw materials resources.

In order to enhance the role of scientists and technicians, they should be given clear-cut tasks for research, their work reviewed in time and they should be provided with good conditions for their work.

As the economic foundations of our country are solid, officials, when they are determined, can provide them with sufficient materials and whatever else is needed for scientific research. I long ago assigned the task of providing 0.5 per cent of the materials from their output for scientific research. The Administration Council must provide the materials needed for scientific research without fail. The experimental equipment, materials and reagents which are not yet produced in our country, should be supplied in time even if they have to be imported from other countries.

To develop the Juche-orientated light-metal industry is an honourable and worthwhile undertaking for the country's prosperity and the people's happiness. Development of the light-metal industry in line with the Party's policy means establishment of another Juche-orientated industry in our generation. Developing the light-metal industry is no easy job, but if our officials endeavour with the spirit and mettle they displayed when establishing the vinalon industry after the war, they will surely be able to develop the light-metal industry rapidly.

# **FOR THE COMPLETE VICTORY OF SOCIALISM**

**Policy Speech at the First Session of the Eighth  
Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic  
People's Republic of Korea**

*December 30, 1986*

Comrade Deputies,

Today our revolution is pressing along the road of building socialism and communism under the banner of the Republic. As our revolution advances victoriously, the people's support for and trust in the Government of the Republic are increasing daily and our Republic is growing stronger.

Thanks to the high degree of political awareness and great revolutionary enthusiasm of all the people, including the working class, the elections to the Eighth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK were held successfully, and a new Government of the Republic was organized. As a result, our people's government has been further strengthened, and the political and ideological unity of our people, who have rallied closely behind our Party and Government, has become as solid as rock.

The new Government of the Republic will carry out its tasks in accordance with the people's trust and expectations and will continue to fight vigorously for the happiness of our people, for the prosperity and development of the country and for victory in the cause of socialism and communism.

The Government of our Republic is truly a people's government and a Juche-oriented revolutionary government that champions the people's freedom and rights and fights to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche.

The fighting tasks now facing this government in carrying out the revolutionary cause of Juche are to achieve the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea and to reunify the country independently and peacefully.

The Government of the Republic must carry out its honourable revolutionary tasks with credit by accelerating the revolutionary struggle and construction more vigorously under the banner of the Juche idea.

## 1

Comrades,

The cause of building socialism and communism is sacred and will provide the masses of the people with complete independence.

It is the age-long desire and the highest ideal of the people to achieve complete independence. If they are to realize their cherished desire and ideal, the people must transform the exploitative system of the old society in a revolutionary manner and advance along the road of socialism until they consummate the cause of building socialism and communism.

The road to socialism and communism is a historical course that covers many stages of revolutionary development.

It takes a long time for the working class to build a communist society after seizing political power and taking the path of socialism. In this process the working class must carry out revolutionary tasks at many stages, tasks that arise in sequence.

In the very beginning of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle

the Korean communists put forward their programme to liberate the nation and then build socialism and communism in their liberated country. They have been fighting tirelessly to carry out the programme.

After liberating the country, we destroyed the colonial-rule machinery of the Japanese imperialists without delay and established the people's government. On the strength of this government we carried out a thorough anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution and established a people's democratic system in the north. The social change effected by the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution enabled our Party to strengthen and develop the people's government into a socialist government of proletarian dictatorship as required by the developing revolution. This was a turning-point in the history of our country's advance to socialism, when our people began to perform the tasks of transition from capitalism to socialism.

The cause of building socialism, which begins with the establishment of a socialist government, emerges victorious and is consummated in the period of transition from capitalism to socialism. This is a period of fierce class struggle between socialism and capitalism and of historic changes as the socialist society is completed through the transformation of people, society and nature in accordance with the aspirations and desires of the working class. The historic tasks of the transition period are to win a complete victory over capitalism in all spheres of social life and bring about a classless society by eliminating all class antagonisms and class distinctions. If they are to complete the transition to socialism, the masses of the people, who have come to power, must carry out these historic tasks of the transition period.

The first task to be carried out in this period of transition is to destroy the exploitative system and establish a socialist system by reorganizing the outdated production relations along socialist lines. In light of the specific situation in our country where the democratic revolution triumphed, our Party and the people's government

formulated an original line of socialist revolution, carried it out successfully and established an advanced socialist system in the northern half of Korea. The victory of the socialist revolution and the establishment of a socialist system were great historical events that caused a radical change in the social position and role of our people.

After the success of the socialist revolution our Party and the Government of the Republic set the strategic target of achieving the complete victory of socialism during the transition period and have pressed ahead with the building of socialism.

Winning complete victory of socialism is a lawful requirement for building socialism and communism. It is a historic task that must be carried out during this period of transition.

Although establishment of a socialist system is a historical turning-point in the course of social development from capitalism to socialism, it does not mean the complete victory of socialism, nor does it imply a complete transition to socialism.

Even after the establishment of a socialist system society retains a great deal of backward ideology, technology and culture from the old society. Because of this there are differences between towns and rural communities, the industrial working class and the peasantry, and various other elements; the material and technological foundations of society are weak compared to those of advanced social systems, and the working people's material and cultural standards are not so high as they should be. When a socialist system is established, the exploiting classes cease to exist in society, but the corrosive actions of their outdated ideas continue, as do the ideological and cultural infiltration and destructive and subversive manoeuvres of hostile outside forces opposed to the socialist system. A society where a socialist system has been set up, but socialist construction has not been completed, and where the exploiting system has been destroyed, but the danger of capitalism's being restored remains, cannot be called a completely victorious socialist society.

A completely victorious socialist society is one in which all the people belong to the working class and, as equal masters of the state

and society, lead an independent and creative life. The completely victorious socialist society is a classless, developed society in which all members enjoy complete social and political equality and decent material and cultural lives. From the point of view of social progress, it coincides with the end of the period of transition from capitalism to socialism, when the lower stage of communism becomes complete reality and the gradual transition to the higher stage of communism gets under way.

The complete victory of socialism is an epochal event in the people's struggle for independence, an important milestone in the course of building socialism and communism.

Of course, the complete victory of socialism does not mean reaching the higher stage of communism immediately. When socialism is completely triumphant, class distinctions will disappear, but differences between mental and physical labour and some discrepancies in material standards will remain, and the productive forces of society will not reach such a high level as to permit distribution according to need. In order to overcome the transitional character of a socialist society completely and move on to the higher stage of communism, it is necessary to consolidate and develop the completely victorious socialist society until communism is completely built. To build communism one must go through a period of transition from capitalism to socialism and reach the higher stage of communism through a completely socialist society. It is axiomatic in building socialism and communism.

The complete victory of socialism is now what is required by socialist construction in our country.

Nearly 30 years have passed since our people began the full-scale undertaking of tasks for the complete victory of socialism following the triumph of the socialist revolution. During this period our people have made big strides in their struggle for the complete victory of socialism.

Guided by the correct policy of our Party and the Government of the Republic for socialist construction and under their correct

leadership, our country successfully carried out the task of socialist industrialization over a short period of time and laid solid foundations for an independent national economy. These material and technological foundations have been strengthened and their structure improved through fulfilment of a number of plans for development of the national economy.

In recent years our people successfully carried out the Second Seven-Year Plan. As a result, all sectors of the national economy have been solidly equipped with modern technology and the nation's economic power has increased.

We have also achieved great success in people's transformation by pressing ahead with ideological and cultural revolutions.

Backward, outdated ideas and culture handed down through history are now very small remnant elements in our society. People are developing fully in the communist way, acquiring the advanced ideology of the working class and attaining high technological and cultural standards. The quality of the people, who are the masters of society, shows the high level of development of our society as well as the maturity of the basic conditions for the complete victory of socialism in our country.

The brilliant successes in socialist economic construction and in the transformation of human beings have consolidated and developed the socialist system in our country.

Ours is the best social system, providing all the people with genuine political freedom, democratic rights and material and cultural well-being. In our country all the people are solidly united in mind and purpose with our Party and the Government of the Republic; the whole society has been imbued with the collectivist way of life, with the spirit to help and lead each other forward. The Party and the people, in solid unity and cohesion, constitute the mighty, Juche-oriented force of the revolution, and all the people place unreserved trust in the Party and the Government. This is a sure guarantee for the durability of our socialist system and the decisive factor in the victory of the cause of socialism and communism in our country.

All these successes in the struggle for the transformation of people, society and nature show that we are near the line marking the complete victory of socialism.

Indeed, the Korean revolution pioneered by us communists has advanced a long way under the correct leadership of our Party and the Government of our Republic, but we still have work to do in all aspects of human, social and natural transformation if we are to win the complete victory of socialism. We must struggle more vigorously for the complete victory of socialism to meet the full requirements of our developing revolution and our people's revolutionary aspirations.

## 2

Comrades,

The fundamental problem in the complete victory of socialism is to transform people and social relations to the pattern of the working class, so as to eliminate class differences and establish a classless society.

A socialist society is, in its proper sense, a society of the working class. A full-fledged, completely socialist society is a society in which all spheres belong to the working class; in other words, a classless society in which everyone is a member of the working class and all social relations conform to a working-class pattern.

Eliminating class antagonisms and distinctions and abolishing classes themselves are the basic conditions for the independence of the masses. The emergence of classes caused domination and subjugation between people; accordingly, the struggle for independence meant a fight for class liberation. In previous historical periods only the working class took up the slogan for the abolition of classes, and it has struggled to build a classless society ever since it made its appearance on the scene of history. The abolition of classes and the building of a

classless society are the historic tasks of the working class; they are important goals in building socialism and communism.

The socialist revolution marks an important turning-point in the struggle of the working class to abolish classes. The liquidation of the exploiting classes by socialist revolution results in the elimination of class antagonisms which are the root cause of all social miseries; in a socialist society the only classes are those of the workers and the cooperative farmers. Therefore, the abolition of classes in a socialist society boils down to the elimination of distinctions between the working class and the peasantry, by solving the rural question. Only when this question is solved can the historic task of abolishing classes be carried out and a classless society established.

Because of the class distinctions between workers and farmers a number of distinctions in social life as well as some non-working-class social relations exist in a socialist society. For this reason the elimination of these class differences is the central task of social transformation after the socialist system has been established.

In order to eliminate the class differences between workers and farmers, it is imperative to turn cooperative property into all-people property and establish total all-people ownership of the means of production.

Ownership of the means of production is the basic factor in defining classes. The two classes—the working class and the farmers—exist in a socialist society because there are two forms of socialist ownership—all-people property and cooperative property. It is only when the means of production are owned by all the people through the transformation of cooperative property into all-people property that farmers become part of the working class and class differences between workers and farmers disappear.

The conversion of cooperative property into all-people property is axiomatic in the development of a socialist society.

A socialist society is based on collectivism, and both cooperative property and all-people property are socialist property and constitute the economic foundation of our society. Collectivism requires that all

social relations, including ownership, develop steadily in conformity with the communal interests and requirements of the whole society. Cooperative property, a lower form of socialist ownership, must develop toward a higher standard of socialization, ultimately becoming all-people property, a higher form of socialist ownership. When cooperative property is transformed into all-people property and all working people are embraced by a single economy owned by all the people, the communist principle of “One for all and all for one” can be applied satisfactorily.

We must consolidate and develop cooperative property into all-people property in line with the lawful requirement of the development of a socialist society.

Cooperative property exists along with all-people property in a socialist society because the farmers’ ideological, technological and cultural standards are lower than those of the working class and because the material and technological foundations of agriculture are weaker than those of industry. Thus the basic means to convert cooperative property into all-people property is to eliminate the ideological, technological and cultural backwardness of the rural communities.

If we are to end this backwardness and turn cooperative property into all-people property, we must carry out the theses on the socialist rural question published by our Party.

The theses are the action programme of our Party to solve the rural question and win the complete victory of socialism by consolidating and developing cooperative property into all-people property.

In accordance with the principle laid down in the theses, we must first energetically accelerate the ideological and cultural revolutions in country areas and quickly raise the farmers’ level of ideology, technology and culture.

The ideology of the working people has a very important effect on the development of ownership. We must intensify the ideological education and organizational life of our farmers and harden them steadily through communal labour and collective activities, so that

they will hold the interests of the society and state dearer than individual interests and work honestly for society and the collective and for the country and the people with a deep sense of being masters of the revolution and construction.

A modern, developing agriculture requires a radical improvement in the farmers' technological and cultural standards. We must train the new generation to be dependable builders of the socialist rural communities to meet the requirement of the developing realities and, at the same time, improve adult education and the dissemination of scientific and technological knowledge in country areas, so that every farmer can handle modern farm machinery skilfully and attain high standards of knowledge and skills for scientific and technological farming.

We must also press ahead with the technological revolution in rural areas and industrialize agriculture.

The industrialization of agriculture means irrigation, electrification, mechanization and a wide application of chemicals in the rural economy and the development of agricultural production into a modern technological process. When agriculture is industrialized, we shall be able to develop it into a large-scale economy based on modern machinery and thus increase agricultural production rapidly, obliterate the distinctions between agricultural and industrial labour and free the farmers from backbreaking work.

Since the irrigation and electrification of agriculture have already been effected, we must consolidate the success and, at the same time, mass-produce different kinds of modern farm machinery, including tractors and harvesters, and supply them to country areas in a planned manner. We must also produce and supply to the rural communities greater quantities of various kinds of high-quality fertilizers and agricultural chemicals that suit our soil conditions and the characteristics of our crops and work hard to adopt advanced farming technology and methods along with the latest achievements of agricultural science in order to put farm production on a highly scientific basis.

In order to transform cooperative property into all-people property, we must combine the two organically by continuing to enhance the leading role of the latter in relation to the former.

An important task in their organic combination is to strengthen the direct production ties between the two. These ties are established through state enterprises that serve agriculture directly. We must further strengthen the material and technological means of the farm machine stations, irrigation administration offices and other state enterprises that serve agriculture and thus steadily enhance the role played by the material and technological means of all-people property in the agricultural production of cooperative farms.

Another important task in transforming cooperative property into all-people property is to improve constantly the direction and management of cooperative agriculture.

Economic management is closely related to ownership, and it has a great effect on the change and development of ownership. Unless the direction and management of the cooperative agricultural economy are improved, we shall be unable to speed up the process of transforming cooperative property into all-people property. Because the technological equipment of the cooperative agricultural economy is improving and farm production is being modernized, we must upgrade the technological guidance of agricultural production and thoroughly plan and organize all management activities.

We must strengthen agricultural leadership bodies and enhance their functions and role in order to give full play to the superiority of the Juche-oriented system of agricultural guidance, thereby radically improving the industrial method of guiding cooperative agriculture. We must enhance particularly the role of county cooperative farm management committees in direct charge of local cooperative farms, so that their technical guidance will be effective enough to carry on agricultural production as required by the Juche farming method and so that the state's material and technological assistance to the cooperative economy will be satisfactory.

When cooperative property is converted into all-people property as

a result of the thorough implementation of the theses on the socialist rural question put forward by our Party, class differences between workers and farmers will disappear and all social relations will be reorganized into those of the working class.

### 3

Comrades,

Pressing ahead with socialist economic construction is an important task in achieving the complete victory of socialism.

Socialist economic construction is a worthwhile effort to harness nature and create conditions for the independent and creative life of the people; it is also a sacred undertaking to strengthen the material and technological foundations of socialism and capture the material fortress of communism. Successful economic construction is essential for the building of socialism and communism and for the complete independence of the masses.

The socialist system established through socialist revolution can be consolidated and developed, demonstrating its superiority and might to the full, only when based on the material and technological foundations commensurate with it. The socialist system can become really strong and durable and socialism can attain complete victory only when, through efficient economic construction, solid socialist material and technological foundations are laid and all the working people, freed from exploitation and oppression, fully enjoy an independent political and ideological life and a prosperous material and cultural life. Countries like ours that have not passed through an industrial revolution and so must wage socialist revolution under backward economic conditions must devote particular effort to economic construction after the establishment of a socialist system.

Pressing ahead with economic construction is an important function

of a socialist state. The function of a socialist state as the organizer of the economy comes to the fore as the building of socialism and communism progresses.

Whether or not the complete victory of socialism is achieved at an early date, as required by our revolutionary development and as desired by our people, depends largely on how economic construction is carried out.

We must create powerful material and technological foundations commensurate with a complete socialist society by stepping up socialist economic construction.

The goal we must attain in the sphere of economic construction for the complete victory of socialism is to build a Juche-orientated national economy that is highly modernized in all its branches and perfect in its structure. We must industrialize agriculture and raise the technical level of equipment of the national economy as a whole to a considerable extent, thus freeing the working people from difficult and labour-consuming work and satisfactorily solving the problems of people's food, clothing and housing, so as to attain a high standard of living.

In order to reach this goal, the Government of the Republic must continually adhere to the line of building an independent socialist national economy and energetically promote the Juche orientation, modernization and scientific transformation of the national economy.

The immediate important task in socialist economic construction is to implement the Third Seven-Year Plan successfully.

Next year we shall undertake this plan.

The basic task of the Third Seven-Year Plan is to continue to press ahead with the Juche orientation, modernization and scientific transformation of the national economy and lay solid material and technological foundations for the complete victory of socialism.

During this plan period we must further strengthen the independence of the national economy, provide industry, agriculture and all other branches of the national economy with powerful modern technical equipment and increase production quickly. We must attain

the ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction put forward by the Party's Sixth Congress and increase total industrial output by at least 1.9 times and agricultural output by 1.4 times.

The Third Seven-Year Plan is a magnificent plan for economic construction that will radically increase the nation's economic power and improve the people's living standards; it is a great goal that will prove a decisive turn in the struggle for the complete victory of socialism.

All the officials and working people must rise to the occasion as one to carry out the Third Seven-Year Plan and create a fresh upsurge in socialist economic construction.

The most important task in implementing this plan is to accelerate the technical renovation of the national economy by developing science and technology and intensifying the technical innovation drive.

Today science and technology are developing very rapidly and playing a decisive role in economic progress. There is no limit to their development as they are the product of human ingenuity; they give people limitless possibilities to harness nature and dominate the world. Achieving rapid growth in production on the basis of highly developed science and technology is the main trend of the world's economic progress at present.

The present situation of our socialist construction requires all the more urgently the rapid development of science and technology. Without this and without enterprising technical innovations it will be impossible to carry out the gigantic tasks of the new long-term plan and raise our economy to a new, higher stage.

We must direct great effort to the development of science and technology and thus solve smoothly various scientific and technological problems arising in socialist construction and raise our level of science and technology to the world's standard as soon as possible.

We must work out a correct plan for the development of science and technology in conformity with the long-term objectives and present requirements of our socialist construction and the world's scientific

and technological progress and carry it out by mobilizing the creativity of our scientists, technicians and working people in every way. Senior officials must have a correct attitude toward science and technology and radically improve Party and state guidance of and provision for scientific research and technical innovation movement.

The important target of our scientific and technological progress for the present is to effect an all-round technological renovation of the national economy. All branches of the national economy must modernize outdated and backward equipment, mechanize and automate production processes and introduce robots and computers. During the new long-term plan we must devote great effort to the development of the machine-building, ultraminiature-electronic and robot industries. In this way we shall lay solid production bases for these industries in a short time and produce various kinds of up-to-date machinery and electronic and automation elements and components needed for the technical renovation of the national economy.

If we are to succeed in the Third Seven-Year Plan, we shall have to sharply increase the production capacities of our key industries.

The Third Seven-Year Plan is an ambitious plan that envisages a high rate of production growth. The major key industries specifically targeted in the new long-term plan include electricity, coal, steel and nonferrous metals. The high targets can be attained only if we vastly increase production capacities. Only when these targets are achieved will all branches of the national economy succeed in implementing the long-term plan.

During the new long-term plan the key industries must renew their existing equipment by introducing more efficient and precise modern equipment, increase their production capacities to the full, and build new, modern factories and enterprises on a large scale.

A tangible improvement in the people's standard of living is one of the most important tasks of the Third Seven-Year Plan. We must solve the problems of food, clothing and housing satisfactorily and raise the general living standard.

In accordance with our Party's far-reaching plan and under its

direction a number of major projects are now forging ahead, including the reclamation of 300,000 hectares of tidal flats, the construction of the Suncheon Vinalon Complex with a capacity of 100,000 tons, and the large Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex. They are a daring blueprint to increase the country's economic power and solve, in particular, the problems of food, clothing and housing; they are very important and worthwhile undertakings for our people's happy future.

We must concentrate all effort on these projects and finish them quickly. The soldiers of the People's Army and the builders working on these projects must devote themselves and their creativity to this worthwhile work for the country's prosperity and the people's well-being. Different branches of the national economy must supply the equipment and materials needed for the projects in time and on a preferential basis, and the entire Party, the whole country and all the people must give their powerful support to these projects.

If we are to succeed in the Third Seven-Year Plan, we must radically improve the guidance of the economy and the management of enterprises.

In economic guidance and enterprise management we must firmly defend, adhere to and thoroughly implement the original Juche system of socialist economic management created by our Party, so that its vitality will be displayed fully in socialist construction.

All branches of the national economy must strictly implement the Tae'an work system. All factories and enterprises must organize economic work under the collective leadership of the Party committee, as required by the Tae'an work system, and give precedence to political work, so as to give rein to the revolutionary zeal and creativity of the producers for implementation of the long-term plan.

Economic guidance and enterprise management should be put on a scientific basis and rationalized as required by the actual situation of our socialist construction.

The socialist economy continues to develop, and economic progress requires that guidance of the economy and management of enterprises keep in step with it. All sectors of the national economy

must conduct management in a scientific way, based on accurate plans, calculations and statistics, and rationalize enterprise management through proper use of the economic levers that suit the transitional character of a socialist society.

All officials and working people must work devotedly and carry out the Third Seven-Year Plan with infinite loyalty to the Party and the revolution and great revolutionary zeal, thus demonstrating the might of Juche Korea and exalting its honour once more.

#### 4

Comrades,

In order to achieve the complete victory of socialism we must strengthen the people's government and enhance its functions and role.

The people's government is a veritable champion of our people's right to independence and a powerful weapon for the building of socialism and communism. Only under the people's government can the working masses enjoy genuine freedom to the full and exercise all their rights as masters of the state and society, lead a happy, affluent life to their heart's content and succeed in the struggle for the complete victory of socialism. It is a difficult and complicated struggle, accompanied by continuous class struggle, to transform people, society and nature. Only by strengthening the people's government and enhancing its functions and role, is it possible to rally the broad masses into a solid political force, effectively mobilize their creative power in the struggle for the complete victory of socialism and firmly defend the socialist system.

We must improve the work of the people's governmental organs and enhance their functions and role in every way in the struggle for the complete victory of socialism.

The Government of the Republic must continue to advance under

the banner of the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions and carry out the Party's line for the three revolutions.

The struggle for the complete victory of socialism is a far-reaching and great social transformation aimed at eliminating the legacies of the old society that remain in the socialist society and at imbuing the whole of society with the ideology, technology and culture of the working class. It can be carried out successfully only through the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions. The three revolutions are the highest stage in building socialism and communism and providing the masses with complete independence. We must enhance the functions and role of the people's government and carry out the three revolutions. This is the way to accomplish the cause of independence for the people and the cause of building socialism and communism. The banner of the people's government and of the three revolutions is simultaneously the banner of independence and of socialism and communism.

The organs of the people's government must hold fast to the line of the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions and vigorously carry it out under the Party's leadership. As executors of the Party's line on the three revolutions, these governmental organs must concentrate all their activities on the successful implementation of the three revolutions and deal efficiently with administrative and organizational affairs and with the provision of material and technological means in keeping with the high degree of enthusiasm of the working people who have turned out to implement the three revolutions.

The Government of the Republic and other government organs at all levels must thoroughly implement the class and mass line in their activities.

The people's government is, in essence, the revolutionary government of the working class. Only when they carry out the class line in their activities can the people's governmental organs preserve their working-class character and fulfil their honourable mission as the revolutionary government of the working class.

In all spheres of state activity they must steadily enhance the leading role of the working class, adhere firmly to the working-class principle and carry out all policies in the interest of the working class. They must ensure that all state and social life is geared to the aspirations and desires of the working class and that sound working-class habits prevail throughout society. The people's government must guard against the poisonous ideas of capitalism and revisionism, prevent them from infiltrating our society and resolutely fight all their attempts to infringe upon the socialist system.

The socialist and communist society is a society for all the people. It can be built only by the creative role of the broad masses of the people. In order to build the socialist and communist society successfully, we must champion the interests of the people in every way and mobilize their creative power to the full. To this end, the people's government must implement the revolutionary mass line in its activity.

Defending the interests of the people and serving them faithfully is the fundamental requirement of the mass line. Our officials must not be bureaucrats who shout at the people and lord it over them; they must truly serve the people and work honestly for them. The officials of the people's governmental organs must organize and conduct all their work on the principle of regarding the interests of the people as most important and championing them thoroughly. They must guarantee the people's rights and interests in all fields of society as provided by the law. They must always be deeply concerned about people's lives, get rid of bottlenecks, meet people's needs in time and work hard to provide conditions to make their lives happier.

The people's government must establish a revolutionary system and order in state and social life and supervise and run the economic life of the country in a coordinated way.

It is a natural requirement of a socialist society, an organized society, that a revolutionary system and order be established in all spheres of state and social life and that all members of society observe discipline and order. If a revolutionary system and order are not established in a socialist society, the people cannot take organized,

joint action smoothly and, worse still, social disorder and undesirable practices may occur.

In order to establish a revolutionary system and order in our society it is necessary to strengthen law-abiding socialist life.

Laws in socialist society are the code of conduct binding on all members as well as the basic means by which the people's government administers affairs of state. By strengthening law-abiding socialist life, the people's government must establish a revolutionary atmosphere in the whole of society to observe laws and encourage all working people to honestly abide by the laws of the Republic.

It is very important to tighten state administrative discipline when establishing a revolutionary system and order in society. The people's governmental organs must establish a well-regulated work system by which to supervise and direct all state and social life in a unified way and build up strict discipline under which all sectors and units accept the decisions and instructions of the Party and state unconditionally and implement them thoroughly. By organizing state and social activities better, they must ensure that all officials and working people observe established discipline and order and increase the social spirit of organization and discipline in line with the development of the revolution and construction.

The unified supervision and operation of every aspect of national life is an important task of the people's government. It enables the people's government to mobilize and make rational use of all resources and potential and to plan and propel the building of the economy and improvement of the people's living standards.

The people's government must keep all the manpower and natural resources under unified control and organize production and distribution, accumulation and consumption in a rational manner. The governmental organs at all levels must coordinate economic construction and the development of culture and services for the people in the districts and units under their charge, organizing and guiding them carefully to suit the needs of the state and the interests of the people.

Our Party and people have placed high trust in the people's

governmental officials and given them heavy responsibility. These officials must work in a responsible manner, with an attitude befitting masters, so as to prove themselves worthy of the deep trust and great expectations of the Party and people. All officials must carry out their revolutionary tasks with a high sense of responsibility, ardent loyalty to the Party and revolution and devotion to the people, thus fulfilling their honourable mission as leaders of the revolution and faithful servants of the people.

## 5

Comrades,

The most urgent national task for the Government of the Republic is to achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

The question of reunifying our country is very important in that it affects the destiny of the Korean nation. Unless the country is reunified, the entire nation will suffer from the disaster caused by national division, and the country's coordinated development and prosperity will be impossible. National reunification is the unanimous desire of our people, who have lived as one nation for ages. On the Korean peninsula danger of permanent division and a new war is increasing daily giving great urgency to settlement of the question of national reunification.

We must make every effort to bring about an early reunification to meet the demands of the nation and the current situation.

In order to settle the question of national reunification, the Government of our Republic is firmly upholding the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity. Our Government has consistently maintained these fundamental principles of national reunification, which represent the will of all Koreans. These three principles alone can ensure that the country is reunified

independently and peacefully on democratic principles, free from any foreign interference.

At present, the first and foremost task in reunifying the country independently and peacefully is to ease tension, to ensure a durable peace on the Korean peninsula and create favourable conditions for peaceful reunification.

The Government of the Republic has made every effort to reduce tension and create the prerequisites for an independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

Early in 1984 we proposed holding tripartite talks among the DPRK, the United States and south Korea in order to replace the Korean Armistice Agreement with a peace agreement and adopt a nonaggression declaration between the north and the south, as a fundamental step towards peace on the Korean peninsula. This was followed by a number of initiatives for various north-south talks, which resulted in the arrangement of venues for broad contacts and dialogues between the north and the south. Early this year we refrained, on our own initiative, from conducting military exercises in order to ease tension and made new proposals for talks between the military authorities and for converting the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free peace zone.

But the United States and the south Korean authorities have disregarded our peaceful efforts and continue to follow a line of confrontation and war, thereby further aggravating the tension.

In south Korea anti-communist clamours against our republic are now occurring on an unprecedentedly large scale, pushing the political confrontation between north and south to an extreme.

Not satisfied with the many slanders they have made against us, the south Korean authorities are now inventing preposterous lies in order to stimulate distrust and hostility towards us among the south Korean people.

The south Korean authorities are ruthlessly suppressing the south Korean youths, students and other people who are fighting for independence against the United States, on the pretext of their being

connected with us. Their struggle is entering a new stage under the banner of anti-US independence, and it is dealing a heavy blow at US colonial rule. The anti-US struggle of the south Korean youths, students and other people is a just, patriotic struggle for national sovereignty in south Korea and for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. The attempt to link their struggle with us is a perversity that can convince no one, and their suppression on the charge of “tolerating communism” is an act against the people and the nation that is being perpetrated under an anti-communist slogan.

Anti-communism is an ideological weapon used by the imperialists to invade, divide and rule other countries. If one is immersed in anti-communism, one will lose Juche and be unable to distinguish between the patriotic and the traitorous and to defend the nation’s independence and interests. Anti-communism represents confrontation and division; it is opposed to the nation’s solidarity, unity and peace; it is an idea of war. It is by no means accidental that even in the “national assembly” of south Korea the validity of the “government policy against communism” is now being questioned and voices are being raised for a “government policy for reunification”.

On the Korean peninsula military tension is increasing.

Recently the United States put special emphasis on the militarily strategic position of south Korea, sharply increasing its armed forces there, introducing a large number of nuclear weapons and turning the whole of south Korea into a nuclear base. Lance missiles and various other nuclear carriers have been shipped into south Korea one after another in addition to the more than 1,000 nuclear weapons already deployed there, and large nuclear armouries are being built.

In particular, we cannot overlook the staging every year by the south Korean authorities and the United States of the provocative, large-scale joint military exercise “Team Spirit” in order to complete their preparations for a nuclear war and fan up war fever, thereby keeping the front and the rear on the alert at all times. This threatening situation, which can only presage war, shows that they may trigger a war at any minute. This naturally rouses our vigilance.

The greater their war preparations, the louder the south Korean authorities cry out against the “threat of southward invasion”. Recently they have gone so far as to spread the nonsense that we have worked out a “plan of invading the south” in anticipation of the 1988 Olympic Games and that we are building the Kumgangsan Power Station for the purpose of “attacking them by means of flood”.

We have stated more than once that we will not invade the south. This stand, which has been officially expressed by the Government of the Republic, is guaranteed explicitly by our large number of peace proposals, and its sincerity has already been confirmed by historical facts during the past decades.

As for the construction of the Kumgangsan Power Station, it is, to all intents and purposes, a peaceful project undertaken under the long-term plan for our socialist economic construction, so there is no reason for the south Korean authorities to feel threatened. None of us is so stupid as to invest such a large amount in a project simply for the purpose of “attacking them by means of flood”, nor do we want to see the south Korean people suffer a disaster. The south Korean authorities should not slander our construction of the power station, but pay due attention to getting those nuclear weapons, which are more than enough to exterminate all the Korean nation, withdrawn from south Korea.

We have never wanted national extermination, nor can we tolerate our territory’s becoming a theatre of nuclear war unleashed by the United States. From this standpoint we declare once again that we have no intention of invading the south and, at the same time, strongly assert that the Korean peninsula be turned as soon as possible into a nuclear-free peace zone.

This sharp confrontation on the Korean peninsula is rousing the serious apprehension of all Korean people who crave for national reunification and the people of the world who aspire to peace.

If this sharp confrontation continues, distrust between north and south will increase and confrontation become aggravated, resulting in the outbreak of another war in Korea. A war in Korea would expand into a global thermonuclear war, thrusting our nation and all

humankind into an irretrievable holocaust.

Today, when the destiny of all our fellow countrymen is at stake, no Korean with a conscience can remain indifferent to this brutal fact.

We must overcome the present difficult situation in every way, seeking a breakthrough for peace in the country and for an independent, peaceful national reunification.

The key to a breakthrough for national reunification in the present situation is to relax the sharp political confrontation and military tensions at the earliest possible date and to create an atmosphere of sincere trust in the nation.

We think it necessary to hold high-level political and military talks between the north and the south in order to settle the first and most urgent question of national reunification.

The deep distrust between the two sides is the result mainly of their political and military confrontation. The removal of this distrust and the creation of an atmosphere of trust depend largely on the efforts of those on both sides who have real political and military authority.

The high-level north-south political and military talks will have to discuss measures to remove the present political confrontation, such as promoting national bonds by refraining from slandering each other and by realizing multilateral cooperation and interchange between the north and the south. They will also have to discuss steps to ease the present tension, such as reducing the armed forces, stopping an arms race, turning the Demilitarized Zone along the Military Demarcation Line into a peace zone and refraining from large-scale military exercises. The talks should also deliberate measures to increase the authority of the Neutral Nations Supervisory Commission and to organize a neutral nations' inspection force with military personnel from Czechoslovakia, Poland, Switzerland and Sweden, which are members of the Neutral Nations Supervisory Commission, to observe military actions on both sides of the Demilitarized Zone.

In addition to these questions we are ready to discuss any proposal made by the south Korean side if it will help relax the political and military situation.

If the high-level north-south political and military talks are to settle satisfactorily various questions raised by both sides, people with real military authority will have to take part in the talks along with high-ranking authorities from both sides.

Our new proposal for these talks is an expression of the idea of national unity and the line of national reunification consistently maintained by the Government of the Republic and another manifestation of our peace efforts. Our new proposal contains the unshakable resolve and will of the Government of the Republic to promote trust and unity among our fellow countrymen by removing distrust and confrontation no matter how complex the circumstances, to ensure peace on the Korean peninsula by preventing war and, further, to reunify the country peacefully.

If the south Korean authorities truly want to break the present deadlock between north and south and follow us on the road to peace in the country and peaceful reunification, they should respond positively to our sincere proposal.

We believe that high-level north-south political and military talks will be an important turning-point in promoting trust between the two sides, in opening a new phase for easing tension and in creating an atmosphere for dialogue.

If the talks are productive, the decades-old distrust between north and south will be removed, an atmosphere of national reconciliation and unity will be created, and successful dialogues will be held in many spheres.

If all these talks succeed, top-level talks between north and south may be held to discuss the fundamental questions for national reunification.

In order to guarantee a durable peace in our country and create the prerequisites for peaceful reunification, tripartite talks should be held among the DPRK, the United States and south Korea.

The conclusion of a peace agreement between the DPRK and the United States and adoption of a nonaggression declaration between north and south are necessary processes to convert the unstable

situation in our country, now under a temporary armistice, into a lasting peace. This is a duty that we and the United States and south Korea cannot avoid.

If the United States really wants peace and reunification in Korea, it must respond to our proposal for tripartite talks and withdraw its troops and nuclear weapons and all other military equipment from south Korea.

The most reasonable way to reunify the country independently and peacefully is to found the Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo, as proposed by the Sixth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea.

If we are to prevent our country from being divided into "two Koreas" forever and ward off the holocaust that threatens the whole nation, we have no alternative but to reunify the country by founding a Federal Republic that will make neither side the conqueror or the conquered. Therefore, we shall patiently continue to try to put this just reunification proposal into effect.

In order to settle the question of national reunification according to the will and desire of the Korean people, we must hold a nationwide dialogue that will represent people from all walks of life. We consider it reasonable to convene a joint conference of the political parties and other organizations of the north and south for this nationwide dialogue. We shall always keep the national dialogue open to all political parties and other organizations in south Korea.

It is the common duty of the entire Korean nation to fight for the reunification of the country. All Korean compatriots, in the north and south and abroad, must achieve great national unity and unite in joint effort, despite differences in ideas and systems, to accomplish the historic cause of national reunification as soon as possible.

The Korean revolution is part of a world revolution, and the revolutionary struggle of our people is closely connected with the general international situation. In order to accelerate the complete victory of socialism and the historic cause of national reunification, we must strengthen solidarity with international revolutionary forces and create an international environment favourable for our revolution.

Independence, friendship and peace are the ideas consistently underlying the Government of our Republic's foreign relations. These ideas express the common aspirations of our people and progressive people in the world to build an independent and peaceful new world of friendship. The Government of the Republic will steadfastly hold to the ideas of independence, friendship and peace as its guideline in foreign activities and implement them thoroughly.

The Government of the Republic will firmly adhere to independence in its foreign relations.

Our foreign policies will conform to the requirements of the Korean revolution and the specific conditions of our country, and all questions arising in international relations will be settled according to the desire and requirements of our people. The Government of the Republic will develop relations with other countries on the principles of complete equality and mutual respect and resolutely uphold the dignity and sovereignty of our nation in the international arena.

It will make positive efforts to develop relations of friendship and cooperation with many countries.

Its unswerving policy is to promote relations of friendship and cooperation with socialist countries. The socialist countries are bastions of world revolution, and developing friendship, solidarity and cooperation among them is an important guarantee for victory of the socialist and communist cause. The Government of the Republic will strengthen friendship and solidarity with its fraternal socialist countries on the principles of Marxism-Leninism and proletarian internationalism and work hard to develop exchanges and cooperation with them in all fields of politics, the economy and culture.

The Non-Aligned Movement is a mighty anti-imperialist, independent force of our time, giving strong impetus to the advance of history. The Government of the Republic will make every effort to extend and develop state relations with the non-aligned countries and third-world nations and realize South-South cooperation.

The Government of the Republic will also establish good-neighbourly relations with capitalist countries that respect our

sovereignty and are friendly towards our country and will promote economic and cultural exchanges with them.

The Democratic People's Republic of Korea is a peace-loving socialist country. Peace is the natural requirement of socialism and the common desire of humankind.

Today all people want peace, but the imperialists' scheme to dominate the world by means of nuclear superiority has created a tense situation in many parts of the world, a situation in which a nuclear war may break out. This is a threatening challenge to the cause of peace of mankind. Preventing a nuclear war and defending peace are solemn tasks of the present day.

With a noble sense of responsibility for the cause of peace, the Government of the Republic will resolutely fight to check and frustrate imperialist moves of aggression and war and defend peace on the Korean peninsula and in Asia and the rest of the world.

Most important at present to prevent a nuclear war and defend peace is to ban nuclear testing, effect nuclear disarmament and abolish nuclear weapons completely. As long as nuclear weapons exist on the globe, the danger of a nuclear war will not disappear and people will not be able to avoid nuclear threat. The Government of the Republic, in cooperation with all peace-loving countries, will fight staunchly to prohibit the testing, production, stockpiling and use of nuclear weapons, to prevent the militarization of space, to reduce the different kinds of nuclear weapons and, further, to abolish all nuclear weapons completely.

To create and expand nuclear-free peace zones is an important way to effect nuclear disarmament, prevent a nuclear war and preserve peace.

The Korean peninsula is fraught with the greatest danger of nuclear war in the world. To ensure peace and security in this part of the world, therefore, is very important for improving the situation in Asia and the Pacific region and for easing general international tension. The Government of the Republic will make every effort to get nuclear weapons withdrawn from south Korea and to make the Korean peninsula a nuclear-free peace zone.

The Government of the Republic fully supports all peaceful proposals made by the socialist countries to prevent a nuclear war and preserve world peace and security and highly values their sincere efforts to implement them. We give full support to the European socialist countries and the people in this region in their struggle to create nuclear-free peace zones in the Balkan Peninsula and in many other parts of Europe and express our firm solidarity with peace-loving people throughout the world in their struggle to create nuclear-free peace zones in Africa, the Middle East, the Indian Ocean and the South Pacific Ocean and many other parts of the world.

The Government of the Republic fully supports the just cause of the peoples of Asia, Africa, Latin America and all other parts of the world, who are fighting for peace, democracy, national independence and for the building of a new society in opposition to imperialist aggression and war. It expresses firm solidarity with the ever-increasing anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement in vast areas of the world.

Under the banner of independence, friendship and peace the Government of the DPRK, in firm unity with the socialist countries, the non-aligned nations and all peace forces throughout the world, will resolutely fight to build a peaceful and prosperous new world free from imperialism and war.

Comrades,

Today our people, with unshakable confidence, are firmly resolved to win the complete victory of socialism and accomplish the historic cause of national reunification as soon as possible by pressing ahead with the revolution and construction.

The might of our people, armed firmly with the Juche idea and rallying closely behind the Party, is invincible, and the future of our people, who have taken state power into their own hands and are working for a just, revolutionary cause, is bright.

Let us all fight on, firmly rallied behind our Party and the Government of the Republic under the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea, to accelerate the complete victory of socialism and the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

**LET US ACCELERATE SOCIALIST  
ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION BY GIVING  
FULL PLAY TO THE REVOLUTIONARY  
SPIRIT OF SELF-RELIANCE**

**Talk to Senior Officials in the Economic Sector**

*January 3, 1987*

I wish you good health and success in your work in the new year.

As I mentioned at the joint meeting of the Central People's Committee and the Administration Council held on this New Year's Day, from this year on, we shall carry on the Third Seven-Year Plan, a plan of great importance in our revolution and construction. The basic task of the Third Seven-Year Plan is to continually accelerate the work of putting the national economy on a Juche-orientated, modern and scientific basis, and lay solid material and technical foundations for the complete victory of socialism.

The Third Seven-Year Plan is an extremely ambitious one. During the new long-term plan we must attain the ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction advanced at the Sixth Congress of the Party, and increase industrial production by more than 0.9 times and agricultural output by more than 0.4 times. To this end, we must equip industry, agriculture and all other branches of the national economy with up-to-date technology, and conduct capital construction aimed at increasing production capacity on a wide scale.

When the Third Seven-Year Plan is carried out, our country will be able to take its place among the nations leading the world in economic

progress, and a decisive advance will be made in our people's struggle for the complete victory of socialism. Then our people's material and cultural standards will be very high, and our country will be turned into a land of bliss for the people which will be an even better place to live.

However, it will not be at all easy for us to implement the new long-term plan. We will have to carry it out under the difficult conditions in which our country is divided and we are in direct confrontation with the US imperialists. They have shipped huge armed forces into south Korea and are frequently conducting military exercises against our Republic. At the same time, they are plotting to prevent the latest science and technology as well as important strategic materials from being introduced into our country, in order to stifle us economically.

Modern revisionism which has appeared in the international communist movement, is also creating a lot of difficulties for our revolution. On the pretext of "reforming" and "reorganizing" socialism, the modern revisionists are following the road to capitalism and abandoning internationalist principles. It is, therefore, difficult for us to expect from them cooperation based on internationalism in the building of socialism. What is worse, they are applying economic pressure on us because we do not follow their wrong revisionist policy.

The tasks of the Third Seven-Year Plan are ambitious, and we face various difficulties. But we are fully able to carry out the new long-term plan by our own efforts. The situation now is different from what it was when we were undertaking postwar reconstruction with nothing. Our strength has now grown hundreds of times compared with those days. We have the solid foundations of an independent national economy, the people who have been hardened in the practice of socialist construction and are rallied rock-solid behind the Party, and a large force of able scientists and technicians has been trained by our Party.

Everything depends on how our cadres, Party members and other working people display the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. Self-reliance is a strong revolutionary spirit of carrying out one's tasks

by producing anything that is not available and finding out what is in short supply, believing in and relying on one's own strength. Only when all officials fully display the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude with a high degree of consciousness that they are the leading officials in the revolution, can they make the best possible use of the existing economic foundations, and succeed in achieving the ambitious goals of the Third Seven-Year Plan.

At present, however, our officials are not fully aware that they are the leading figures in the revolution, and lack the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude. This is a problem. In former days, whatever difficult tasks I gave them, our officials carried them out by the appointed time and without fail, without any objections or excuses, working through the night. At present, however, even when they are assigned important tasks, officials do not perform them promptly, complaining about conditions. The officials in charge of the mining industries are complaining that they cannot produce coal smoothly because of a lack of wooden props and coal waggons; those in charge of the metal industry are claiming that they cannot produce steel as planned because they are short of materials and electricity; those in the field of the machine industry are claiming that they cannot produce many lorries and tractors because of the insufficient supply of steel.

Those who are lacking in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude cannot make the revolution. If one lacks this spirit, one will look up to others without believing in one's own strength, and vacillate or yield, losing confidence even in face of slight difficulties. If things come to this pass, we will not be able to carry out the Third Seven-Year Plan, and, moreover, will not succeed in the building of socialism.

Officials must make strenuous efforts to solve all problems of the revolution and construction through their own efforts. They must not vacillate or yield in the face of any difficulties and trials but brave them full of confidence and optimism.

Self-reliance and fortitude constitute an important fighting spirit of communists. Communists are conscious revolutionaries who work to

build socialism and communism, the ideal of mankind. They are making a revolution, not under someone's orders or coercion nor for standing high in someone's favour. They make the revolution in accordance with their own faith. The communists, who have embarked on the road of revolution of their own free will, with a firm determination to build socialism and communism, must regard it as an important revolutionary rule to always believe in the strength of their people and solve all problems of the revolution and construction by relying on that strength. One cannot make revolution if one seeks help from others and relies on the strength of others without believing in one's own strength. Self-reliance is the only way for communists to achieve the ultimate victory of the revolution. There is no other alternative.

During the whole period from the first days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle up to now, we have invariably adhered to the revolutionary principle of self-reliance and fortitude, and carried on the revolutionary struggle and construction work by our own efforts.

As all of you know through the study of the history of our revolutionary struggle, the greatest difficulty for us in organizing and waging the anti-Japanese armed struggle was to obtain weapons. No country was willing to give us weapons for nothing at that time, and moreover, even if we wanted to buy them, we had no money. In this situation we had no choice but to seize weapons from the enemy and produce them by our own efforts. Under the militant slogan "Weapons are our life and soul! Oppose armed force with armed force!", we waged a bloody struggle to wrest weapons from the enemy. Many revolutionary comrades even laid down their valuable lives to obtain weapons. Each one of the guns we procured at that time was stained with the hot blood of our revolutionary comrades and their ardent patriotism. While arming ourselves with the weapons we had captured from the enemy, we made weapons by ourselves. As a matter of fact, it was unimaginable at an ordinary time to produce weapons by oneself with no tools worth mentioning. However, by overcoming all hardships, the anti-Japanese guerrillas produced gunpowder by

themselves and made various bombs, small and big, by obtaining iron and wire. The bombs made at that time were called “Yanji bombs”. Using these bombs, the anti-Japanese guerrillas killed and injured a large number of enemy soldiers.

Even in the difficult years immediately after liberation, when we had taken over an insignificant economy and empty treasury, we rebuilt the destroyed factories and coal and ore mines by our own efforts without asking others for help. During the grim Fatherland Liberation War decisive to the destiny of the country, we built underground arsenals with our own resources and produced weapons to fight the enemy.

Even during the days of postwar reconstruction, when everything had been destroyed and we were at a loss what to begin with, we relied on our own strength without depending on others. We took up the first shovel of reconstruction literally on the ruins. Some people wavered at that time. The anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists insisted on depending on aid from others, claiming that our people were unable to perform the difficult task of postwar reconstruction. Nevertheless, our Party resolutely rejected this attitude and resolved to undertake postwar reconstruction by relying on our people’s strength. Our people rose in response to the policy of the Party and successfully restored the ruined economy in a short time, tightening their belts and making immense efforts. Moreover, they built many factories and produced a variety of up-to-date machines such as tractors, lorries and electric locomotives in large quantities.

I highly appreciate the workers of Ragwon as an example of self-reliance. This is because they have carried out all difficult tasks given them by the Party, by their own efforts, with no conditions attached and without asking their superiors for help.

Even under the difficult circumstances of the grim Fatherland Liberation War, when their factory’s production facilities were severely destroyed by the enemy’s bombing, the workers of Ragwon did not discontinue production even for a moment, and turned out hand-grenades for the front. After the war, in hearty response to the

Party's call for intensifying the efforts for increased production and economy, they produced with distinction large water pumps, lorry-mounted cranes, excavators, and other modern machines and equipment, braving numerous obstacles by their own efforts. We carried on construction and irrigation with the cranes, excavators and water pumps made by the workers of the Ragwon Machine Factory by relying on their own efforts. Recently they have admirably turned out a large oxygen plant by their own efforts, which only developed industrial countries were said to be able to make. The production of an up-to-date large oxygen plant by the workers of Ragwon means that our country has scaled another height in the development of the machine industry.

Our independent and modern industry, developed agriculture, brilliant national culture and enormous defence capability have not been built with the help of any great power or thanks to any "god"; they are all attributable to the fact that our people have worked devotedly under the leadership of the Party by displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude. This is why we can say that all the successes achieved by our people in the revolutionary struggle and construction work are a valuable fruit of the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude. Today many people throughout the world highly praise our country as a "model country of self-reliance". This is by no means accidental.

Our people have suffered greater hardships and shed more blood and sweat than others in building socialism by their own efforts under unprecedentedly arduous conditions. Nonetheless, they have great pride and self-confidence in having admirably built our own style of socialism which firmly guarantees them a happy life.

We must honourably carry forward the tradition of self-reliance of our Party and our people. "Let us reach the ambitious goals of the Third Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule by displaying a higher degree of the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude!"—this is an important militant slogan our Party is putting forward now.

In whole-hearted response to the Party's militant slogan, all sectors

and units of the national economy must thoroughly establish the revolutionary habit of carrying out the state plan by their own efforts and with no conditions attached.

In capitalist society, where the means of production are privately owned, production is conducted in an unplanned way. However, in socialist society, where they are owned publicly, all production is conducted in a planned way under the unified guidance of the state. The fulfilment of the state plan as a whole and the country's economic development depend on how each sector and each unit carries out its production quota assigned under the state plan. If any one of the sectors or units fails to fulfil its production quota assigned under the state plan properly, it will affect those sectors and units which are related to it and, further, hold up the economic development of the country as a whole. Therefore, every sector and every unit must not fail to carry out its quota assigned under the state plan daily, monthly, quarterly and in terms of all indices.

In particular, we must make energetic efforts for the successful fulfilment of the national economic plan for this year, the first year of the Third Seven-Year Plan. As the saying goes "Well begun is half done," making a good start is important in any work. Only when the national economic plan for this year is carried out with success, can a breakthrough be made in carrying through the new long-term plan ahead of schedule. Therefore, we must fulfil the national economic plan for this year by all means.

In carrying out this year's national economic plan, the metal industry, power industry, coal-mining industry, building-materials industry, chemical industry and rail transport sector must lead the other sectors. Only then will all the sectors of the national economy be able to attain a high and steady rate of production, and the national economic plan for this year as a whole can be successfully carried out. This is why at the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Party Central Committee I set forth the tasks for this year—the monthly output of steel, the volume of electricity generation per hour, the daily output of coal and cement, the daily amount of transportation by rail, the amount

of nitrogenous fertilizer to be produced and of oil to be processed this year. You must squarely tackle the tasks I gave you at the plenary meeting and carry them out without fail from January.

If they are to properly carry out the production quota of their respective sectors and units assigned under the state plan, by their own efforts, the officials must organize the economic work meticulously to tap latent reserves to the full, with the determination to do their task even when no assistance is given them by their superiors, though such assistance might help them. If they make strenuous efforts with the determination to accomplish any task by their own efforts, they will be able to find solutions to difficult problems and tap the latent reserves.

As matters stand now, when they are given some additional task, some officials complain and indiscriminately ask their superiors for help without giving thought to finding out reserves. They must not do so. We still have many latent reserves. Latent reserves are nothing special. They are manpower, equipment and materials that are not used for production or are not used effectively. These reserves are available in all sectors and units.

In order to fully tap latent reserves, officials must, above all else, go among the producer masses and stimulate them ideologically through efficient political work.

The greatest reserve in socialist society is in the minds of the working people, the masters of production and management. Therefore, as is the case with all other work, the work of tapping latent reserves can succeed only when precedence is given to political work and the working people are stimulated ideologically. It is our Party's traditional method of work to give priority to political work in all work, and stimulate the masses' voluntary enthusiasm and creative activity.

Whenever I encountered difficult problems in the course of guiding the revolution and construction, I solved them by mixing with the people and giving rein to their revolutionary enthusiasm through political work.

As all of you know, 1956 was a year of trial for our Party and

people. The US imperialists and south Korean puppet clique clamoured for a “march north” and ceaselessly attempted to unleash a war to invade the northern half of Korea. The anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists who had found their way into the Party challenged the Party, each with the backing of a big country. At that time the pressure by the revisionists was also awesome. In this situation we had to begin the First Five-Year Plan in 1957, but we were short of funds, manpower and materials. In particular, there was a great shortage of steel. So, following the December 1956 Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee, I went to the Kangson Steel Plant in company with some officials. I held a consultative meeting with the senior officials there and asked them if they could produce 10,000 tons more of steel than planned in the following year. They replied it would be difficult to do so because the rated capacity of the blooming mill was 60,000 tons. Judging that further discussion with them would not solve the problem, I made up my mind to appeal directly to the workers. So I gathered them in the building which was meant to be used as a storehouse and made a speech. I said: “The situation in the country now is extremely difficult. We are going to start the First Five-Year Plan next year, but we are short of funds, materials, manpower and equipment. What is worse, the anti-Party, counterrevolutionary factionalists have raised their heads against the Party, and the revisionists are putting pressure to bear upon us, while the US imperialists and the south Korean puppet clique are again clamouring for a ‘march north’. We have no one but you, the working class, to believe in; if you produce 10,000 tons more of steel than planned, tapping latent reserves, things will improve in the country.” As soon as I finished my speech, all the workers rose from their seats, cheered and expressed their determination to produce without fail as much steel as the Party wanted. True to the Party’s appeal, the workers of Kangson rose as one, and, tapping latent reserves, created the miracle of producing 120,000 tons of steel from a blooming mill with the rated capacity of 60,000 tons. Later on, they vigorously promoted a technical innovation movement and raised the capacity of the

blooming mill from 60,000 tons to the 1,000,000-ton level.

Following the example of the workers of the Kangson Steel Plant, many factories and enterprises throughout the country smashed the old rated capacities and norms, and made innovations. In 1957 the workers of the Kim Chaek Iron Works produced 270,000 tons of pig iron from 190,000-ton capacity equipment.

Amidst the crescendo of the struggle for increased production the obstacles which stood in our way were overcome, the economic situation of the country improved and the great Chollima upswing was brought about in the building of socialism.

All senior officials must mix closely with the producer masses, give priority to political work so that they are fully aware of the significance and importance of the implementation of the new long-term plan, and actively tap latent reserves.

Launching a strong campaign for economization is of great importance in mobilizing latent reserves. This is essential for increasing production and construction with the existing equipment, materials and manpower.

In every sector the practices of handling state and public property carelessly and wasting it still persist. Those in charge of the machine industry do not use standard steel, but cut materials several times bigger than the products; they make rejects in the process of production, wasting much steel. Those in charge of the chemical and metal industries neglect to repair equipment promptly and keep it in perfect working order, and do not strictly observe the standard procedures in the operation of equipment, and waste a great amount of electricity. There is a great deal of wastage in the construction industry, in particular. Those in charge of this industry make designs carelessly and erect faulty buildings, thus wasting a great amount of manpower, cement, steel, bricks and timber. Practices which lead to waste can be found, more or less, in every sector and every unit. Without doing away with waste we cannot make the country prosperous and provide the people with affluent lives, no matter how much we may produce and build.

All sectors and units of the national economy must launch a strong mass campaign for economization. By economy we do not mean that even indispensable things should not be used. Economy means using only essential things and using the least possible amount of them and as economically as possible.

In order to strengthen the save-and-spare regime, the officials must manage the economic life of the country scrupulously. In managing the economy the senior officials must make correct calculations, closely examine the consumption of manpower, materials and funds, and adopt measures to economize them to the utmost and make effective use of them. The country's need for electricity is acute now, so profound attention must be paid to using it economically. To this end, we must improve the electric power systems further, reduce the transmission loss of electricity and carefully stagger production.

Strengthening of the save-and-spare system also requires educating the producer masses properly so that they, with the attitude of masters, will value state and public property more than their own, and economize in the use of every single gramme of coal, every watt of electricity, every piece of iron and every string of thread.

In addition, a powerful ideological struggle must be waged against the careless handling and waste of state property. Wasting state property through slipshod work is attributable to a self-seeking attitude and other outdated ideas persisting in the minds of the people. Without strengthening the ideological struggle to root out the old ideological remnants, practices of waste will not be eradicated. Therefore, we must not connive at the slightest manifestation of waste but completely overcome it through prompt ideological struggle.

Legal control must also be strengthened. Anyone, whoever he or she may be, must be punished legally when he or she misappropriates or wastes state materials.

In order to mobilize latent reserves to the full, due attention must be paid to improving the qualitative indices.

The qualitative indices show how effectively the human and material resources of the country are used in production and construction. It is

only when the qualitative indices such as labour productivity, the norms for the consumption of materials, the utilization rate of equipment and costs are continually improved that waste in production and construction can be eliminated, and labour, equipment, materials and funds can be used as economically as possible.

At present, however, many officials in economic institutions, factories and enterprises do not pay any attention to improving the qualitative indices. Some senior officials of the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council, and of factories and enterprises do not investigate how the qualitative indices are being implemented in their respective sectors or units. Therefore, few of the qualitative indices are improved, and some of them are still at a low level. The present norm of power consumption per product is little different from what it was ten years ago. All sectors and all units must correctly fix the norms of qualitative indices based on scientific, technical and economic calculations, apply them correctly and improve them continuously in accordance with the requirements of the developing situation.

If we are to fulfil the new long-term plan successfully by displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude we must step up the technical revolution, at the same time as tapping latent reserves to the full.

The technical revolution is an important guarantee for increasing production and accelerating economic construction. It is only when all sectors and all units of the national economy vigorously promote the technical revolution, put production processes on a modern basis and introduce advanced production methods that they can increase labour productivity, economize on raw and other materials and fuel, and make a success of the enormous tasks of the new long-term plan. At the moment, many officials of factories and enterprises are preoccupied only with current production, and hardly direct any attention to developing technology. Some officials do not think of improving the old and backward machines and equipment in their factories, and even when workers and technicians offer good proposals for technical

innovations, they are unwilling to accept them on the excuse that they are busy with current production. If this is the way the officials do things, they will never be able to innovate technology, improve backward machines and equipment and develop production speedily.

Those officials who cling to the status quo, engrossed only in the production in hand without promoting the technical revolution, cannot be said to be loyal to the Party. Officials must have a correct point of view on the technical revolution, and energetically promote it. In accordance with the prospective objectives of socialist economic construction and the requirements of the prevailing situation, they must map out a correct plan for scientific and technical development, and enlist in every possible way the creativity of scientists and technicians and broad sections of the workers for its implementation. All sectors of the national economy must modernize old and backward equipment, and work hard to introduce mechanization, automation, the use of robots and computers in production processes. Furthermore, the technical revolution in the rural areas must be stepped up to put agriculture on an industrial basis. Since irrigation and electrification of agriculture have already been realized, we must consolidate this success and, at the same time, produce a variety of modern farm machines such as tractors and combine harvesters as well as fertilizers and agricultural chemicals in great quantities for the rural areas, and thus achieve comprehensive mechanization and use of chemicals in agriculture as soon as possible.

Building socialism on the principle of self-reliance and fortitude does not mean rejecting international exchanges and cooperation in order to provide everything one needs by oneself. No country provides everything it needs on its own, and no country, however advanced it may be, possesses all kinds of technology. The same is true for our country. Although our country abounds in natural resources, it is lacking in many things, such as crude oil, coking coal and crude rubber. However, some officials think that the import of materials or the introduction of advanced technology from other countries means the lack of the spirit of Juche and of the revolutionary spirit of

self-reliance and fortitude. If we do not import without delay those materials which are not available or are in short supply in our country, and do not accept advanced science and technology from other countries but delay under the plea that we should research them by ourselves, we cannot make a success of the tasks of socialist economic construction. While putting the main stress on building and developing the economy by relying on our own resources and technology, we must obtain those things which are not available or are in short supply in our country, and renovate backward technology through economic and technical exchanges and cooperation with other countries. This is advantageous from the economic point of view.

If officials are to give full play to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, they must be fully equipped with our Party's revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, and be firmly convinced of the victory of the socialist cause.

The Juche idea is the idea that man is the master of his destiny and that he has the power to shape his destiny. The Juche idea clarifies the goal of achieving independence of the masses of the people and the ways of attaining it. Only when the officials are firmly equipped with the Juche idea can they overcome the difficulties and trials on their way by their own efforts, be convinced of the justness of the socialist cause and work with devotion for its victory. Some officials neglect the study of the Juche idea on the excuse that they are busy. If they do this, they will suffer from ideological maladies. The officials, however busy they may be, must not discontinue their study but continue it unremittingly so as to make the Juche idea their faith, and must make it their ingrained characteristic to work and live as the Juche idea demands.

A resolute struggle must be waged against all manner of morbid ideas, such as flunkeyism and defeatism, which are alien to the Juche idea.

As I have already mentioned, flunkeyism is a servile idea of serving and worshipping big powers and developed countries and national nihilism which is expressed in looking down upon one's own country

and people and despising them. As a matter of fact, there is no flunkeyism among us as an ideological trend, but flunkeyist tendencies still remain among our officials. If officials become obsessed with flunkeyism, they will not believe in our Party's lines and policies, or try to implement them faithfully, looking up only to big powers and developed countries. They will fail to give play to creativity as their faculty of independent thinking will become paralyzed, and, in the long run, they will become unable to tell right from wrong. This is why I said a long time ago that if one is affected by flunkeyism, one will become a fool, if a nation falls into flunkeyism, the country will be ruined and if a party follows flunkeyism, it will make a mess of the revolution and construction.

Defeatism is a very harmful ideology which makes one fear difficulties and step back from them or abandon oneself to despair. If officials become obsessed with defeatism they will lose confidence in the victory of the revolution, and vacillate or yield even to slight difficulties because of fear. They will not put their shoulders to the wheel to solve difficult problems and will not work hard, only complaining about circumstances. Defeatism is evident among those who are not firm in their faith in the socialist cause and do not believe in the strength of their people. Defeatism is a taboo for revolutionaries. Officials must never be imbued with defeatism however great the difficulties they face are. They must be full of confidence and optimism that they can overcome difficulties if they challenge them through struggle.

All the officials must be fully aware of the harmfulness of flunkeyism and defeatism, and resolutely fight against them.

I firmly believe that all officials will successfully carry out the economic tasks facing their respective sectors by giving full play to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, and thus bring about a fresh upsurge in socialist economic construction.

## **TALK TO THE DELEGATION OF THE ZIMBABWEAN PARLIAMENT**

*January 19, 1987*

I warmly welcome you, the delegation of the Zimbabwean Parliament headed by the Speaker of the House of Assembly, on a visit to our country. You, the head of the delegation, have come to our country for the first time. I am very happy to meet you and make a friend of you.

Korea and Zimbabwe are far from each other geographically, but both maintain independence as non-aligned countries, and have friendly and comradely relations.

We are grateful to the Zimbabwean people for actively supporting and encouraging our people in their struggle for socialist construction and national reunification. Our people, too, are giving positive support to the Zimbabwean people's struggle against racism and for the consolidation of national independence.

Your current visit to our country will make a great contribution to improving the relations between the Supreme People's Assembly of our country and the Parliament of your country, and to further developing the existing friendly and cooperative relations between the peoples of our two countries.

This is the first visit to our country for you, but the President and Prime Minister of your country have visited Korea several times. Frequent visits of your leaders to our country are favourable for developing the relations between our two countries, I think. The

peoples of our two countries will always go hand in hand with each other in the struggle to oppose imperialism and defend independence.

At present, the situation in our country is very tense.

The US imperialists, who have occupied half the territory of our country, have deployed a large number of aggressive troops and many nuclear weapons in south Korea, watching for a chance to invade our Republic. Our people are resolutely fighting to frustrate the enemy's moves towards war and defend peace in Korea, united rock-solid behind our Party.

Our people do not want war; they desire peace. Only when peace prevails in our country can our people build socialism more successfully and lead a happy life.

The Government of our Republic, out of a desire to secure peace on the Korean peninsula and open a way for peaceful reunification, holds that the Armistice Agreement concluded between us and the United States should be replaced with a peace treaty and a nonaggression declaration adopted between the north and south of Korea. However, our unilateral efforts alone cannot ensure a durable peace on the Korean peninsula. For a durable peace in our country, the north and the south must make a joint effort.

At present, the situation in Southern Africa is as tense as in our country. I have been deeply concerned about the circumstances of your country and the situation of Southern Africa for a long time. The Prime Minister of your country will visit our country within a few days and I would like to take this opportunity to exchange opinions on relaxing tensions prevailing in Southern Africa and other international issues.

Today, the peoples of the developing countries are faced with the task of consolidating the political independence they have already gained, building an independent national economy, and defending the peace and security of the world.

Maintaining political independence is the first prerequisite for the developing countries. A country without political independence cannot be called a genuine independent state even though it has a President and a Parliament. Such a country is vulnerable to domination again by

other countries. The developing countries should resolutely fight, in firm unity, against imperialists, racists and dominationists who trample and infringe upon others' independence.

A self-reliant national economy is the foundation of an independent state. Only when they build a self-reliant national economy can the developing countries consolidate their political independence, and save their people from starvation and poverty.

Many developing countries in Africa are undergoing difficulties in building independent national economies, owing to the neocolonialist policy of the imperialists. The imperialists are resorting to crafty tricks to dominate these countries again by using "aid" or "cooperation" as a trap to impose neocolonialism. At the summit of the seven Western industrialized countries held in Japan last year, the leaders of the capitalist countries asserted that developing countries could receive "aid" only through the International Monetary Fund. This clearly revealed the aggressive, plundering nature of the imperialists who are attempting to recolonize developing countries. The mission of the IMF is outwardly international cooperation in monetary affairs, the stabilization of currency and well-balanced development of international trade. But, as a matter of fact, it is used as a tool for economic penetration of member states by the US imperialists and the Western capitalist countries. If developing countries borrow money from the IMF, they will be forced to act as dictated by the US imperialists and the Western capitalist countries, which control this organization at their whim.

I have met many heads of state from Africa. They all say that they are compelled to borrow money from the IMF because they are suffering from economic difficulties. In fact, for a country to borrow money from the IMF is as dangerous as falling into the trap of domination. If a poor man borrows money and food grain from a rich man in order to live, he will become a servant of the latter when he fails to repay the debt. The same is true of a country. If a developing country borrows money from the IMF and does not repay the debt afterwards, it will get deeper into debt owing to the ever-increasing interest, and at

last will become subjugated again by the imperialists.

The lessons of history show that the imperialists offer neither political independence to their colonies nor self-reliant economies to developing countries. Developing countries must build independent national economies by their own efforts instead of trying to benefit from the IMF.

There are two ways for developing countries to be self-reliant in the economy; one is to make the maximum use of their internal resources by displaying the spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, and the other is to realize South-South cooperation on the principle of collective self-reliance. In the long run, the one and only way for them to survive independently is by believing in their own strength.

South-South cooperation is a noble way for developing countries to realize self-reliance in the economy by teaming up with each other economically and technically. The development of South-South cooperation will make it possible for them not only to build independent national economies successfully but also to destroy the old, unfair international economic order, and establish a new, fair one.

In recent years I have studied seriously how to make South-South cooperation fruitful.

Nowadays, sufficient conditions and possibilities for realizing South-South cooperation really exist. Because of their common situation and ideals, developing countries are all interested in developing South-South cooperation. They are blessed with rich human resources and abundant natural resources, and have some good experience and technology which they can exchange with each other. If they make effective use of the present conditions and possibilities, and make joint efforts, South-South cooperation may produce good results.

The Eighth Summit Conference of the Non-Aligned Countries held last year in Harare, the capital of Zimbabwe, decided to hold in our country this year an extraordinary ministerial conference of the non-aligned countries on South-South cooperation. We hope that this conference will proceed successfully and make a great contribution to

the development of South-South cooperation.

Developing countries must develop cooperation and exchanges briskly, starting from the practical possibilities and urgent matters. Agriculture is the sector which badly needs South-South cooperation.

It will not be so difficult for African countries to find a solution to the clothing problem. A fairly large amount of clothing of different kinds is needed in our country because of its cold winter, but six to ten metres of cloth per capita would be enough for African countries, where warm or hot weather continues all the year round.

For African countries, food is more urgent than clothing. Many African countries have vast territories and large populations, but they have not been successful in farming because of a shortage of agricultural technicians and experts, and farm machinery. As a result, in these countries many people are going hungry. However, no country is willing to provide them with food for nothing. African countries should not try to receive assistance from others but develop agriculture with their own efforts to produce enough food.

If they are to attain self-sufficiency in food by developing agriculture, African countries should carry out irrigation projects and improve farming methods. In addition, they should establish joint ventures in farming in different forms and methods, and closely cooperate in agricultural science research and in the production of farm machinery.

We are now running experimental joint-venture farms with Tanzania and Ethiopia, and their prospects are bright. However, our country, which is not large, cannot cooperate in farming with all the African countries. African countries should unite their own efforts and knowledge to carry out irrigation projects and improve farming methods. By so doing, they can enjoy good harvests and attain self-sufficiency in food.

For the agricultural development of African countries, North-South cooperation is also necessary.

Many of the developed European capitalist countries respect the independence of other countries. If developing countries in Africa

cooperate with these countries in farming they will be able to learn farming technology and improve farm machinery considerably. If the former ask the latter for farm machinery without any conditions, the latter may not agree. But, if they propose joint ventures in such a way that African countries provide arable land and developed European countries provide farm machinery, the latter may accept the proposal. Now, the developed countries are deeply interested in obtaining raw materials. Therefore, on such joint-venture farms, it would not be bad to plant industrial crops in some part of the arable land. For example, when one African country runs a joint-venture farm of 3,000 hectares with an advanced European capitalist country, it would be advisable to plant food grain on 2,000 hectares of the land for the former and industrial crops on 1,000 hectares for the latter. The management of a joint-venture farm using such a method will accord with the interests of both. If the African country runs the joint-venture farm with the advanced European capitalist country for ten or 15 years, it can pay off the debts for the farm machinery with the money from selling industrial crops produced on the 1,000 hectares. Further, the ownership of the machinery will be transferred to the African country. In this way the African people will be able to do farming properly with their own strength and technology. Although the African countries run joint-venture farms with the advanced European capitalist countries, they need not worry about losing their cultivated lands. The land will remain for ever in their ownership.

In realizing North-South economic cooperation, developing countries need not fawn upon advanced capitalist countries. It is not that only the former benefits from the latter in North-South economic cooperation. Cooperation between countries is materialized always by the identity of interests and on the principle of mutual benefit. We hold that North-South economic cooperation must be realized on the principle of independence, equality and mutual benefit. Developed capitalist countries, too, will not oppose this idea.

If each country is trying to develop South-South cooperation and North-South economic cooperation with the attitude of sincerely

helping each other, all African countries will be able to attain economic growth. Of the African countries, the number of countries in a very difficult economic situation amounts to 30, except for Zimbabwe and some other countries whose economy is fairly well developed. If the economically advanced ones of the developing countries and the developed European capitalist countries help one or two of these backward countries for about ten years, their economies will develop.

I think it advisable to invite to the extraordinary ministerial conference of the non-aligned countries on South-South cooperation, to be held in our country this year, not only the socialist countries which sincerely help developing countries but also the advanced capitalist countries which maintain their independence and support the non-aligned countries. Austria, Sweden and Finland are such countries. We may also invite Denmark and the Netherlands, member states of NATO, to this conference. They are small countries, but have advanced technology.

I was told that you invited the Chairman of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People's Assembly of our country to your country. I agree with that. Exchanging many delegations is significant for strengthening and developing the friendly and cooperative relations between our two countries. Many mutual visits of high-level delegations will bring leaders of the two countries close to each other.

I hope you will visit our country frequently. If you visit our country again you will become an old friend of ours.

I hope that on your return home you will convey my greetings to your President and Prime Minister, and our people's greetings to your people.

**ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED  
BY THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF OF SOVIET  
*CHILDREN'S LITERATURE***

*February 5, 1987*

**Question:** Article I of the Law on the Upbringing and Education of Children in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea states, "The children of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea represent the future of the country and are the future builders of communism and the successors to our revolutionary cause, who will carry out the revolution through the coming generations."

In your young days you longed for such a happy life. You studied assiduously and read many books at your home at Mangyongdae. Today children visit the place where you studied, which is on a hill by a riverbank. Which books influenced you and what did they teach you that was of help in the difficult days of your life?

**Answer:** As the editorial staff of the magazine *Children's Literature* and its readers have experienced, one's childhood days are the most important days of one's life. At this time of their life, people want to know and study a lot and they do things out of curiosity. Particularly in their school days, children yearn for the new, their sense of justice grows and they feel an ardent desire to seek after the truth.

People enjoy reading books, especially in their school days when their outlook on the world begins to take shape. It is very important for children and young people to read good books when their world

outlook is being formed. Progressive socio-political books and revolutionary literature have a great influence on children, young people and students in the development of their revolutionary view of the world and on their political and moral training.

I, too, enjoyed reading books in my young days. When I was a child, taking to heart my father's instruction that I must study if I was to win back the country, I studied closely the history, culture and geography of Korea while reading many biographies of the famous patriotic generals of our country as well as their writings. As Marxism-Leninism was spreading under the influence of the October Socialist Revolution in Russia, I began to read a great deal of Marxist-Leninist literature and many progressive socio-political books. In those days I devoured *The Communist Manifesto*, *Elements of Socialism*, *Biography of Lenin* and other Marxist-Leninist books. *Mother* by Gorky, *On the River Amnok*, *Blessing*, *The Iron Flood* and other progressive and revolutionary novels were my particular favourites.

These books had a beneficial effect on the formation of my outlook on the world. By reading many good books and experiencing the miserable conditions under which our people groaned during the ferocious colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists, I nurtured a patriotic desire to fight against Japan, resolved to start a revolution and, finally, embarked on the road of struggle.

More than 60 years have passed since I embarked on the road of revolution. In the course of this revolutionary struggle I have passed through many unbearably harsh trials. The period of the Fatherland Liberation War against the armed invasion of the US imperialists was a truly difficult one and the days of postwar reconstruction, when we had to construct new factories and rebuild the cities and villages on the war ruins, were also days of severe ordeal, not to mention the long period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle waged for the liberation of the motherland.

However, we never hesitated to confront difficulties, nor did we ever flinch from them in those days of severe ordeal. We fought

through to the end and achieved victory, for we held to the revolutionary idea that one must take responsibility for one's own destiny and the revolutionary belief that one emerges victorious when one struggles with full confidence in one's own strength and an indomitable revolutionary will. Such a revolutionary idea, belief and will were not cultivated in a day or two, but during the long course of struggle and life. I think the starting point was in my young days when I enjoyed reading.

The books I read in my early years served as a teacher who taught me the truth about struggle and life for the first time and a fellow traveller who helped me to embark on the true journey of life.

**Question:** You joined the revolutionary struggle in your earliest years and later became a communist, a career revolutionary.

Which of the characteristics that you possessed when young do you think helped you to face up to the hard struggle you waged to realize your ideals? Have you any advice for the young people of today?

**Answer:** People's ideology and character are established in their earliest years. The character shaped in their youngest days greatly affects their future development. Honest people and career revolutionaries who are loved and respected by the people are those who developed beautiful and noble characters at an early age.

As for the essential characteristics of a career revolutionary, they can be identified as intense revolutionary spirit, party loyalty, working-class loyalty, and loyalty to the people. Of these, I believe loyalty to the people is the most essential. As revolution is a struggle to free the people from every type of exploitation and oppression and build a society in which everyone leads a happy life, a career revolutionary must have, above all, the noble characteristic of loving the people and being devoted to serving them.

I was educated in patriotism by my parents and was under their revolutionary influence from my early years. In the course of seeking for truth, with such an education and influence, and of witnessing

social phenomena full of injustice and conflict, I came to sympathize with humiliated people and to hate imperialists, landowners and the capitalist class who oppressed and exploited the people and determined to devote my life to the struggle to liberate the people.

From the very first days of my revolutionary struggle to this day I have consistently respected and loved the people with all my heart, believing in the masses and relying on their creativity and wisdom. In the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle I maintained close relations with the people and received their active support, fighting under the slogan “As fish cannot live without water, so guerrillas cannot live without the people.” After liberation, too, I went among the masses to seek a way of solving the important problems that arose at every stage of the revolution and construction. The people protected and helped me with total devotion and gave me the wisdom and strength to set the revolution and construction on the right road.

As we always fought in unity with the masses, we were able to achieve the historic cause of national liberation and build a socialist society in our land, where all the people can lead a happy life free from exploitation and oppression.

Through my long revolutionary struggle I learned by experience that only when we respect and love the people, can we receive their wholehearted support and encouragement, and that only when we believe in and rely on their strength, can all difficulties in our fight be overcome.

You have asked me what advice I should like to give the young people of today. Let me reply.

The young people represent a new society and are the future masters. The revolutionary struggle of the people against imperialism and for a new society is a historic struggle that cannot be completed by a single generation; the success of this struggle depends on the young people. They must be aware of their important duty and train themselves to become successors to the revolutionary cause, giving free rein to their youthful vigour and talent in building a new society.

If they want to contribute to building a new society, they must learn

a great deal. Knowledge is power. They must study and study hard to master modern science and technology.

It is an important task for the young people of the present age to prevent war and preserve peace. Only when lasting peace is established, can the people of each country build a new, happy society, employing their creative talent, and can the young people turn their beautiful ideals into reality. Young people, who are lively and courageous, must fight tenaciously in the vanguard of the anti-imperialist struggle in order to prevent another world war, a thermonuclear war, and defend the peace and security of the world. Peace-loving young people must turn out as one to form a broad anti-imperialist united front and launch a vigorous anti-war, anti-nuclear peace movement on a regional and global scale.

In order to fulfil the noble duty bequeathed to them by the times and the people, the young people must strengthen international unity and cooperation. Unity and cooperation are a source of power and a guarantee of victory in the revolutionary struggle. The young people of all countries, regardless of differences in ideology, ideas, religious belief and social system, should unite closely under the banner of anti-imperialism and peace and further strengthen their bonds of friendship.

**Question:** You are concentrating on public education and the education of the younger generation.

What do you think is of primary importance in public education and the education of the younger generation?

**Answer:** Education is a fundamental matter and is decisive to the success of the revolution and the future of the nation. There can be no hope for the prosperity and development of countries and nations without educational work.

Conscious of the importance of educational work, we have paid particular attention to public education and the education of the younger generation since the days immediately after the country's liberation in 1945. Once the socialist system had been established in

our country, our Party set the education policy of transforming the people in a revolutionary manner, assimilating them into the working class and making them communist. This means that every member of society is trained to be a communist and to be fully equipped with communist ideas, a profound knowledge of science and physical strength. In our country, under the education policy of our Party, public education and the education of the younger generation are being carried out successfully.

In our experience the most important aspect of educational work is the intensification of political and ideological education.

As you know, humans are social beings with ideological consciousness. Their worth and qualities are determined and their activities are controlled by their ideological consciousness. The transformation of people means, in essence, the transformation of their ideology, and a fundamental part of bringing up communists is to arm them with communist ideas. Only when young people and children are imbued with communist ideas, can they acquire the spiritual and moral characteristics and qualities of communists, study well and apply their knowledge properly to the revolution and construction. Those who are not equipped with communist ideas cannot work with devotion for the cause of socialism and communism, however rich their knowledge of science and technology may be.

We have observed the principle of giving priority to political and ideological education in educational work and devoted every possible effort to it. The educational institutes in our country give their students effective education in the revolutionary ideas, policies and traditions of our Party, so that they fully understand our Party's lines, policies and historical roots and learn thoroughly about the fighting spirit, experience, revolutionary methods and popular style of work of their revolutionary forerunners. Good revolutionary and communist education is also conducted to equip the students with the revolutionary consciousness of the working class, a conviction in communism, revolutionary optimism and collectivism, socialist patriotism and communist morality.

As a result of such priority and efforts the younger generation of our country is preparing itself to be able builders of socialism and communism with communist ideas and a rich knowledge of modern science and technology, and the revolutionary characteristics of struggle and a sound way of life are pervading the whole society.

I should like to take this opportunity to extend my cordial greetings and best wishes to the editorial staff and readers of Soviet *Children's Literature*.

You have the honourable yet heavy task to educate and bring up the children of the Soviet Union to be the reliable builders of socialism and communism.

I hope you will fulfil with credit the grave duty entrusted to you by your motherland and people and thereby attain renewed success in the education of children; at the same time I hope you will make great efforts to expand and develop cooperation and exchange between our two countries in the realms of education and culture.

**ON FURTHER DEVELOPING THE CHEMICAL  
INDUSTRY AND ESTABLISHING  
THE REVOLUTIONARY HABIT OF LIVING  
OUR OWN WAY AMONG OFFICIALS**

**Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Senior Officials  
in Charge of the Chemical Industry**

*March 20, 1987*

At this consultative meeting I would like to speak about developing the chemical industry.

This is the era of chemistry and electronics. Only when we develop the chemical industry will we be able to further the development of light industry and agriculture, and radically improve the standard of living of the people. The development of the chemical industry will enable us to obtain by chemical methods those raw materials which are not available in our country or are in short supply.

If we develop the chemical industry we will be able to supply sufficient raw materials needed for light industry.

Now we are failing to operate the centrally-run light-industry factories and the local factories at full capacity due to an insufficient supply of raw materials and other necessities. We have built paper mills in many parts of the country, but we fail to operate them smoothly for lack of caustic soda. Since we fail to make the light-industry factories fully operational, we cannot provide the people with sufficient fabrics and shoes. The smooth operation of the existing light-industry factories will enable us to produce a variety of goods in

larger quantities and sell them to the people. At present the Party feels extremely grieved at the fact that our shops do not have large stocks of various goods so that the people can buy as many goods as they need. It is making every possible effort to solve this problem.

From now on, we should supply raw materials to the local factories, too. In the past the local textile mills wove cloth with wild fibre, but the times have changed.

In the past we had the local factories make use of local raw materials because our chemical industry was then underdeveloped. At that time I ensured that local factories were built in many parts of the country and run by making use of the local raw materials. In doing so, I made sure that the experience gained by Changsong County was spread throughout the whole country. Changsong County was a model for the whole country in setting up local factories and producing mass consumer goods by utilizing local raw materials. At that time the textile mill in that county wove fabric from Oriental bitter-sweet vine. So I took local Party and economic officials with me to Changsong County to inspect it and hold a meeting with them there.

However, the local factories cannot be run by continuously depending on local raw materials alone, because their size has increased. Even if we do run them by making use of local resources, we will not be able to produce mass consumer goods in large quantities in that way.

Examining the data concerning the true state of affairs in the local factories recently, I found that effective measures for the supply of raw materials and other necessities were not included. So I set the task of making recommendations again on the measures that need to be taken. If the local factories are to be operated smoothly, the chemical industry must be developed to produce for them a variety of materials and other supplies, such as caustic soda and carbonate of soda.

If we develop the chemical industry we will be able to raise good crops and further the development of stock and poultry farming as well as fruit growing. Without developing the chemical industry, we will be unable to produce chemical fertilizer, herbicide, insecticide, growth

accelerant and other things which are widely used in agriculture. Without chemical fertilizers and agricultural chemicals we will not be able to raise crops well. That is why I ensured that methanol made from the gas emitted from the Sunchon Vinalon Complex was transferred to the production of fertilizer instead of channelling it into the production of plastic, as I originally intended. At present, a large quantity of nitrogenous fertilizer is being produced by the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex and in the Hamhung area. If the amount that will be produced by the Sunchon Vinalon Complex is added to this, the total of nitrogenous fertilizer will be 2,500,000 tons. •

If 2,500,000 tons of nitrogenous fertilizer is turned out annually in our country there will be more than we will need. However, you need not worry about this. In order to conduct agricultural joint ventures with African countries in future, we will need a large quantity of fertilizer. In the case of organizing joint ventures with foreign countries in farming, it will be profitable to let them use fertilizer from our country instead of buying it from other countries. It would be very good for us to give fertilizer to those countries which conduct joint ventures with us in farming and receive from them cotton, oil and other things which we need.

Since it is very important to develop the chemical industry, the Party has recently ensured that there was a Vice-Premier in charge of the chemical and light industries on the Administration Council, and newly appointed a Vice-Premier in charge of the chemical and light industries and a chairman of the commission of these industries.

Fully aware of the Party's intention, senior officials in charge of the chemical industry should display a high sense of responsibility and creativity in order to quickly develop this industry.

First of all, you must channel your efforts into building sound raw-materials bases for light industry. This is an important task facing the chemical industry. In order to make rapid progress in light industry we must solve two problems—one is to build good raw-materials bases for light industry and the other is to increase the production of plastic. These problems can be solved only when the chemical industry is

developed. If we solve the problem of raw materials by developing the chemical industry we will be able to fully solve the problem of food, clothing and housing. At present the raw-materials bases for light industry are not sound. However, if we make them reliable during the Third Seven-Year Plan we will be able to develop our light industry by leaps and bounds.

In setting up raw-materials bases for light industry great efforts should be directed into building sound bases for the production of chemical fibre. In our country the crop area is limited and cotton does not thrive. Therefore, we can operate the textile mills at full capacity only when we set up sound bases for the production of chemical fibre and turn it out in large quantities.

The construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex should be accelerated so that it is completed as soon as possible. When this complex is built 100,000 tons of vinalon will be turned out annually. If vinalon produced by the February 8 Vinalon Complex, wood fibre produced by the Chongjin and Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Complexes, as well as acrylic and movilon are added to this, a total of 220,000 tons of chemical fibre will be turned out annually. With this amount we will be able to run the existing textile mills at full capacity and solve the problem of cloth.

We can weave a variety of good cloth with vinalon, too. In the past we considered it difficult to weave a variety of cloth with vinalon and dye it. However, now the difficult technical problems in the production and dyeing of vinalon fabric have been solved, and we are able to dye vinalon in various colours and weave various types of cloth with it to make clothes. In future the quality of vinalon fabric must be improved to make various types of clothes with it.

You must make vigorous efforts to increase the production capacity of the chemical fibre mills, including the Chongjin Chemical Fibre Complex. You must not neglect the projects for increasing the capacity of the other chemical fibre mills, being preoccupied only with the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex because you are told to concentrate your efforts on it. The projects for expanding the

production capacity of the chemical fibre mills should be undertaken by the provinces themselves by forming shock brigades. These projects will be finished in a short time even by this method.

The project for increasing the production capacity of the Chongjin Chemical Fibre Complex should be carried out by North Hamgyong Province by forming a shock brigade. North Hamgyong Province will be fully able to select the manpower required for forming a shock brigade.

The Central People's Committee intends to take measures to improve labour administration in future. Checking the true state of labour administration lately, I have found enormous reserves of manpower. If the nonproductive organs are slimmed down and the number of office workers is reduced, there will probably be hundreds of thousands of labour reserves.

Rapid progress should be made in the plastics industry.

Only when the plastics industry is developed will we be able to supply the raw materials and other necessities needed for light industry, and find a solution to the problem of packing materials. As I mentioned at the recent consultative meeting of senior officials of the Administration Council, we are failing to process more seafood for lack of packing materials. We are also failing to process large quantities of seaweed, including oarweed, kelp and laver, because of a shortage of condiments and packing materials. If only this problem is solved, we will be able to process seaweed properly and considerably improve the people's standard of living. After considering how we could provide the people with more processed foods, by improving the processing of marine products, I telephoned Comrade Kim Jong Il, and he told me that Chongryon was planning to send equipment for a seafood-processing factory as a gift on the occasion of the coming April 15th festival. If Chongryon sends it, we should build seafood-processing factories in several places with it as a model by multiplying the equipment, just as we conducted the let-one-machine-tool-make-more movement, and produce processed seafood in large quantities. In order to do so, the problem of packing materials should be solved.

The development of the plastics industry will also enable us to produce a large quantity of various types of household goods, furniture and toys. A wide variety of household goods such as cups and wash-basins can be made from plastic. Nearly all the furnishings in this conference hall are made from plastic. We should produce about 300,000 tons of plastic every year. It would be better if 500,000 tons of it were produced every year. Originally we intended to have some 300,000 tons of plastic produced annually. However, if the production of 500,000 tons is possible, you had better try to do so. The more plastic produced, the better.

The factory for the gasification of pulverized coal should be built without delay for the increase of plastics production.

Efforts should also be directed to the development of the paper industry.

Only when the paper industry is developed can the people be provided with a cultured life. At present our paper industry falls short of the level of the developed countries. The developed countries turn out large quantities of paper to solve various problems, including the packaging of goods.

Factory No. 121 is the most up-to-date paper mill in our country. It produces a large quantity of paper, and supplies the paper needed for publications including newspapers and novels as well as toilet paper for Pyongyang's citizens. However, this factory alone cannot meet the demand for paper.

They say that we have to buy some paper from other countries because paper is in short supply due to our failure to make the paper mills fully operational and produce a large quantity of paper.

We are still importing kraft paper due to our failure to produce it on a regular basis, even though a sound base for the production of kraft paper has been set up. Those at the kraft-paper mills keep on complaining, saying that they fail to run their mills properly for a lack of coal when the raw materials are available or for a shortage of raw materials when they have coal. When I asked the chief secretary of the Ryanggang Provincial Party Committee why they were not running

their kraft-paper mill at full capacity, he said that it was because the equipment was damaged and raw materials were lacking, although coal was available. If the officials in positions of leadership had investigated the true state of affairs at the kraft-paper mill at regular intervals and helped it renovate the worn-out equipment and solve the difficult problems to put production on a steady basis, tens of thousands of tons of kraft paper would have been turned out there annually.

Many modern high-rise flats have been built in Pyongyang and in other parts of the country, but we fail to supply the inhabitants with sufficient toilet paper. We must provide the residents of high-rise apartment blocks with toilet paper instead of ordinary paper. Fully aware of the great importance of paper in carrying out the cultural revolution and in the people's lives, officials must strive hard to increase paper production.

In order to increase paper production, either the Kilju Pulp Mill or the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Complex should be expanded. We should consider which factory it is best to expand.

No problems will come up if the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Complex is expanded. In that case, you must ensure that this complex uses not only reels and cornstalks but also makes use of logs from Jagang Province by transporting them by water, as well as of shrubs.

The kraft-paper mills must make efforts to put production on a steady basis as soon as possible.

The paper mills must unfold a vigorous technical innovation movement to modernize their machinery and equipment.

If we are to solve the paper problem, the paper mills should be supplied with enough raw materials and other necessities, including caustic soda.

We intend to discuss further the matter of developing the paper industry at a consultative meeting in future, and give directions in this regard before issuing a decision of the Central People's Committee.

Salt production should also be increased.

This is essential for solving the problem of caustic soda, which is

needed for the paper industry, and many other economic sectors, as well as the problem of table salt. Because we fail to produce a large quantity of salt, there is a shortage of it every year, and this creates difficulties in different sectors of the national economy, and even causes inconveniences to the people. We have planned to obtain some 500,000 tons of salt in collaboration with a foreign country. Even if we do so, however, we will face many problems including the salt's transportation. Since it is difficult to collaborate with a foreign country in salt production, we should consider how we can find a solution to the problem of salt.

It seems to be advisable to adopt the method of producing salt by concentrating sea water by means of electricity. This matter was already brought up when Comrade Jong Jun Thae was working as Chairman of the State Planning Commission. Having read a foreign book, he suggested that it would be a good idea to introduce that method. So I ensured that a pilot plant was built in Sonbong County, North Hamgyong Province, and that a thermal power station was also constructed to supply electricity. However, afterwards we discontinued that method because it was said to require too much electricity.

It would be a good idea to build on the east coast a factory which produces salt by concentrating sea water by means of electricity. The East Sea is saltier than the West Sea. If a saltern is to be built on the east coast, it should be built in the Hamhung area, instead of the Sonbong area, which is cold. The Hamhung area has many places suitable for a saltern. If the Hamhung area gets a saltern in future, it will be splendid.

A sodium carbonate plant should also be built. If it is built as we already intend, it will turn out some 400,000 tons of sodium carbonate annually. This means obtaining a huge amount of salt at no expense. If we produce this amount of sodium carbonate by processing glauberite we will be able to supply sufficient sodium carbonate to the glass works, food-processing factories and local factories.

You should direct your efforts to developing the small and medium chemical industry.

The small and medium chemical industry literally means industry which turns out various chemical products including dyestuffs in small chemical works. It is only when the small and medium chemical industry is developed that the local factories can be supplied with a variety of raw and other materials, and the consumer goods needed by the people can be produced in large quantities. That is why I have long been emphasizing the need to develop the small and medium chemical industry.

Soon after the liberation an entrepreneur set up several small factories which turned out a large quantity of goods. He died during the Fatherland Liberation War. I cannot remember his name.

The development of the small and medium chemical industry does not need a large sum of money. The small and medium chemical factories can be run by the provinces themselves if the state supplies them with the main materials only. There is no problem with technicians needed for running these factories. There are many women who are idling away their time at home after graduating from universities of technology such as the Hamhung University of Chemical Engineering and the Kim Chaek University of Technology. So, if you make effective use of them, you will be able to find a solution to the problem of the technicians needed for running them without having to receive fresh university graduates.

The labour needed for running the small and medium chemical factories can also be solved if housewives are employed.

The small and medium chemical factories should turn out dyestuffs and various other chemical products in large quantities. The senior officials in charge of the chemical industry should adopt correct measures to develop the small and medium chemical industry and dynamically put them into effect.

You should study how to solve the problem of oil needed for paint production.

The problem of oil needed for paint production cannot be solved, because our country finds it difficult to obtain even edible oil by growing beans and peanuts. Therefore, if we are to solve the problem

of oil needed for paint production, we must earn foreign currency and buy it from abroad. The factories and enterprises should earn the foreign currency needed for buying oil for paint production by turning out good-quality products in large quantities and selling them.

You must build a lysine factory.

Lysine is very beneficial for the growth and development of children. The children of Pyongyang are said to be taller than those in the provinces because they eat bread containing lysine. Children grow tall quickly when they take bread that contains lysine and high-protein foodstuffs. They grow considerably tall if they are fed only with high-protein foodstuffs. The children of Sinpho are taller than those in other localities because they eat a large amount of fish and seaweed. Children can grow healthy only when they take fish and seaweed that contain much protein and calcium. The children in one country are said to be fed with kelp as well as lysine. We should not throw away the bones of pork and beef, but powder them, mix them in a variety of foodstuffs and feed them to children. Children quickly grow tall and become strong when they have foodstuffs which contain much protein and calcium.

It is also beneficial to feed pigs on lysine. If they are fed on lysine, they gain weight quickly.

You should build lysine factories in all the provinces which have cornstarch factories. It is not difficult to build a lysine factory. Since the fermentation process is the main thing in a lysine factory, you will be fully able to build one if only you have tanks and pipes. All that you need to do is to make tanks, lay pipes and build pumping stations.

You must give effective guidance to the factories and enterprises in the field of the chemical industry.

The senior officials in charge of the chemical industry are failing to give correct guidance to their subordinate factories and enterprises. Due to the improper guidance given to the Sungni Chemical Complex, this factory fails to increase its output although it is able to do so. I have been told that the Sungni Chemical Complex can turn out much more oil if only it increases the oil extraction rate by processing crude oil

well. This complex cannot increase its oil extraction rate with the existing method of processing crude oil. It should improve the method of processing crude oil to increase the oil extraction rate. It is said that if the Sungni Chemical Complex increases its oil extraction rate by processing crude oil well it will be able to turn out 200,000 or 300,000 tons more of gasoline and diesel oil. This is quite a large amount.

The problem of oil black and plasticizer can also be solved if guidance given to the oil refineries is improved. The senior officials in charge of the chemical industry should think hard about how to increase the oil extraction rate in the processing of crude oil, and turn out a variety of oil products in large quantities. They should put their shoulders to the wheel to this end, and allow full scope for the creative wisdom of the officials, technicians and workers in the field. Success in oil refining can also be achieved only when the senior officials keep it under their control and persistently promote it, setting personal examples.

It is a grave mistake of our officials to fail to push forward their work perseveringly. True, Koreans are zealous people. At a time when everything was lying in ruins due to the three-year-long war, we established the socialist industrial state with an independent national economy we see today, and we are now leading as prosperous lives as the peoples of other countries. This is attributable to our people's strenuous efforts. The Koreans are strenuous and highly enthusiastic in doing anything. However, these qualities of theirs do not last long. As a result, they seldom persevere in any work, and their enthusiasm is just like a flash in the pan. We have been conducting various kinds of mass movements in order to speed up production and construction, but they die down before long even though the people's enthusiasm is ebullient at the beginning.

In the past my father told me many stories that might be instructive in my revolutionary struggle. He said that a terrible mistake for the Koreans was to work like a flash in the pan, and that this practice should be eliminated without fail. But for this instruction I had received from my father, I could not have endured the severe trials of the 15-year-long

arduous anti-Japanese armed struggle in the mountains. The officials must completely eliminate the flash-in-the-pan work attitude and push ahead with all work persistently.

You must energetically conduct scientific research for the development of the chemical industry.

If you achieve good results in your scientific research you will be able to obtain those raw materials and other necessities that are not available or are lacking in our country, and make more effective use of the natural resources of the country. It would be a remarkable success if only the scientific research institutes promptly introduce new techniques invented in foreign countries to suit the specific situation of our country.

At present the Hamhung Branch Institute under the Academy of Sciences is conducting scientific research less actively than before. The research institutes in the field of the chemical industry have recently done nothing special for the development of this industry.

These research institutes must be composed of young people, so that they will conduct their work vigorously. Scientific research can be conducted in high spirits when young people full of vigour throw themselves into this work. Old people cannot forcefully push ahead with it.

A large number of scientists, technicians and other intellectuals should be made to take part in scientific research. There are now many intellectuals engaged in the chemical industry. If you set them study assignments and give them efficient assistance so that they can throw themselves into their work, you will be able to develop our chemical industry more rapidly. Actively galvanizing intellectuals into action is extremely important in placing not only the chemical industry but all other sectors of the national economy on a more up-to-date scientific and technical basis, and in speeding up production and construction. However, scientific research is not being conducted briskly by correctly stimulating intellectuals into action, even though we have a large force of more than 1,200,000 intellectuals at present. The Academy of Sciences should take measures so that not only the

scientists in the specialized scientific research institutes but all the intellectuals can play a major role in scientific research.

The chemical and light industries should conduct extensive trade with foreign countries in garment processing.

This morning I read the written opinions submitted by the Chairman of the External Economic Affairs Commission on extensively conducting trade in garment processing. According to him, one European country proposes extensive trade with our country in this field. The amount of trade with that country in garment processing could reach a considerable level in 1990. The chemical and light industries should pay great attention to trade in garment processing and pursue it.

In order to conduct trade in garment processing on a wide scale, we must organize many housewives' workteams in coal and ore miners' villages, and in cities. It will be quite possible to make clothes if buildings for housewives' workteams are erected in coal and ore miners' villages through the mobilization of the miners, and proper heating is provided.

Some of the sewing machines needed in making clothes should be imported from a foreign country, as it has promised to provide them, and others must be produced at home.

The officials should strongly oppose revisionism and reformism, and establish the revolutionary habit of living our own way.

Today I emphasize once again the need to stoutly oppose revisionism and reformism. This is because I want to make you fully aware that you cadres, the backbone of our Party, will cause irretrievably serious consequences to the revolution and construction if you do not accept the Party's line and policies as your faith and take to revisionism and reformism, in the hope of finding something to learn from the policies pursued by foreign countries.

Recently some of the socialist countries are swinging to the right or to the left in the revolution and construction, without having any definite lines or policies. They fail to adhere to the revolutionary principles of Marxism-Leninism and take to revisionism and reformism, because of temporary difficulties in the course of building

socialism. With regard to some socialist countries which are following the road to revisionism and reformism, a number of countries are now saying that the introduction of the system of private ownership means taking the road to capitalism and that mercenary socialism is not socialism. In my policy speech at the First Session of the Eighth Supreme People's Assembly held last year, I put forward the policy of achieving the complete victory of our own style of socialism, striking a blow at the revisionists and reformists.

An official of a certain foreign country has recently expressed his view on the problem of developing agriculture. The analysis of his view shows that it is identical with the policy which I already put forward during the period of establishing agricultural cooperatives in our country. When we were setting up agricultural cooperatives after the war, we fixed the size of the cooperatives rationally on the basis of scientifically analysing the specific situations of the rural communities and the levels of the farmers' ideological consciousness. We set a lower form of management and a higher form, and ensured that the farmers chose one of them in accordance with their will and desire. In putting agriculture on a cooperative basis, our Party ensured that the will of the farmers was not ignored nor were coercive methods employed. We made sure that the principle of voluntary involvement was strictly observed. Thanks to the correct policy of our Party on agricultural cooperation, the agricultural cooperatives, which were once very backward materially and technically, have developed into large, up-to-date cooperative farms in which the level of irrigation, electrification, mechanization and the application of chemicals is high.

As I always say, we should form large farms, and bring about irrigation, electrification, the application of chemicals and comprehensive mechanization in order to increase grain production. Agriculture is developed in a certain capitalist country. This is because it has formed large farms and realized irrigation, mechanization and the application of chemicals. It is said that one agricultural worker handles 30 hectares of crop area in the large farms of that country.

If we are to develop agriculture, we should also form large farms.

However, we should form large farms of a socialist style instead of farms of a capitalist style like those in that country. In other words, we should form large farms of the people. It was as long ago as the beginning of the 1960s that I decided to form large farms of the people. We will never be able to solve the problem of agriculture if we encourage private farming instead of forming large farms of a socialist style.

At present some countries are following an open-door policy, claiming that they must open the country in order to develop the economy. As a matter of fact, opening the country cannot be regarded as wrong. We should also open the door rather than close it in having economic relations with foreign countries. We do not say that we have opened our country, but we are now engaging in a great deal of economic and technical exchanges with capitalist countries. This means opening the country. We should not draw in foreign capital at random in establishing economic relations with capitalist countries. Our economic development may be a little slow if we do not accept foreign capital. However, since we develop the economy with our own efforts, we will be able to lay solid foundations for the independent national economy, and develop the economy safely, unaffected by any worldwide economic upheavals.

One should develop one's economy and science step by step to suit the specific situation in one's own country. One should not try to take them to a high stage overnight without regard to one's specific conditions. Man must go up a 50-storey skyscraper step by step and in the order of steps. If one tries to jump up several stairs at a breath, one might get dizzy and fall down. Likewise, one should gradually develop one's economy and science in accordance with the specific situation in one's own country.

We must always live our own way, without having any illusion about the revisionist and reformist policies which are pursued in some countries. In particular, the officials in responsible positions, the backbone of our Party, must not vacillate in the least. There will be no failure if we live in our own style.

If the officials are to completely get rid of revisionism and reformism, and live in our own style, they must be firmly armed with the Juche idea of our Party. The Juche idea is based on the philosophical principle that man is the master of everything and decides everything. The Juche idea is the idea that the masters of the revolution and construction are the masses of the people, and that they are also the motive force of the revolution and construction. I formulated the philosophical principle that man is the master of everything and decides everything in the first period after I embarked on the road of the revolutionary struggle. When I put forward this philosophical principle some of our comrades shook their heads dubiously, asserting that it did not coincide with the Marxist-Leninist philosophy. Today the Juche idea is arousing a positive response from people all over the world for its validity and truth, and people in many countries are studying the Juche idea with great enthusiasm. Our officials must feel proud and self-confident about the fact that our Party is dynamically promoting the revolution and construction guided by the Juche idea, which is recognized by the world, and must have an unshakable belief in no other idea than the Juche idea.

In order to get rid of revisionism and reformism, we must combat sycophancy towards major powers.

Flunkeyism is an idea of servile submission of serving and worshipping big powers and national nihilism of looking down upon one's own country and people, and despising them. If one becomes obsessed with flunkeyism, one will look up to others and follow them, taking to revisionism, dogmatism and reformism when they do so. The officials should, therefore, strictly guard against being infected with sycophancy.

In order to do away with revisionism and reformism, you should also make our Party's lines and policies your unshakable faith. Otherwise, you will vacillate and be imbued with revisionism and reformism.

If you take to revisionism and reformism, doubting the Party's lines and policies and vacillating, the blowflies will hang onto you. Once an

official told me that he thought that he must smell bad, judging from the fact that evil elements kept visiting him. He added that no wicked element as bad as a blowfly would approach him if his head were clear. A blowfly looks for those things which are unclean and have gone bad and rotten and smell bad.

I used to take a certain official with me whenever I gave field guidance to rural areas and gave him detailed explanations about the agricultural policy of our Party. So he must have been fully aware of my intention. However, he is said to have expressed sympathy with what was contrary to our Party's agricultural policy. His action resulted from the lack of faith in the Party's lines and policies. It was an expression of his ideological vacillation that he took the road to revisionism and reformism, failing to overcome temporary difficulties. As a matter of fact, we may face temporary difficulties and experience twists and turns in the course of building a socialist and communist society. A communist society would have already been built if it were so easy to build it. However, we must not take the road to revisionism and reformism just because it is difficult to build a communist society.

Since we are resolved to achieve the complete victory of socialism and build a communist society, we must accomplish it. The only way of building socialism and communism is to follow the lines and policies put forward by our Party. There is no other way. Our officials should never harbour any illusion about the revisionist and reformist policies pursued by other countries, but should make our Party's lines and policies their sole conviction, and implement them to the letter.

Our people neither doubt our Party's lines and policies nor hesitate. They are firmly united around the Party and the leader politically and ideologically. No one can break the political and ideological unity of our Party and our people.

All our officials must achieve single-hearted unity, and make strong endeavours to build our country into a state with a powerful economy and a socialist country of bliss.

The recent appointment by the Party of the Vice-Premier in charge of the chemical and light industries and the chairman of the

commission of these industries is aimed at energetically promoting current production and construction simultaneously in these sectors. It is difficult for one person to take charge of the chemical and light industries because the range of their work is extensive. The newly appointed Vice-Premier in charge of the chemical and light industries and the chairman of the commission in charge of these industries should divide their responsibilities as soon as possible, and actively pursue current production and construction. With a high sense of responsibility that you are in charge of the chemical and light industries before the Party and people, you should put your shoulders to the wheel and make every possible effort to further improve the standard of living of the people. We will have nothing to envy if we improve the standard of living of the people. You are not very old yet, so you are in the prime of your activities. There will be, therefore, nothing impossible if you throw yourselves into your work heart and soul. You must prove yourselves worthy of the deep trust of the Party by working harder in future.

# **ON SOME PROBLEMS ARISING IN THE PREPARATIONS FOR FARMING AND IN THE ECONOMIC WORK FOR THIS YEAR**

**Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting  
of the Senior Officials of the Administration Council**

*March 30, 1987*

At this consultative meeting I shall speak first about making active preparations for farming.

The preparations now in progress for farming are better than last year, but they still fall short of the standards required by the Party. We should by all means make full preparations for farming and raise good crops this year.

To this end, we should expedite the preparations to finish them as soon as possible.

What is most important here is to make good preparations for supplying enough water to both the paddy and non-paddy fields.

According to information, the long spell of dry weather caused by ocean currents is seriously affecting agriculture in the Southeast Asian countries. The Oceanian countries are also complaining that their wheat harvests have failed owing to the lingering dry weather.

In China a long dry spell has recently lowered the level of the Chang River, one of the longest rivers in the world, hampering navigation. According to a report, the drought sweeping Southeast Asia is affecting not only the areas along the Chang River, but also

North China and its aftereffects are being felt even in the areas along the Heilong River.

As several countries are now experiencing great difficulties in their farming owing to drought, we should take thorough measures in advance to prevent damage from drought. Although the drought cutting a swath through Southeast Asia has not yet affected our country, there is no knowing when it will do so. Last year the damage wrought by drought was not great in our country, but owing to dry weather and insufficient water supply for both paddy and non-paddy fields, we found difficulty in grain production. As South Hwanghae Province and some other provinces did not irrigate maize fields properly, the leaves of maize became wilted and, to make matters worse, there was a typhoon, resulting in a poor harvest.

During the last drought season poor irrigation after the application of fertilizer to the maize fields resulted in poor intake of fertilizer by maize. Maize takes in fertilizer as it should only when sufficient water is supplied after the application of fertilizer.

At the beginning of this year it snowed and rained heavily in our country, but it could be dry in summer. Therefore, you should store plenty of water in reservoirs, and control water properly from now on.

If you use water recklessly without economizing on it on the ground that the reservoirs are filled with water, you may run short of it in the dry season. So, you should eschew the wasteful use of water at the same time as striving to store lots of water in the reservoirs.

You should get a comprehensive knowledge of the amount of water stored in the reservoirs and store more water in the reservoirs which could be short of water in the dry season.

South Hwanghae Province should finish the irrigation project now in progress at an earlier date.

When the project is completed, the water problem in the province can be solved perfectly. I saw a video recording of the project, and it is being pushed ahead well.

South Hwanghae Province took charge of the great project and has so far performed a great deal of work.

Officials in the province say that they will finish it by April 15; only 15 days are left until then. If the project is not completed by April 15, it will cause difficulties in this year's farming. The project should be completed by that date without fail, even if other regions have to lend support.

To this end, all equipment and materials necessary for the project should be provided, or else the project cannot be finished by April 15. A report says that South Hwanghae Province has not been supplied as planned with water pumps, electric motors, transformers, switchboards, electric wire, cement, timber and steel for the project. Even by taking emergency measures, we should produce and supply the equipment and materials for the project as planned without fail. As for the equipment and materials difficult to produce at the moment, they should be either transferred from elsewhere where they are available, or supplied from the state reserve warehouses.

The Taean Heavy Machine Complex should repair its 63,000kw transformer as soon as possible and send it to the substation in Jaha-ri, Sinwon County. Only then will it be able to pump water from next month by operating water pumps.

Cement should also be provided promptly for the project. Then the project of covering the aqueduct tunnels with cement can be finished to supply water from the latter part of April.

The Premier will be busy, but he must find time to go to the province, tour the site of the irrigation project and organize the work of solving knotty problems there.

You should also take measures to pump up more water at the Taedong Pumping Station No. 1.

As the Taedong River is filled with water with the construction of the West Sea Barrage, the pumping station should pump up more water to irrigate sufficiently both the paddy and non-paddy fields in Taedong, Jungsan and Onchon Counties.

You should also take measures to pump more water from the Taedong River into the Unhung Reservoir in South Phyongan Province. With the building of the Sunchon Barrage, the Taedong

River holds great quantities of water; the water should be pumped to fill the Unhung Reservoir. It is said that the reservoir runs short of water in the dry season.

The Thaechon Power Station No. 2 should be built quickly to draw more water.

The current construction project of the power station is preventing water from running from the Maphyong Dam, causing a water shortage in the Pakchon and Unjon plains, which used to be supplied with water from the Taeryong River.

Only when water is drawn off by operating generators after early construction of the power station can electricity be generated and water supplied to the Pakchon and Unjon plains for farming. At least 23 cubic metres of water should be drawn from the dam per second for the irrigation of the plains.

Drawing water from the dam as early as possible is also essential for the safety of the dam. If water is only stored without being drawn off as today, the dam will be placed in jeopardy in the case of sudden heavy rain and when water spills over the dam.

In order to draw water from the Maphyong Dam, it is necessary to install generators at an earlier date at the Thaechon Power Station No. 2, at the same time as expediting the construction of the dam.

This year alone I have stressed several times the need to expedite the construction of the power station, but it has not yet been finished. Cadres have been to the construction site on several occasions, but it is still under construction as they have not supplied necessary equipment and materials as they should, on the grounds that this or that is more pressing. If they had supplied a sufficient amount of equipment and materials with determination they would have finished the construction long ago.

If there is a shortage of skilled labour in assembling the generator at the power station, the ranks of technicians and skilled workers should be reinforced from the Taeon Heavy Machine Complex to complete the assembling quickly. The present assembling speed of the generator is too slow. The No. 2 generator should be assembled by April 15, and

operated to draw water from the Maphyong Dam. The Premier should refrain from calling officials to meetings; he should take practical steps to hasten the construction of the power station.

Measures should be taken to draw water from the reservoir of the Thaephyongman Power Station and irrigate the Yomju and Ryongchon plains.

At the same time, such facilities as pumping facilities, water-sprinkling irrigation facilities, water-lifting pipes, wells and ponds should be put in a good state of repair and maintenance. Only then can we supply water in good time to both paddy and non-paddy fields when we have a dry spell of weather.

Officials of the rural economy have not reported on the state of repair of such facilities. Although they have been urged to put the facilities in a good state of repair and maintenance quickly, they have not done so promptly. In former days, when I gave direct guidance to farming, the irrigation facilities such as pumping and water-sprinkling facilities were all repaired by April in the rural areas.

Pumps, hoses and other things necessary for the repair of the facilities should be supplied in time. Or else, excellent canals and many wells and ponds would be of no use.

You should provide all the equipment and materials for repairing irrigation facilities so that they can finish their repairs in the two months of April and May. As there is expected to be no rain in May and June, the facilities should be repaired before then.

Fertilizers should be produced as planned without fail, and sent to the rural areas.

This will ensure successful farming this year. Crops grow only when fertilizer is applied to the fields. For this reason, I long ago put forward the slogan, "Fertilizer means rice!"

Nitrogenous fertilizer should be produced as planned without fail, and sent to the rural areas.

In order to fulfil the production plan for nitrogenous fertilizer, you should continue to concentrate your efforts on the major fertilizer factories and, at the same time, organize work meticulously to ensure

that the factories and enterprises which produce fertilizers in small quantities, like the Chongsu Chemical Factory, the February 8 Vinalon Complex and the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, achieve their production quotas unconditionally.

Efforts should also be directed to the production of phosphatic fertilizer.

As it has been under cultivation for a long time, the fertility of the crop land in our country has diminished; we cannot increase the crop yield by administering only nitrogenous fertilizer. To increase the crop yield, phosphatic and potassic fertilizers should be spread, along with nitrogenous fertilizer in a balanced manner.

A great amount of concentrated iron-sulphide ore is produced by the Mandok Mine, but it is not transported in time by rail, hindering the production of sulphuric acid and, further, the production of phosphatic fertilizer. Measures should be taken promptly to transport the concentrated ore. For the timely transport of the concentrated ore and the production of phosphatic fertilizer, I ensured that trains were arranged for its exclusive transport. But they were used for transporting export goods to ease the strain on the transport in that sector, hindering the planned production of phosphatic fertilizer. This was a serious mistake and shows that the Administration Council and the Ministry of Railways lack discipline and order. When phosphatic fertilizer is not produced sufficiently owing to inefficient railway transport, the Administration Council and the Ministry of Railways should have organized work to solve the problem in good time; but they only complained about the situation.

You should quickly retrieve the waggons originally assigned for the exclusive transport of the materials needed for the production of fertilizer, and transport the concentrated iron-sulphide ore from the Mandok Mine and the coal from the Ungok Coal Mine in good time for the smooth production of fertilizer. It would be advisable to finish quickly the repair of those waggons now under way to make as many of them available as possible.

Silicon, magnesium and micronutrient fertilizers should also be

produced unconditionally as planned.

The Administration Council should take charge of the planned production of fertilizers, and organize the work properly. It should receive a report every day on fertilizer production and solve knotty problems in time. When the Premier and the Vice-Premiers assign tasks to the councillors and secretaries to get acquainted with the detailed situation of production in fertilizer factories, they can take necessary measures in time.

The production of herbicides and insecticides should be expedited. I will dwell no further on their production, as I have already mentioned it.

Plastic sheeting should be produced and sent to the rural communities quickly.

Farm machinery, including tractors, should be repaired and put in good order, and small farming tools should be kept ready for use.

Spring is a little late this year. Accordingly, more humus cakes for maize seedlings should be made where they are needed, and cold-bed rice seedlings allowed to grow stronger.

It is wrong to think that, since spring has arrived later this year than last year, autumn will be just as late. There is no reason to think so. Even though spring has come late, autumn might arrive at the usual time or earlier.

The Administration Council and the Agricultural Commission should organize work to grow strong humus-cake maize seedlings and cold-bed rice seedlings on cooperative farms and give concrete guidance.

Factory and office workers living in cities, workers' districts and rural communities should give active support to the rural areas.

A large number of both blue and white-collar workers now live in the countryside as well as in cities and workers' districts. When they render active support to the rural communities, it will be of great help for increasing grain production.

They and their dependants should gather a large amount of night soil to send it to farms. If an active campaign for obtaining night soil is conducted among them, a large amount of it can be gathered for farms.

Officials are now complaining about the insufficient supply of chemical fertilizers, but they do not think of launching a campaign for gathering night soil by enlisting the blue and white-collar workers and their dependants living in cities, workers' districts and the countryside. Their households are not allotted quotas for obtaining night soil. When a task is given to gather night soil, only farmers make some effort. Such being the situation, factory and office-worker households in cities, workers' districts and the countryside do not gather enough night soil worth mentioning.

In former days, they used to gather a large amount of night soil and send it to farms.

There is nothing difficult about obtaining night soil. If the men dig pits on holidays and place night-soil buckets there, their wives can gather as much night soil as possible.

They should be given clear-cut quotas for gathering it to support farms. If they are only urged to gather night soil without definite quotas, it cannot be obtained in large quantities. I once gave an assignment to Tokchon to obtain night soil during my field guidance to the city. At that time I estimated the amount of night soil coming daily from the city on the basis of its population, its total amount, and the amount of manure when it is mixed with earth at the ratio of 1 to 4. Then I gave quotas for gathering night soil. After that I inspected the city by car to see how night soil was obtained. I found that every household gathered it and piled it up. At that time I ensured that the Sungni General Motor Works manufactured lorries to carry the night soil to both paddy and non-paddy fields. That year Tokchon gathered a rich harvest with only a small amount of chemical fertilizer supplied by the state, as the inhabitants of the city sent a large amount of night soil to the rural communities. As it is populated by a great number of coal miners, the city can gather quantities of night soil and send it to the countryside if it organizes the work efficiently. South Phyongan Province should continue to conduct a vigorous campaign to collect night soil and send it to the countryside, as it did in the past.

Workers' districts should be allotted concrete quotas of night soil to

be gathered—the district where workers of the Chollima Steel Complex live should gather such-and-such an amount of night soil and send it to such-and-such a cooperative farm, and the district where workers of the Taean Heavy Machine Complex live should obtain such-and-such an amount of night soil and send it to such-and-such a cooperative farm.

Pyongyang, Haeju, Sariwon, Songnim and other cities should give their populations quotas of night soil to be gathered.

As it is not cold at the moment, it is not difficult to gather night soil. You should assign definite quotas and unfold a vigorous campaign to collect night soil for four months—from April to July.

You should also take measures to produce quantities of *phungnyon* (bumper crop–Tr.) fertilizer and send it to the countryside.

Production of *phungnyon* fertilizer is profitable in many ways. It is advantageous for keeping urban environments decent, and for preventing pollution. It also enables us to send to the countryside fertilizer which contains several microelements including manganese and copper. As it contains many microelements, the countries which use a lot of chemical fertilizers also produce this fertilizer. Now almost all countries use this fertilizer.

A great deal of fuss was made once in our country about producing it, but it has now been subsided. When it was suggested that a good fertilizer which contains several microelements could be made from city refuse, I named it *phungnyon* fertilizer. But its insufficient production rendered it impossible to prove its effectiveness.

Mass-production of *phungnyon* fertilizer is advantageous in various ways, so its production should be pushed ahead. The bases for producing *phungnyon* fertilizer should be built in Pyongyang and in such provincial towns as Sariwon, and, since it is difficult to mass-produce the fertilizer this year, you should produce it in large quantities from next year, and send it to the rural communities.

Measures should be taken to ensure silicate bricks are not broken in the course of transport.

When I told Comrade Kim Jong Il some days ago that I would like

to look around the dwelling houses built with silicate bricks, he said that those houses were good to look at, but the flaw in the bricks was that lots of them broke while being transported, due to rough handling. The bricks are prone to break when they are not transported in containers. In the early period of the postwar reconstruction, a lot of bricks were broken for they were transported without care. In those days I provided guidance to the construction on many occasions on the spot. One day I went to a construction site in Pyongyang and found that over half of the bricks brought for building houses had been broken. At that time Pyongyang used bricks baked by the Kangnam Ceramics Factory. They were transported by boat to a site under the Taedong Bridge and then on lorries to the construction sites. Next morning I went to the place where the bricks were unloaded. It seemed that about 20 per cent of them got broken while being unloaded because they were thrown carelessly from the boat. Not many of them remained intact as they were loaded onto and unloaded off the boat, loaded onto lorries and unloaded at construction sites, being handled carelessly all the time.

I felt so sorry that valuable bricks were damaged in transport that I thought over the problem and saw to it that they were transported in wooden boxes. It was impossible for us to make the boxes with iron bars at that time even if we had wanted to, because we were not producing much of that material. This forced us to make boxes with wood. To make matters worse, we lacked even wood materials, rendering it impossible to fix the sides of the boxes with planks. Also, the rings by which they were held were made of rope instead of steel wire. Cranes were scarce at that time, so we used derricks made of wood. The derricks were installed in brick factories, at wharfs and construction sites, and they loaded and unloaded the boxes of bricks. Thereafter, few bricks were broken while being transported. We handled bricks with care using wooden boxes and derricks even in the period of the postwar reconstruction, when everything was in short supply, so it does not make sense that silicate bricks are damaged through improper handling now, when a lot of steel is produced and

when we can make everything once we are determined. Now many cadres lack the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, and the attitude befitting masters toward the economic life of the country, probably because they studied and lived free from care in foreign countries in the period of the postwar reconstruction without undergoing hardships. Apparently some of them are not properly aware that derricks were used during the postwar reconstruction. This being the situation, they neither take measures to safeguard bricks nor feel heartbroken when valuable silicate bricks are damaged in the course of transport.

In order to prevent silicate bricks from being damaged while being transported, you should make containers and transport the bricks in them. You can make the containers with iron plates, or wooden boards when such plates are not available. In case you make the containers with wood, you should fix their rings properly so as to load and unload the containers by crane. You should not waste time on the pretext of drawing a design or doing this or that, you should produce the containers quickly. Only then can the silicate bricks be transported in containers to the construction sites of Kwangbok Street and other construction sites.

You should make up trains to serve exclusively for the timely transport of the bricks. There is no need to produce waggons exclusively for the purpose, as the bricks in containers can be transported in open waggons. If you are to produce them, you need not take the trouble of making them too fancy in appearance. As railway tracks have been laid to all silicate-brick factories, the bricks can be transported as soon as such trains are organized.

Efforts should be directed continuously to the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex.

Although there are many officials at the construction site of the complex, they have not pushed ahead with the construction much because they have indulged in holding meetings.

So far, our officials have not made exact calculations for the construction of the complex, but the set of measures drawn up this time

is very clear. So I affixed my signature to the document.

Now that a clear-cut set of measures for hastening the construction of the complex has been drawn up, we should concentrate our efforts on finishing the first-stage project this year.

If you need more foreign currency for the construction, you will be provided with it. Even though there is a shortage of foreign currency, we are going to provide unconditionally foreign currency necessary for the construction of the complex. More foreign currency will be provided soon. Then you should import equipment and materials as quickly as possible. I was told that a contract has been signed with another country to import drawn pipes with the foreign currency which has already been earmarked, but it seems that none have been imported so far.

Among the equipment to be installed in the Sunchon Vinalon Complex, you should produce quickly the equipment which is planned to be made in our country. There is no need to hasten the construction of the buildings of the complex alone. Even if the buildings are constructed early, the complex cannot start operation if the ordered equipment is not produced and supplied in time. The factories and enterprises which have been assigned to produce ordered equipment for the complex should make it as soon as possible and send it to the complex.

If possible, we should make automatic speed reducers and spinning nozzles for the Sunchon Vinalon Complex on our own.

Shortages of labour in the construction of the complex should be made up with the soldiers mobilized for the construction of the Sunchon Sodium Carbonate Factory. Now soldiers of the People's Army are mobilized in the construction of the factory. But this can be delayed until the development of a glauberite mine. As the mine will have been fully developed by the first half of next year, there is no need to build the sodium carbonate factory right now. Therefore, you should start the construction of the factory from the second half of next year, and the soldiers now there should be sent to help construct the Sunchon Vinalon Complex.

The construction of a urea fertilizer factory is not included in the set

of measures for the construction of the complex, and it is envisaged that it will be built in the second stage. Its construction should be finished within one year—next year.

We should build a factory on the east coast to produce salt from concentrated seawater.

Then, we can make up for the shortage of salt. The shortage of salt is now hindering the production of sodium carbonate and caustic soda. If we build a salt factory on the east coast and produce about 700,000 tons of salt a year there, we shall go some way toward easing the shortage of salt.

Solving the problem of salt is of great importance, as it is related to the problem of food. At present, we do not salt as many pollacks and sardines as we need, for lack of salt. If we produce salt in quantities large enough to salt all the pollacks and sardines caught by the fishing industry, we will be able to solve the problem of subsidiary foodstuffs to a considerable extent.

We must build a salt factory.

Building a salt factory will not put a heavy burden on the economy. What should be done for the building is to make a 210-ton boiler and a generator. When it is provided with the boiler, the factory can operate the generator with the boiler to generate electricity and steam. We have a design for the boiler, and so its production will not pose any problem.

The salt factory should be built on the seashore between Ragwon and Hongwon. It is better to build it there than in the Kumya or Hamhung areas. If it is built in the Kumya area, it will be advantageous for supplying coal as it will be situated near coal mines, but it is not advisable as the Kumya River flows into the sea and the specific gravity of the seawater is low. The specific gravity of the seawater off the Hamhung area is also low, as the Songchon River debouches into the sea there, so that area is not suitable, either. Many chemical factories are situated in the Hamhung area, so the water of the sea off the area may not be clean. The Namdae Stream flows into the sea near Pukchong, and the specific gravity of the seawater off the town would be low.

It is best to build the factory on the coast between Ragwon and

Hongwon. Since there is no large river flowing into the sea off the area between Ragwon and Hongwon, the specific gravity of the seawater would be more than three per cent.

The construction of the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex should be postponed until a later date.

Supplies of steel and cement are strained, for capital building is conducted on a large scale. Even if the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex were built right now, it would be difficult to produce the ordered equipment for it. But, although the construction of the complex is put off, the potassic feldspar mine and limestone mine should continue to be developed. South Hwanghae Province should develop the potassic feldspar mine and North Hwanghae Province should develop the limestone mine and build roads which do not require much cement and steel by enlisting soldiers of the People's Army.

We should build the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex on a full scale after finishing the first-stage construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex.

Later, I am going to see the lorries which have been newly made by the Sungni General Motor Works.

It is laudable that the plant has recently developed a 360-hp engine for *Konsol* lorries. I have read the data of the newly made engine; it was very interesting. If you attach a supercharger to the engine you will be able to produce *Kumsusan* lorries.

I am thinking of making trains for transport in the compounds of factories and enterprises using the engine, and of installing the engine in lorries which are made in the other sectors.

But, even though you have developed the 360-hp engine, if you have made a contract with another country to produce its blueprint you must make sure that you do so.

# **ON PROPERLY EXCAVATING AND RECONSTRUCTING HISTORICAL REMAINS AND RELICS**

**Talk to Senior Officials of the Administration  
Council and Historians**

*June 7, 1987*

Today I would like to talk about actively excavating and properly reconstructing historical remains and relics.

As I emphasized yesterday while examining the sand table for the construction of Kaesong, even when we build a city or a pleasure-ground, we must pay deep attention to properly preserving historical remains and relics there.

Historical remains and relics are national treasures; they are the heritage which must be handed down through the generations. A nation's history of independence and creation is handed down through its remains and relics.

Excavating and properly restoring historical remains and relics is of importance in educating our people with patriotism and in carrying forward the tradition of national culture. Only when we actively excavate and properly reconstruct historical remains and relics can our people and our posterity know the history and culture of their nation, have national pride and self-confidence, and add lustre to the honour of the motherland and the dignity of the nation.

Unearthing and reconstructing historical remains and relics is also necessary for correctly clarifying the process of the development of our

country's history. There were books on the history of our country in the period of the three kingdoms—Koguryo, Silla and Paekje—as well as in the preceding period. But most of these books were lost. Those which remain up to date are chiefly on the history of the period of Koryo and of the following period. Such being the case, the process of the development of the history of Koguryo, not to mention that of Ancient Korea, the first slave-owning state of our country, has not been systematized on a scientific basis. Unearthing and reconstructing historical remains and relics properly will be a great help in systematically clarifying the process of the development of our country's history.

Our nation is a resourceful nation which has a long history and a brilliant cultural tradition. Our nation, living on this land from the dawning of human culture, created its own native culture and contributed to the development of mankind's science and culture.

I have read many books on the history of our country and of other countries, and I think there are not many people in the world who are so talented and resourceful as our people.

Our country has produced iron since ancient times, and from it has made tools and made extensive use of them. Our predecessors also started to use metal type in ancient times.

As early as the 7th century, our predecessors built Chomsongdae, an observatory which is renowned the world over. They made observations, and also made and used a calendar related to farming. According to records, as early as the period of Ancient Korea, our country conducted the study of astronomical phenomena and used the information obtained therefrom for farming.

Our country developed architecture and sculpture in ancient times. The Ryongwang Pavilion in Pyongyang and the Inphung Pavilion in Kanggye, the Pohyon Temple and the Pulyong Hermitage on Mt. Myohyang, the Songgyungwan (Confucian college) in Kaesong, the Tabo Pagoda and the Sokka Pagoda in the Pulguk Temple and sculptures at the Sokkulam, a cave temple—all of these vividly show the extraordinary architectural, sculptural and artistic skills of our forefathers.

Our country has many old tombs belonging to remote and medieval times; some of them have mural paintings. The murals of the old tombs show that the fine arts in our country developed to a very high level in ancient times.

After the war I once visited Anak Tomb No. 3 in South Hwanghae Province. Being the tomb of a king of Koguryo in the mid-4th century, it is not only grand and magnificent, its murals graphically show the lives of the king, queen, ministers and chamberlains. The murals have inscriptions which give the personal history of the king and also show a procession of more than 250 people accompanying the king on a tour of inspection in different capacities. The Tokhungri Mural Tomb bears a mural painting showing that the occupant of the tomb ruled over a vast territory, as well as inscriptions comprising over 600 letters. The Anak Tomb No. 3 and Tokhungri Mural Tomb clearly show the distinguished talents, customs, developed culture and might of the Koguryo people over 1,600 years ago. They are a precious cultural heritage helpful for the study of the history of Koguryo.

The ancient culture of our country was even propagated to another country. In the period of the three kingdoms, our forefathers sailed to Japan and influenced its cultural development by propagating various techniques such as architecture and ceramic workmanship, as well as culture. Koryo people spread the reputation of our country throughout the world by manufacturing pottery which was distinct in its colour, patterns and shapes. Now, Koryo ceramics are famous all over the world.

Our country had a great number of historical remains and relics which were associated with the wisdom and talents of our forefathers. But most of them were ruined or plundered by foreign aggressors. During the Imjin Patriotic War, the Japanese aggressors destroyed items of the precious cultural heritage of our country at random. Moreover, later, following their occupation of Korea, they plundered lots of historical relics and even committed the crime of digging up the old tombs by stealth and taking away what was inside them.

We communists, more than anyone else, grieved at the destruction

and plunder of our nation's historical remains and relics. The communists are genuine patriots who ardently love their motherland and their nation, and treasure the heritage of national culture. When building a new country after we had liberated our country, we took a series of steps for preserving and taking care of the heritage of our national culture. Immediately after liberation we set up a state organ in charge of the work of preserving and taking care of the heritage of our national culture, and ensured that it excavated and preserved historical remains and relics. We also built a history museum and ensured that historical relics were collected from all parts of the country. And we exercised rigid control so that no construction projects were undertaken where there were historical remains and relics. When we planned the building of Kim Il Sung University in Pyongyang, some officials fixed its site where the earthen castle wall of Koguryo had been. Therefore, I made them site the university in another place and preserve the castle wall as it was.

Thanks to our deep attention to excavating and preserving the heritage of our national culture, after the liberation history museums were built in Pyongyang, and in every provincial seat, historical remains and relics were investigated and registered as national treasures, and the temples all over the country were preserved intact.

However, during the Fatherland Liberation War, many precious historical remains and relics were destroyed and burned. Owing to the bombing of the US imperialists, a fairly large number of cultural relics preserved in history museums were lost, and many temples such as the Kwangbop and Jangan Temples were either ruined or burned.

In the postwar days, we restored the ruined historical remains despite the very difficult situation in the country.

In 1954 we restored to their original state the Hyonmu Gate, the northern gate of the northern fort of the Walled City of Pyongyang and the Nam Gate in Kaesong, which had been destroyed during the war. Later, when we were building Mt. Taesong into a cultural recreation ground for the people, we rebuilt the crumbled ramparts of the fort on Mt. Taesong built in the Koguryo period and reconstructed the Nam

Gate. We also rebuilt some pavilions and temples, including the Paeksang Pavilion in Anju, known as the most beautiful pavilion in the Kwanso area, in Pyongyang, North and South Phyongan Provinces and Jagang Province. We also reconstructed the Taeung Hall and Manse Pavilion at the Pohyon Temple on Mt. Myohyang, the most famous temple in our country, which had been burned during the Fatherland Liberation War. We displayed in the Pohyon Temple the *Phalmandaejanggyong* (80,000 Blocks of the Complete Collection of Buddhist Scriptures) and the wood-blocks which had been used for printing them. We not only preserve the *Phalmandaejanggyong* as a national treasure, but also ensured that they were rendered and published in modern Korean.

Under the correct leadership of our Party, historical remains and relics are preserved carefully in the northern half of our country. Many historical remains and relics that had disappeared have been unearthed and restored, and they are making a contribution to educating the working people in patriotism and to developing the socialist national culture.

Excavating and reconstructing historical remains and relics is a consistent policy of our Party. In accordance with this policy of the Party, we should in the future, too, continue to do this work well.

An important thing in excavating and reconstructing historical remains and relics is to maintain the principle of Juche.

Only then can we correctly appraise historical remains and relics, and properly sustain the national characteristics in reconstructing them.

Establishing Juche in dealing with historical remains is also necessary for the elimination of the remnants of flunkeyism in the study of history. In the past, the feudal ruling circles, taking to flunkeyism, did not describe the history of our country correctly, but distorted historical facts to a considerable extent. Looking back on the history of our country, during the period of Koguryo our people did not follow flunkeyism. In our country, flunkeyism came into being for the first time under the feudal rulers of Silla, and it was manifested more seriously during the Ri dynasty. From the outset of the founding of the

state, the feudal rulers of the Ri dynasty were subservient to great powers, and ruined the country in the end because of sycophancy.

The reactionary ruling circles infected with flunkeyism claimed that a foreigner, Kija by name, came to Korea with technicians and civilized it. They built a mausoleum to him on Moran Hill and even held memorial services for him. Because the story of Kija did not conform with historical facts, I gave instructions to excavate his grave on Moran Hill after liberation. When the grave was excavated, it was found to be a sham one; there was nothing in it. The story of Kija was an absurd lie invented by flunkeyists.

After their occupation of our country, the Japanese imperialist aggressors, in pursuing a policy of obliterating our nation, not only propagandized the history of our nation in a distorted manner but also eliminated the old history books.

If we do not thoroughly establish Juche in the study of history, we can neither put the distorted historical facts right nor explain the long history of our country correctly. The historians must always strictly adhere to the standpoint of Juche and study the history of our country guided by their own principles.

Another important aspect of unearthing and reconstructing historical remains and relics is to maintain principles based on historical facts.

Only when we closely observe these principles can we properly reconstruct historical remains and relics in accordance with the law of historical development.

If we do not reconstruct historical remains and relics on the basis of historical materials but modernize them, they will be useless, even though it has cost us a great deal to do this. If we modernize them, we will not be able to preserve the historical value of remains and relics, but, on the contrary, will exert a bad influence on the people. Therefore, we must reconstruct historical remains and relics as they originally were, on the principles based on historical facts.

On the principles of Juche and on the principles based on historical facts we should properly reconstruct historical remains and relics

which are of value as national treasures.

Above all else, we should properly reconstruct the Anhak Palace, which was the royal palace of Koguryo, and the Tomb of King Tongmyong, the founder of Koguryo.

Recently, I saw the sand table for the construction of Pyongyang. It included a good plan for the reconstruction of the Anhak Palace. As our first feudal state, Koguryo existed as a powerful country for a long period. The Anhak Palace was built when Koguryo, which occupied a vast territory, transferred its capital to Pyongyang. I have been told that the excavation of the site of the Anhak Palace revealed the sites of more than 50 buildings. Merely judging by the site of the remains, one can guess how grandiose the Anhak Palace was. There is no need to reconstruct all these buildings because we are going to restore the Anhak Palace. All that we need to do is to properly reconstruct some typical buildings in accordance with the characteristic features of the buildings of Koguryo. We need further consideration as to whether we will make the palace a national history museum after it is reconstructed.

The Tomb of King Tongmyong is a very precious historical remnant which shows part of the history and cultural tradition of our country. A country has its ancestor as a family has its ancestor. Every country has its ancestor. King Tongmyong was the founder of Koguryo, the first feudal state of our country. Koguryo people revered him as their forefather. The legend concerning Ko Jumong alone is enough to clearly see how much they deified him.

The question concerning the Tomb of King Tongmyong has been argued over a great deal since the days immediately after liberation. At that time, some people said that the Tomb of King Tongmyong was not a grave belonging to the period of Koguryo; others claimed that it was a sham tomb. Later, our historians ascertained that the Koguryo people had moved the Tomb of King Tongmyong to Pyongyang when they transferred their capital there in 427. We Koreans hold the graves of our forefathers very dear. When our overseas compatriots return home, many of them bring with them the ashes of their forefathers. So, the

Koguryo people must surely have moved the ashes of the king, the founder of their state, when they transferred their capital.

When foreigners and our overseas compatriots visit our country, they ask us to show them the historical remains of Koguryo. When our overseas compatriots visit the motherland, they ask who was the king who founded our country and where his grave is.

As King Tongmyong was the founder of Koguryo, we must give due prominence to him. We must build the Tomb of King Tongmyong properly and gracefully according to the Koguryo method of building tombs so that it will be in the style of Koguryo. In the old days, the feudal ruling circles of the Ri dynasty arbitrarily set up sculptures in front of the Tomb of King Tongmyong and also wrote a misleading epitaph. We must put all of this right. When we build the Tomb of King Tongmyong, we must keep intact the old pine trees around it. We must also leave all the old tombs around it.

There is the site of the Jongrung Temple in front of the Tomb of King Tongmyong. We must also reconstruct the Jongrung Temple. The Jongrung Temple was built for the Tomb of King Tongmyong. Therefore, only when it is reconstructed, will the appearance of the tomb of the king, the founder of Koguryo, be as stately as it should be.

There are many historical remains and relics of the Koguryo period on Mt. Taesong. We should reconstruct those of them which need it.

When we built the zoological and botanical gardens on Mt. Taesong we rebuilt some ramparts of the fort on Mt. Taesong and built pavilions, but we did not rebuild some historical remains, including temples. It will be a good idea to reconstruct the Kwangbop Temple, which was formerly on Mt. Taesong. The Kwangbop Temple is said to have been built in the period of Koguryo. Buddhism found its way into Koguryo around 372, and temples started to be built in all parts of the country. There were many temples, such as the Kwangbop Temple in Pyongyang. However, the only one which remains now is the Pobun Hermitage in Mangyongdae District. Many visitors to our country believe in Buddhism. If we rebuild the Kwangbop Temple and tell them they may hold Buddhist ceremonies there, they will be pleased.

In ancient times there were many ponds on Mt. Taesong, such as the Ingo (Carp) Pond, the Sasum (Deer) Pond, the Kuryong (Nine Dragons) Pond and the Jangsu (General) Pond. We should excavate these ponds and reconstruct those which need to be rebuilt.

If we properly rebuild the historical remains on Mt. Taesong and around it, the mountain will become a more splendid recreation ground for the people.

We must also reconstruct the historical remains and relics from the Koryo period which need to be restored to their original state.

We need to rebuild the Tomb of King Wang Kon, the founder of Koryo. The Koryo people built a grandiose tomb for King Kongmin, but did not build the Tomb of King Wang Kon like that. If we build the Tomb of King Wang Kon of Koryo by referring to the Tomb of King Kongmin, we will be able to build it well. I intend to tell you again about how to rebuild the Tomb of King Wang Kon on another occasion.

Because Kaesong was the capital of Koryo, there are many historical remains there, including the Manwol Palace, the royal palace of the Koryo period. It would seem advisable to reconstruct those of the historical remains in Kaesong which show the architecture of Koryo. As many foreign tourists visit Kaesong, if we properly reconstruct the historical remains from the Koryo period, we will be able to show these remains to them.

We must rebuild typical historical remains among those which are on Mt. Kumgang and in other beauty spots.

Immediately after liberation I went to the Singye Temple in Outer Kumgang of Mt. Kumgang. It was a magnificent temple with over 10 buildings. At that time I emphasized to the officials the need to properly preserve this temple, which showed the wonderful architecture of our forefathers. However, during the Fatherland Liberation War, owing to the bombing of the US imperialists, all the historical relics in the Singye Temple were burnt, not to mention the temple itself; the three-storeyed stone pagoda is the only thing that remains there now. It would be a good idea to rebuild a typical building of the Singye Temple to show it to those who come to Mt. Kumgang for sightseeing.

We must continue to pay attention to excavating more historical remains and relics.

Our historians have achieved many successes in unearthing historical remains and relics. Historical remains of the Old Stone Age such as the Komunmoru relics, the grotto relics on Mt. Sungni and the Kulphori relics have been discovered in the areas of Pyongyang, South Phyongan Province and North Hamgyong Province, respectively. Thus it has been proved that people began to live in the Korean peninsula in the first period of human history. Historical relics from the period of Ancient Korea, such as a brass spear, a bronze lute-shaped dagger and a bronze mirror with a fine line pattern have also been discovered in various areas. They all show that the culture of Ancient Korea was a developed one.

In future, we must do a good job of unearthing historical remains and relics in order to locate many of them. In particular, we must devote our efforts to unearthing the historical remains and relics belonging to the period of Ancient Korea. Ancient Korea was the first state of our nation and the first slave-owning state of our country. Ancient Korea existed for a long period and had a vast territory. However, the literature on Ancient Korea is scanty and not many historical remains and relics from this period have been excavated. If we unearth the historical remains and relics from the period of Ancient Korea, we will be able to clarify in detail the date of its foundation and the process of its historical development.

It is not easy to unearth the historical remains and relics of Ancient Korea because a long period of time has passed since its existence. However, as old tombs belonging to the period of Ancient Korea may remain, we will be able to find them even though we may not excavate other historical remains and relics of the period. There are many old tombs in the areas of Pyongyang and South Phyongan Province; among them, there may be those which belong to the period of Ancient Korea.

After studying the history of our country more, I intend to tell the historians about how to study the ancient history of our country.

# **LET US DEVELOP SOUTH-SOUTH COOPERATION**

## **Congratulatory Speech at the Extraordinary Ministerial Conference of Non-Aligned Countries on South-South Cooperation**

*June 9, 1987*

Esteemed delegates,  
Comrades and friends,

Today an Extraordinary Ministerial Conference of Non-Aligned Countries on South-South Cooperation, the first of its kind, is being held on a grand scale at a time when the aspirations and desire of the developing countries for international solidarity and cooperation are very strong. This is an important event for the Korean nation and other peoples of the non-aligned countries.

This meeting is being attended by ministers and other high-ranking people from many non-aligned countries of different continents. This shows that the governments and peoples of these countries are strongly in favour of and enthusiastic about South-South cooperation. It is also a clear expression of the excellent friendly relations between the Korean and other non-aligned countries.

It gives me great pleasure that this conference is being held in Pyongyang, the capital of our country, in accordance with the decision of the Eighth Summit Conference of the Non-Aligned Countries. I would like to offer a warm welcome to the delegates from the non-aligned countries, to the delegates from international organizations

and to all our foreign friends who are attending this conference.

I would like to express my deep gratitude to the Government of the Republic of Zimbabwe, the home nation of the present chairman of the Non-Aligned Movement, and to the governments and friends of all the other countries who have cooperated wholeheartedly in successfully convening this extraordinary ministerial conference.

It is of great importance for the ministers of the non-aligned countries to meet in conference in this way, analyse and appraise the successes and experience gained in South-South cooperation in recent years, and seriously discuss measures and ways for developing South-South cooperation so that it can become broader and stronger. This extraordinary ministerial conference held in Pyongyang will serve as a great opportunity to develop South-South cooperation, establish a new, fair international economic order, and strengthen the friendship and solidarity between the non-aligned countries. This conference will be an inspiration to all the progressive people who are struggling to uphold justice, preserve peace and achieve independence throughout the world.

I am convinced that, through your active participation and combined efforts, this conference will hold useful discussions on the items on the agenda so as to meet the expectations of the peoples of the non-aligned and developing countries through the results that are achieved.

Comrades and friends,

The development of South-South cooperation is now a matter of the greatest urgency for the non-aligned and developing countries.

Since World War II the peoples of many countries in Asia, Africa and Latin America have freed themselves from colonial fetters, have won political independence, and have embarked on the road of independent development. But there is no small number of developing countries whose peoples have not yet achieved economic independence and are experiencing a series of economic difficulties in building new societies. In many of the non-aligned and developing countries the evil consequences of imperialist colonial rule have not

yet been eliminated. Worse still, new economic problems are growing daily because of the imperialists' neocolonialist policies and the present unfair international economic system.

The present international economic system is a product of colonialism. It is a system whereby the Western monopolies enrich themselves. Today the imperialists are pursuing the predatory policy of profiteering at the expense of the developing countries by using their monopolistic position in international economic relations. As a result, the natural resources of the developing countries and the fruits of their peoples' labour are being snatched away cheaply by the developed capitalist countries, the huge foreign debts of the developing countries are growing all the time, and the living conditions of their peoples are going from bad to worse. The gulf between the poor, developing countries and the rich, developed nations is becoming wider as the days go by, and the trend of "the rich getting richer and the poor getting poorer" has now become more aggravated worldwide.

If the developing countries are to extricate themselves from their present difficulties and build independent, new societies, they must break free of economic subjugation and build independent national economies.

Economic independence is the material basis of a nation's independence and sovereignty. It is only when they achieve economic independence that the developing countries can maintain a completely independent stand, exercise total sovereignty in foreign relations and consolidate the political independence they have won.

South-South cooperation is a noble undertaking for the developing countries to achieve economic independence through mutual economic and technical assistance, and by meeting each other's needs. It represents a new form of international economic relations based on their common aspirations and interests. South-South cooperation is, in essence, an international movement of the peoples of the politically independent, developing countries to win their economic freedom and sovereignty.

By expanding South-South cooperation, the developing countries

will be able to free themselves from economic subjugation and dependence, and build independent national economies. If South-South cooperation is successful it will make the present unfair international economic system ineffective, establish a new, fair international economic order and, furthermore, have a favourable influence on improving North-South relations.

There are many conditions and opportunities to effect South-South cooperation. Because they share the same lot and the same aspirations, the developing countries have a common interest in realizing South-South cooperation. They have enormous manpower and inexhaustible natural resources as well as a certain amount of valuable experience and skills that can be exchanged amongst them. If the non-aligned and developing countries employ all these conditions and opportunities properly and work together, South-South cooperation will be effected successfully.

Since the start of its historic advance, the Non-Aligned Movement has always paid close attention to strengthening economic cooperation between developing countries. Thanks to the positive initiatives and efforts of many non-aligned and developing countries, the political guidelines on economic cooperation between the developing countries have been set out, and a detailed programme of action and several decisions on economic cooperation have been adopted at the Non-Aligned Summit Conferences and other international meetings. Projects for cooperation are now under way in many spheres. Needless to say, these are valuable achievements in the realization of South-South cooperation. But this is only the beginning of South-South cooperation when we consider the enormous potential of the developing countries and their real needs. As all of us admit, South-South cooperation is not being undertaken far beyond the bilateral or regional scope; it is proceeding within limits.

The non-aligned and developing countries should take measures for a full-scale development of South-South cooperation, and increase economic and technical cooperation and exchanges rapidly.

If there is to be a full-scale development of South-South

cooperation, the non-aligned countries must strictly observe the principles of collective self-reliance, complete equality and mutual benefit, on the basis of maintaining independence.

Collective self-reliance is the common ideal and principle for the peoples of the non-aligned countries in their struggle to shape their destinies for themselves in a spirit of unity and cooperation. The masses of the people have to forge their own destiny. To this end, they must unite and cooperate with each other not only within their own countries, but also on an international scale under the banner of self-reliance. It is only when they adhere to the principle of collective self-reliance that the peoples of the non-aligned countries can rid themselves of their dependence on the developed countries and expand South-South cooperation effectively in the spirit of independence and solidarity.

All economic relations between the developing countries must be established according to the principles of complete equality and mutual benefit. It is an important feature of South-South cooperation to help one another and promote exchanges on completely equal terms and in such a way as to benefit everyone concerned. If biased and unequal terms are permitted in economic relations between developing countries, it may result in one country encroaching on the interests of another, and, further, in creating a new relationship of subjugation and dependence between developing countries. This will contradict the basic idea and aim of South-South cooperation. The non-aligned countries must develop economic and technical cooperation and exchanges from the point of view of genuinely helping each other and promoting each other's interests, irrespective of the size of the countries concerned and the degree of economic and cultural development, so that South-South cooperation can be a model of the fairest and most equal international economic relationship.

I consider it reasonable to develop South-South cooperation by putting it into effect in those areas where it is urgently needed and feasible, and by extending it one step at a time, while accumulating experience and consolidating the successes.

It is now of great importance to effect South-South cooperation properly in the fields of trade, currency and finance.

South-South cooperation is an economic relationship between countries that are not rich. Therefore, it must be fundamentally different from that sought by the rich countries. Trade and other economic relations between the developing countries ought to be genuinely cooperative relationships in which none of the parties concerned is pursuing only its own needs and interests.

The non-aligned countries must establish a Global System of Trade Preferences so that trade between the developing countries can be rapidly expanded in conditions beneficial to them all. Barter can be regarded as the best form of trade between these countries. This and other forms of trade must be expanded according to the interests of them all on the principle of mutual accommodation. I am of the opinion that when they engage in economic cooperation and joint ventures, it is reasonable that each partner should receive the repayment of his capital and the return on his investment in goods produced by the enterprise or country concerned, as far as possible. When one developing country makes a loan to another, it should be offered at either a low rate of interest or interest free; high rates of interest should be avoided, so as to give substantial assistance to the borrower's economic development.

We deem it necessary to develop South-South cooperation in agriculture so that self-sufficiency in food can be attained.

A large number of developing countries are not yet free from hunger and poverty, and the imperialists are trying to subordinate these countries economically and dominate them politically by using food as a weapon. Therefore, the developing countries must improve agriculture and solve the problem of food. This is important in delivering their peoples from hunger and poverty, and in defending their independence. The non-aligned countries must set the inspiring objective of achieving complete self-sufficiency in food as soon as possible, and achieve it by undertaking joint ventures in agriculture through various ways and means, and by cooperating with each other

closely in the construction of irrigation systems, in the improvement of farming techniques, in research into agricultural science and in the production of farm machinery. This is the most suitable type of cooperation for them.

In many developing countries the people still suffer from disease as a result of imperialist colonial rule. This situation demands the immediate strengthening of cooperation in health work in these countries. In order to eliminate disease and preserve the health of the people, the non-aligned and developing countries should work hard to cooperate and promote exchanges in the advancement of both modern and traditional medicine, and in the expansion of the production of medicines, and organize and operate hospitals and the like widely under joint management.

South-South cooperation in the field of science and technology is very important for the developing countries in making economic and technical progress.

If they cooperate and promote exchanges effectively in the field of science and technology, the developing countries will be able to solve a considerable number of the scientific and technological problems that arise in building a new society, free from dependence on developed countries, which is very costly. They must cooperate in every possible way, exchanging technicians, experts and technical data with each other in the sincere and noble spirit of cooperation. The non-aligned countries should not request high remuneration when they send technicians and experts abroad, and should offer technical data and the like free of charge.

In addition, the non-aligned countries must expand and develop cooperation and exchanges in the exploitation of natural resources, in industry, education and many other spheres.

At the moment, it is most important for the developing countries to find a reasonable solution to the problem of foreign debts.

This problem has a serious effect on the social and economic life in these countries and on the world economy. Unless they are relieved of the heavy burden of foreign debts, they will not succeed in building

new societies, particularly independent national economies. There may be different ways of solving the problem. We consider it reasonable that this issue should be settled through bilateral or multilateral negotiations between the debtors and the creditors in such a way that the period of debt repayment is extended free of interest until such time as the developing countries involved can repay the loans through building their own independent national economies.

South-South cooperation is an undertaking of the non-aligned countries themselves to promote their common interests. In order to expand and develop it to the full, all the non-aligned countries should have a common understanding and attitude towards it, increase political support for each other and strive to put the cooperation into effect. These countries should work hard to implement the decisions and programmes of action adopted by various international conferences in connection with South-South cooperation, and constantly explore and develop positive forms and means of broadening its scope and enhancing its effectiveness.

The prevention of war and the defence of peace is the most important task facing the Non-Aligned Movement at present, and only when world peace and security are secured can South-South cooperation develop smoothly.

All the peoples of the developing countries oppose war and desire peace. Today they need a climate of peace in order to build a new society. It is only when peace is secured that they can accelerate economic construction and build independent national economies.

The Non-Aligned Movement is a powerful anti-imperialist peace force. The non-aligned countries must make even greater efforts to check the arms race, effect complete disarmament, abolish aggressive foreign military bases and establish nuclear-free peace zones throughout the world.

Many progressive governments and peoples throughout the world have made constructive proposals to prevent war and preserve peace, and are endeavouring to put them into effect. The Government of our Republic fully supports these just proposals and initiatives made by

many countries to reduce armaments, abolish nuclear weapons and establish nuclear-free peace zones, and expresses its firm support for the powerful anti-war, peace movement of all the peoples in different continents and regions across the world.

The strengthening and development of the Non-Aligned Movement is an important factor in consolidating the bond of friendship between the non-aligned countries and in making South-South cooperation a success. It is only when this movement is strengthened and developed that we can foil the imperialists' schemes for aggression and intervention, protect the sovereignty of the non-aligned countries and settle all issues that arise in international relations, including the question of developing South-South cooperation and establishing a new international economic order, in the interests of the newly-emergent countries. The non-aligned countries must uphold the noble ideals and principles of the Non-Aligned Movement, and work hard to strengthen its unity and solidarity, so that the movement can fulfil with credit its mission that is of such importance to our times and mankind.

The Government of our Republic considers it a sacred duty to fight for the strengthening and development of this movement, and for the success of South-South cooperation. In its external economic relations, it always pays close attention to increasing economic and technical cooperation with non-aligned countries, and is striving to establish cooperation in the field of agriculture in particular. We have set up institutes of agricultural science and experimental farms in some African countries, have accumulated a certain amount of experience in running them, and are working on plans to expand cooperation with African countries in agriculture.

The economic and technical cooperation which is expanding and developing between our country and other non-aligned countries will not only help Korea in its socialist economic construction but also other non-aligned countries in their endeavours to build independent national economies.

The Government of our Republic will, in the future, make every

effort to strengthen and develop its friendly and cooperative relations with the non-aligned countries under the banner of independence, friendship and peace, and will sincerely discharge its duty and responsibility in the noble work of South-South cooperation.

You are the distinguished guests of our people. Our people are happy to have friends such as you from different continents. During your stay in our country you will experience our people's warm feelings of friendship towards the non-aligned countries.

With the hope that you will make unremitting, sincere efforts for success at the Pyongyang Extraordinary Ministerial Conference, I wholeheartedly wish you great success in your future work.

**ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED  
BY THE EDITORS-IN-CHIEF  
OF THE NEPALESE NEWSPAPERS  
ASTITWA AND AKHABAR**

*July 23, 1987*

I have received your letter and written questions addressed to me. I am grateful to you for your warm feelings towards me and the people of Korea, and for the best wishes you expressed in your letter.

You have raised many questions, and I would like to answer them by grouping them together in categories for the sake of convenience.

In the first place, you have asked about the major successes achieved by our country. I shall refer to them briefly.

As you know, our country was once a very backward, colonial, semi-feudal society. After liberation our people were faced with the difficult task of eliminating the consequences of colonial rule by Japanese imperialism, and building a new and independent society.

In order to build a new society for the people, society, nature and man must be transformed to meet the aspirations and desires of the masses for independence. The transformation of society, nature and man constitutes the main content of social movement. Social progress is actually made through their transformation. Over the past 40 years since liberation our people have accelerated the reshaping of society, the harnessing of nature and the remoulding of man, by overcoming the difficulties and obstacles that stood in the way. As a result, they have achieved great successes in building a new society.

The major success achieved in this work was the removal once and for all of the centuries-old root cause of exploitation and poverty, and the establishment of an advanced socialist system in the northern half of Korea, a system which is free from exploitation and oppression.

The socialist system in our country is the best social system, under which the working masses are the masters of everything and everything serves them. Under the socialist system our people are leading an independent and creative life, enjoying genuine political freedom and rights. In our country all the people participate directly in state administration and national politics, have the freedom to conduct socio-political activities, are provided with steady employment and are working to the best of their ability. Thanks to the system of free medical care and to the system of free, compulsory education, everyone receives free medical treatment and is given the opportunity of receiving free education. Our people are now free from the worries of day-to-day living and are all equally prosperous.

Our people are very proud that the best social system has been established in their country. They are working hard, devoting all their energy and talent to the consolidation and development of this system which provides them with a prosperous and happy life.

Another success our people have achieved in building a new society is that they have successfully carried out socialist industrialization in a very short time, and constructed a powerful, independent national economy.

By building this economy on the ashes in the postwar years, making strenuous efforts and withstanding all hardships in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, they have attained complete economic independence. In the course of implementing a number of plans for economic development the structure of our socialist independent national economy has been further improved, and all its sectors have been provided with modern technology. Thus, the economic power of our country has increased beyond measure.

Today our economy provides a dependable material guarantee for the political sovereignty of the country, and produces virtually all that is

needed for the building of socialism and for the lives of the people. Formerly, our country was unable to make even a simple farm implement properly, but now it readily produces different kinds of large machinery such as a 10,000-ton power press, large-scale generators, and a large-scale oxygen plant; it can also produce complete sets of modern factories. We have been able to build for ourselves the West Sea Barrage and many other monumental structures, which the rest of the world would envy. This has been possible because we have built the foundations of a powerful, independent national economy.

We have regarded the transformation of people as particularly important in building a new society, and have always given it definite priority over all other work.

If we are to develop society, we must first develop people, the masters of society. The masses transform nature and society, and undertake social movement. The basic factor for social progress is to develop the masses to be powerful beings possessed of independent thinking and creative ability.

In order to develop people into powerful social beings we have intensified education and ideological indoctrination.

As a result of effective ideological indoctrination, the political and ideological features of our people have changed beyond recognition. Today all the people of our country are fully equipped with the Juche idea, united closely in mind and purpose behind the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of our Republic. And everyone is working honestly for the country and his fellows, and for society and the collective.

Thanks to the correct education and cadre-training policies of our Party and the Government of our Republic, the number of technicians and specialists, which stood at only one or two dozen in the days immediately after liberation, has now grown to 1,250,000. Moreover, the younger generation receives complete, general secondary education under the system of universal 11-year compulsory education. In our country adults also study whilst at work under the system of adult education, which takes various forms.

All these successes achieved by our people in building a new society signify the marvellous victory of our Party's Juche idea, and the glorious fruition of this idea. The Juche idea is the guiding ideology of the Korean revolution. By advancing boldly along the road of building a new society as indicated by the Juche idea, our people have been able to bring about a historic change.

Although our people's success in the past has been great, we are not content with that. We have more work to do than we have done so far.

Based on the successes which they have already achieved in building a new society, our people will accelerate the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions, and thus continue to advance the transformation of society, nature and man. In this way they will strengthen our country so that it becomes a more developed society, a land of bliss for the people.

Next, I shall dwell on the prospects for north-south dialogue for the reunification of Korea, and on the current political situation in south Korea.

Settling the question of national reunification peacefully through dialogue and negotiation is the consistent and unshakable policy of the Government of our Republic.

The Government of our Republic has made every effort to initiate dialogue between the north and the south, and to ensure that this dialogue makes a real contribution to the settlement of the question of national reunification. Last year we made a new proposal for high-level political and military talks between the north and the south in order to ease the tension in our country and pave the way for the reunification of the country. This proposal marks a turning-point and may open a favourable period for the settlement of the question of the reunification of our country, where the danger of another war is growing. But the high-level political and military talks between the north and the south have not been realized because the south Korean authorities have not made a favourable response. Because of their unwarranted attitude, the dialogue in various forms which had been going on between the north and the south has reached a deadlock.

If the north-south dialogue is to proceed successfully and produce good results, both sides must take a proper attitude towards it.

North-south dialogue is always aimed at ending the distrust and confrontation between the two sides, and settling the question of national reunification. Therefore, the important factor in effecting north-south dialogue is not the form or procedure of the dialogue but the attitude of both sides to it, which should be sincere so that they make earnest efforts to achieve national reconciliation and reunification. The prospects for north-south dialogue depend, in the final analysis, on this attitude. If the south Korean authorities abandon their sinister attempts to aggravate confrontation between the north and the south and make national division permanent behind the scenes of the dialogue, and adopt a sincere attitude towards national unity and reunification, the north-south dialogue will be realized and good results will be achieved.

We always keep the door to dialogue open. In future, too, we will work hard to effect north-south dialogue, and expand and develop it in many areas.

You asked me about the present political situation in south Korea. It can be characterized, in brief, by the fact that the rising anti-US feeling among the south Korean people, and the intensified struggle between democracy and fascism, between patriotism and treachery have thrown the anti-popular fascist rule of the militarists into a crisis.

Recently the youth, students and other people of south Korea have been fighting more fiercely than ever against the US and for independence, against fascism and for democracy and national reunification. The just patriotic struggle of the youth and students against the colonial rule of the United States and against the military fascist dictatorship of her stooges surged up and culminated in a resistance movement of all the people in June this year. Young people and students, democrats and patriots of all social levels rose up and fought resolutely by joining forces in Seoul and throughout south Korea, despite brutal repression, appeasement and deceptive manoeuvres by the military fascists. Their struggle was an anti-US, anti-fascist popular resistance which was unprecedented in its scale

and organization. The June Popular Resistance Movement dealt a heavy blow to the long-drawn-out military fascist dictatorship in south Korea, and was a violent shock to the colonial rule of US imperialism.

Unable to arrest the powerful advance of the masses any longer, the south Korean authorities were compelled to announce a “programme for saving the situation”, the gist of which was to effect constitutional reform for direct presidential elections, and eventually, they yielded to the people and their demand for democracy. This is the first victory the south Korean people have won in their recent struggle for independence and democracy.

The resistance of the south Korean people has demonstrated the great strength the people can exhibit when they unite to fight for a just cause.

Although the south Korean people have achieved some success in their struggle against fascism and for democracy, the system of military fascist dictatorship still remains unchanged, and the domination and interference of the United States still continue.

So long as the military fascist system of rule is maintained in south Korea under the patronage of the US imperialists it is impossible to conceive of the society developing along democratic lines. Foreign domination and national independence, and dictatorship and democracy are incompatible with one another. As long as south Korea is dominated by the United States and ruled by her stooges, the military fascists, the south Korean people will continue to fight resolutely under the banner of independence against the US and democracy against fascism, until they win genuine democracy, and national independence and sovereignty.

Now I shall proceed to the question of converting the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free peace zone.

The establishment of a nuclear-free peace zone on the Korean peninsula is very important for removing the danger of war and achieving lasting peace in Korea, and in securing peace in Asia and the rest of the world.

The US imperialists who are occupying south Korea have deployed

more than 1,000 nuclear weapons in this small land with the reckless intention of invading the northern half of Korea and dominating Asia and the whole world by using south Korea, a strategic point, as a stepping stone. Not content with this, they have recently shipped in various means of nuclear delivery, including “Lance” missiles, and are building dozens of special nuclear armouries. As is already known, there are four times as many nuclear weapons in south Korea as there are in the NATO area in terms of the density of nuclear deployment. History has shown on several occasions that the massing of military forces by imperialists is a prelude to war.

The US imperialists have made an open threat to use nuclear weapons should a war break out in Korea. They have worked out a plan of nuclear operations in south Korea, and frequently stage large-scale military exercises in order to put it into effect.

South Korea has been converted into the largest advance nuclear base of the US in the Far East, and the tension on the Korean peninsula continues. In this situation another war can break out at any moment in our country. If a war breaks out in Korea, it will quickly spread beyond the bounds of Korea and become a worldwide nuclear war. If this happens, not only the Korean people but the whole of mankind will suffer a nuclear holocaust.

In order to remove the root cause of a nuclear war from the Korean peninsula it is necessary to rid south Korea of nuclear weapons and US troops, and convert the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free peace zone.

In June last year the Government of our Republic put forward a new proposal to convert the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free peace zone. In this proposal we declared our unshakable policy of refraining from testing, producing, storing and importing nuclear weapons, and of banning the establishment of any foreign military bases here, nuclear bases included, and the passage of foreign nuclear weapons through our land, air space and territorial waters. At the same time, we requested the United States and the south Korean authorities to adopt corresponding measures, and expressed our readiness to come to negotiations in any form and at any time concerning our proposal, should they so desire.

Some time ago we put forward another proposal for making the Korean peninsula a nuclear-free peace zone and taking practical steps to ensure its stability. In this proposal we indicated that the US must stop shipping nuclear weapons into south Korea, withdraw all those which it has already shipped in and take practical steps to commit itself to the cancellation of all the operational plans that involved the use of nuclear weapons. We also made it clear that the Japanese government must permit neither foreign bases to be set up which could be used to launch a nuclear attack, nor the establishment of relay and supply bases intended for use against the Korean peninsula; we also demanded that all the nuclear powers must refrain from any military action which could cause a nuclear war on the Korean peninsula and in the surrounding areas, and that they must not threaten this peninsula with nuclear weapons. We also stated that the south Korean authorities must ensure the withdrawal of all foreign nuclear weapons, and abolish nuclear and other military bases in south Korea, refrain from shipping in, storing or developing nuclear weapons, and prohibit the passage of foreign nuclear weapons through that part of the country.

Our proposal to make the Korean peninsula a nuclear-free peace zone is realistic and reasonable. It will contribute to easing tension and preventing a nuclear war in our country, as well as to the cause of peace for mankind. If the Korean peninsula becomes a nuclear-free peace zone, the most dangerous hotbed for a nuclear war will cease to exist. That is why our proposal enjoys unqualified support from many peace-loving governments and people throughout the world.

The support and encouragement of our international friends are a great inspiration to our people. The Government of our Republic and the Korean people will continue to work hard to convert the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free peace zone, and maintain peace in Asia and the rest of the world.

Next, concerning the matter of the 24th Olympic Games.

If the Olympic Games are to be held in accordance with the noble ideals of peace, friendship and solidarity, it is very important to choose a proper site for them.

The decision to hold the 24th Olympic Games in Seoul, south Korea, is not in accordance with the ideals of the Olympic movement. To hold them in one half of a divided country is of no benefit to the cause of unity between fellow countrymen or to the cause of reunification. Worse still, south Korea is in a very precarious political situation. The foreign troops there are ceaselessly conducting war exercises, even the basic democratic freedom and rights of the people have been obliterated, and the serious confrontation and struggle between the military fascist dictatorship and the democratic forces are being intensified. It is not appropriate to hold the Olympic Games in a place over which the threat of war is looming, and which is experiencing continued political chaos.

One thing that must not be overlooked in this respect in particular is that the hosting of the Olympic Games in south Korea is being abused to support the US “two Koreas” policy. By holding the Olympic Games there the United States and the south Korean authorities are plotting to create the impression that south Korea is an independent state, in an attempt to make the division of our country permanent.

I think it is no accident that many countries are expressing grave concern over the Seoul Olympic Games and that voices are being raised in favour of moving the venue of the Olympic Games to another place.

In these circumstances, a reasonable way for the 24th Olympic Games to be held without problems is for the north and the south of our country to act as co-hosts, in accordance with the proposal made by the Government of our Republic.

Our proposal for the co-hosting of the Olympic Games is reasonable in that it reflects the reality of the situation in our divided country, and the desires of our people and the progressive people throughout the world. This proposal, if put into effect, will save the Olympic movement from crisis, and contribute to the improvement of the relations between the north and south of our country.

The Government of our Republic has made tireless efforts to put this proposal into effect.

As you know, in order to settle the issue of co-hosting the Olympic

Games, the delegates of the International Olympic Committee and the Olympic committees of north and south Korea have held joint conferences on four occasions in Lausanne, Switzerland. At these conferences we have made every sincere effort to realize co-sponsorship and ensure that the 24th Olympic Games will be held without problems. At the recent fourth joint conference we reaffirmed that eight sporting events should be held in the north, in proportion to the size of the population of the two parts of Korea, and made a detailed proposal for a fair settlement of the various problems of principle which arise in the arrangements for and running of the Olympic Games. To our regret, however, the south Korean side turned a deaf ear to our just proposal and persisted in their unjustifiable attitude. Therefore, the fourth Lausanne joint conference did not produce the desired result.

How this problem will be settled in the future depends on the attitude of the south Korean side.

Only one year remains before the opening of the Olympic Games. In this situation we will make every effort to find a quick and satisfactory solution to the problem of co-hosting the games.

I hope that the peoples of various countries and those who are concerned with the Olympic Games will continue to support us in our effort to put the idea of co-hosting the Olympic Games into effect.

To proceed, I shall refer to the prospects for the Non-Aligned Movement.

The Non-Aligned Movement is a movement developing on the basis of the idea of independence. It is a movement aimed at realizing the people's aspirations and desire for independence. This movement has vigorously advanced with the tide of history through the struggle against imperialism and for independence. The Non-Aligned Movement, which started its advance with 25 newly independent countries, has now expanded into a broad international movement embracing hundreds of millions of people and more than 100 newly-emergent countries throughout the world. It plays a major role in the development of the world situation and in the settlement of international questions. By its active struggle to obstruct and frustrate

the imperialists' policy of aggression and war, and oppose all forms of domination, subordination and inequality, it is making a major contribution to defending world peace and security, safeguarding national sovereignty and solving major international problems in the interests of the peoples of the newly-emergent countries.

Feeling uneasy and apprehensive about the growing strength and development of the Non-Aligned Movement, the imperialists are employing cunning schemes to weaken and stifle this movement. The US and other imperialists resort to ceaseless armed intervention, and subversive and destructive activities against the non-aligned and developing countries on the one hand, and on the other they cause antagonism and confrontation between the non-aligned nations by taking advantage of complex issues, including border disputes, which are a product of colonial rule. They also bring pressure to bear on the non-aligned and developing countries, compelling them to accept their unjustified claims, by using for their own ends the economic difficulties of these countries and their foreign debts.

By these stratagems the imperialists are laying a series of obstacles and difficulties in the way of the advance of the Non-Aligned Movement. However, no matter what schemes they may resort to, they will never be able to obstruct the victorious advance of this movement.

The Non-Aligned Movement will, in the future, display greater vitality because it fully represents the trend of the present times and the desires of the people. We are convinced that through the united efforts of all its member nations, the Non-Aligned Movement will carry out the historic mission and duties that are entrusted to it by the times and mankind.

Next, I shall touch upon the "Star Wars" programme of the United States, and the growth of militarism in Japan.

The United States' "Star Wars" programme is an adventurous project for a nuclear war in space that aims to achieve nuclear supremacy over the socialist countries, and bring the world under its domination. The ruling circles in the United States are increasing military expenditure on a large scale in order to hasten the reckless "Star Wars" project, and are

inveigling some of their allies into joining the programme.

If the United States develops space weapons and deploys them in outer space, other countries will have to take countermeasures for their own security. Then, the arms race will be extended to outer space on a large scale.

The “Star Wars” programme pursued by the United States is an intolerable challenge to the unanimous desire of the people of the world for the prevention of nuclear war and the preservation of peace. It is a criminal war plan to impose a nuclear holocaust upon humanity. If this programme is initiated the danger of nuclear war will increase, and mankind will be subjected to the constant threat of nuclear war. It is only natural that the “Star Wars” programme is now facing strong protests and condemnation worldwide.

Nevertheless, the US imperialists are trying to disguise the danger and aggressive nature of the “Star Wars” project, arguing that it is of a defensive nature, and so on. This is nothing but a trick to deceive the people of the world.

The peace-loving people of the world must not be fooled by the crafty scheme of the US imperialists, and must jointly wage an energetic struggle against their “Star Wars” programme. If they continue with this reckless project in opposition to the general trend of the times, the US imperialists will face stronger condemnation from people all over the world.

As you pointed out, in Japan militarism is now expanding and becoming a dangerous force.

Under the active patronage of the United States and with the backing of domestic monopoly capital which has been expanded as much as possible, the reactionary ruling circles in Japan are intensifying their moves to instill militarist ideas in the minds of the Japanese people. Meanwhile, they are drastically increasing their military expenditure, hastening the buildup of their armed forces and the modernization of their armaments, and expanding and strengthening their munitions industry.

Whilst strengthening their armed forces, the Japanese reactionary

ruling circles are accelerating their preparations to invade other countries, following the United States' Asian strategy and war policy. They are scheming to form a tripartite military alliance between Japan, the US and south Korea, and frequent joint military exercises are being conducted between the US forces and the Self-Defence Forces of Japan. Needless to say, this is geared towards an invasion of our country and other Asian countries. As the days go by, the military ties between Japan and the United States are being strengthened, and their underhand moves are being revealed in their military actions.

All this shows that Japanese militarism is growing to become a dangerous force of aggression, and it is going to embark on the road of overseas aggression. This can only be a menace to the countries of Asia and the peace-loving people of the world.

By its nature, militarism lives on wars of overseas expansion. The Asian countries and the peace-loving people throughout the world must heighten their vigilance against the growing militarist force in Japan which is scheming to realize its old dream of a "Great East Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere". They must wage a powerful struggle to thwart these aggressive schemes.

Now, on the question of cooperation between the socialist countries.

The socialist countries are cooperating closely with each other for common purposes and ideals.

The relations between them are comradely and fraternal relations based on the community of their social systems and class interests. Therefore, they are linked by the solid bonds of friendship, and their friendly and cooperative relations will continue to strengthen and develop as their socialist societies make progress.

Today the friendship and cooperation between the socialist countries are developing smoothly. This is making a great contribution to the acceleration of the building of socialism in each country, to the strengthening of the socialist forces as a whole, to the relaxation of international tensions, and to the preservation of world peace. It is also an encouragement to the people of the world who are struggling for

national independence and socialism.

The Government of our Republic attaches great importance to the development of friendly and cooperative relations with the fraternal socialist countries, and is working hard to develop cooperation and exchanges in all fields of politics, the economy and culture. In the future it will make every effort to further its traditional relations of friendship and cooperation with the socialist countries.

The Government of our Republic will also encourage good-neighbourly, friendly relations with all nations which respect the sovereignty of our country and take a friendly attitude towards us, regardless of social system and on the principles of independence, equality and mutual benefit, and promote economic and cultural exchanges and cooperation.

I shall now proceed to the relations between the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and the Kingdom of Nepal.

We can call the relations between the two countries friendly. The peoples of the two countries are making efforts to develop friendly relations, supporting and cooperating with each other in the joint struggle against imperialism and for independence.

In recent years these relations have improved further. In the first half of this year, for instance, the Kingdom of Nepal sent high-ranking delegations to our country which contributed to the promotion of mutual understanding and friendship between the two countries.

Both Korea and Nepal are situated in Asia, and belong to the Non-Aligned Movement. The peoples of our two countries share a common interest in developing friendly and cooperative relations based on independence. Therefore, I think that this friendly and cooperative relationship will become closer in the future.

I hope that the press in Nepal, including yourselves, will work hard to expand and develop our relations of friendship and cooperation.

I would like to take this opportunity to send my friendly greetings to the people of the Kingdom of Nepal, and wish them renewed success in their struggle to safeguard justice and peace and to build a prosperous new society.

**CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE  
TO THE PARTICIPANTS IN THE FIRST  
PYONGYANG FILM FESTIVAL  
OF THE NON-ALIGNED AND OTHER  
DEVELOPING COUNTRIES**

*September 1, 1987*

I am pleased at the opening of a film festival of the non-aligned and other developing countries in Pyongyang, the capital of our country, under the slogan “For independence, friendship and peace” and offer warm greetings and congratulations to the delegations, delegates, renowned persons from many countries in the world and all the other foreign guests attending the festival.

The Pyongyang Film Festival is a large-scale festival, held for the first time by the Non-Aligned Movement, according to decisions adopted at a Conference of Ministers and a Summit Conference of the Non-Aligned Countries. Arousing great expectation and interest among progressive people and film artists in the world, the festival will enable film artists from many countries to exchange their success and experience in the field of film art and establish interchange and cooperation, thus becoming an important occasion to further develop film art in developing countries and contribute to consolidating the ties of friendship and solidarity among the peoples and film artists of the developing countries and to strengthening the Non-Aligned Movement.

Film plays a very important role in realizing the people’s cause of independence.

Film is a composite art that depicts human life in the most graphic way through various means. A film that truthfully describes the life of an independent person has very great ideological and emotional power. Progressive films give people progressive ideas, educate them with ennobling morality and beautiful emotion, and encourage them in the just struggle for freedom, peace and social progress.

At present film has become very important in the cultural and aesthetic life of the people, and their demand for it is increasing daily. Developing their film art is a pressing matter for the non-aligned and other developing countries, since they have lagged far behind modern civilization, owing to the imperialist and colonialist policy of obliterating national cultures.

The genuine mission of film art is to teach the people the truth of life and illuminate the road of struggle for them. To this end, film art must portray truthfully the worthwhile struggle and beautiful life of an independent person and pay due attention to the urgent problems raised by the times. Only film art that correctly reflects the life of an independent person and the demands of the times, will accomplish its mission as a guide to life and a weapon of struggle and contribute to enriching the treasure house of the culture of mankind.

An important problem now facing the peoples of the non-aligned and other developing countries is how to eliminate the aftereffects of imperialist colonial rule and build a free, prosperous new society. Film art must educate and awaken people to make them the genuine masters of society and encourage them in the effort to build an independent, new society.

Preventing war and safeguarding peace are burning issues facing mankind at the moment. The people can build a new, independent society through creative labour only under peaceful circumstances. Film art must focus on the issues of war and peace and positively defend and protect peace. Film art must instil in the broad masses a spirit of hating aggression and war and loving peace and lay bare and sternly denounce the manoeuvres of war maniacs to provoke a new war, thus contributing to the sacred cause of peace of humanity.

Friendship and solidarity are important guarantees for victory in the common cause of the progressive people of the world. Film art must pay due attention to deepening the understanding between countries and nations and consolidating the ties of friendship and solidarity between them.

People struggle and live as members of a country and nation, and the people in each country have their own particular national characteristics. Film art must portray accurately, according to their national characteristics, the people's struggle to satisfy their aspirations and demands for independence and their diversified life. Only then can film art win the love and great admiration of the people.

In order to develop their film art on a sound basis, the developing countries must oppose cultural infiltration by imperialism. Today the imperialists are intensifying cultural infiltration into other countries and use the film as an important means. The reactionary film of imperialists is a mental drug that poisons the people's consciousness of independence and dulls their will to fight. The developing countries should keep vigilant concerning imperialist cultural infiltration through the means of film and thwart it categorically.

Film art is created by the high degree of enthusiasm and devoted efforts of film artists. The honourable duty to serve the just cause of the people through film falls on the shoulders of none other than you, progressive film artists. Progressive film artists should depict human life in depth and create a great number of excellent films that illuminate clearly the truth of struggle and life, in this way fulfilling the heavy mission and responsibility they have assumed for the age and mankind.

For developing countries to advance film art rapidly, they should realize wide-ranging international cooperation and exchange in this field. Reflecting the aspirations and demands of the people, developing countries are now promoting an efflorescence of their film art and achieving brilliant successes. If they strengthen cooperation and exchange in the field of film art on the basis of already achieved success, they can make greater progress in the development of film art.

They should take active measures for developing cooperation and exchange in this field on the principle of collective self-reliance and carry them out with credit. Progressive film artists of the world should engage actively in mutual contacts and visits, exchange success and experience gained in film-making, and continually widen the scope of cooperation.

Our people and film artists treasure the friendship and cooperation of progressive people and film artists in the world. In future we shall actively try to expand and develop friendship and cooperation with all the progressive people and film artists of the world.

In the wish that you who devote your all to the development of film art will achieve fresh success in film-making in future, I believe that the current Pyongyang Film Festival will bear splendid results, thanks to your high spirit of cooperation and sincere efforts.

## **ON INTRODUCING QUICKLY 8-AXLE ELECTRIC LOCOMOTIVES AND WAGGONS OF THE 100-TON CAPACITY IN THE RAIL TRANSPORT SECTOR**

**Talk to Officials on Inspecting Newly-made Waggon  
of the 100-ton Capacity and 8-axle Electric Locomotives**

*September 24, 1987*

The goods waggons of the 100-ton capacity are very good. It is good that bearings were fixed to the axles of the waggon wheels. Coal and the like can be unloaded through the side doors of the waggons.

I was told that the life span of such a waggon made of an alloy of iron, copper and manganese is 40 years, and less than 20 years when it is made of steel. If much copper is required for the ferro-alloy for producing a heavy-duty waggon, provision of copper will pose a problem.

A 20-metre-long piece of shaped steel is needed for producing the middle bolster of the waggon.

The newly made 8-axle electric locomotive is also good. It looks longer than the *Pulgungi* locomotive produced in the past.

If one 8-axle electric locomotive pulls a train in the van and another assists in the middle, they can haul 50 waggons of the 100-ton capacity. Their power might be insufficient when crossing such a high pass as Yangdok Pass; in that case, another locomotive can be fixed at the rear to push it.

It was reported that if quality insulators are used in producing the

traction motors of the locomotive, it will increase the capacity of the motors, and two 8-axle locomotives can surely scale fairly high passes, hauling 50 such waggons. You should import quality insulators from other countries, and also make efforts to produce them by yourselves.

The newly produced 8-axle electric locomotives and waggons of the 100-ton capacity are very good. On inspecting them today, I have gained confidence that we will be able to solve the transport problem without much difficulty. The prospect has now been opened for solving the problem. I feel very happy today.

The rail transport sector should quickly introduce the 8-axle electric locomotives and waggons of the 100-ton capacity.

Then we can increase the amount of freight remarkably as compared with the time when it was carried by waggons of the 60-ton capacity. If one train is composed of 50 waggons of the 100-ton capacity, it can carry 5,000 tons of goods at a time. This would be wonderful. A train now hauls 1,200 tons of goods at a time, on average, but if a train, composed of waggons of the 100-ton capacity, hauls 5,000 tons of commodities, it means that it can haul a load over four times greater than now. When the amount of goods to be carried becomes greater in the future, it will be possible to pull even 70 waggons of that capacity at a time. Other countries make up a train by placing a locomotive in the van, then goods waggons behind it and another locomotive and more goods waggons. The sections separate when necessary. We can haul larger quantities of commodities in such a way. This, too, is a method of running trains. At present, inefficient transport, including coal transport, is hindering production, but when the 8-axle electric locomotives haul 50 waggons of the 100-ton capacity, the strain on transport will be eased.

The introduction of these waggons will cost less than double tracking, and moreover, ease the strain on transport at an earlier date. In the present situation of our country, investing less for easing the strain on transport is important, but what is all the more important is time. Double tracking takes time. The introduction of waggons of the 100-ton capacity is feasible if we strive for about a year, but it is

difficult to complete double tracking within 10 years. The planned double-tracking project between Sinsongchon and Kowon will take about 10 years to complete, even though it is expedited. The Pyongyang-Wonsan line project undertaken under the rule of Japanese imperialism, was finished after a lengthy period. When I was 11 years old, I came to Pyongyang from Badaogou to study. At that time, I read newspapers which carried boisterous reports about the project. But the line was only opened to traffic a few years before the defeat of Japanese imperialism. The northern railway line, which is now under way, looks on the map like something which can be done without much difficulty, but the last video-recording showed that most of the rails were laid after cutting cliffs. Seven years have passed since the project started. They say that even mountains and rivers change their appearances in ten years, and we cannot afford to drive just double-tracking tunnels for ten years.

No more double-tracking projects should be started after finishing the Kocham-Naepo project now under way. Except for this project, other double-tracking projects envisaged in the Third Seven-Year Plan must be left out of the plan. This does not at all mean that we will not double track lines later. Double-tracking projects should be undertaken in future as the requirements for transport increase steadily. The projects should be carried out as the labour shortage is eased. When the construction of a hydroelectric power station is finished, the soldiers who drove waterway tunnels can be enlisted in the double-tracking projects.

At present, in other countries railways are built for heavy duty. I am told that in one country about 100 heavy-duty waggons of more than the 100-ton capacity are hauled at a time. In another country, about 10,000 tons of freight is carried at a time in this way.

On my visit to a foreign country in 1982, I went to the countryside for an inspection by train with an official of that country. At that time he told me that his country would mine coal in collaboration with a developed country and carry 10,000 tons of it at a time by train. When I asked him how such a large amount of coal could be carried at a time,

he said that it was possible if 100 goods waggons with capacities of 100 tons were hauled at a time. On my return home, I informed our officials of this and gave them the task of easing the strain on rail transport by producing waggons of the 100-ton capacity. When I visited that country again this May, I asked the Prime Minister of that country about the coal production in collaboration with another country. He told me that the railway was now under construction and when the project is completed, 10,000 tons of coal will be carried at a time by 100 waggons of the 100-ton capacity. He continued that facilities for unloading coal would be set up at a port, and the coal carried by train would be unloaded there before being exported. I asked him if the track was level as it was a long way to transport coal by train from the place of its mining to the port. He answered that there were many sharp curves and grades. From what he said, the gradient of the track is apparently similar to that of our country's.

Immediately after returning from my visit to that country in 1982, I tried to have waggons of the 100-ton capacity introduced, but to no avail so far, because our officials have not implemented the task I assigned to them. If they had produced the waggons immediately and introduced them into rail transport, the strain on transport would have been eased by now.

Their introduction has been delayed a little, but if you immediately start producing them and thus introduce them into rail transport from next year, it will be all right. Then, a big problem will be solved in carrying out the Third Seven-Year Plan. You should not pay only lip-service to the introduction of 8-axle electric locomotives and the waggons of the 100-ton capacity, but introduce them without fail next year through a vigorous effort.

The waggons should be produced immediately. If there are no other faults in the design of the wagon, you should mass-produce it to the design. In the future, you should decrease the production of waggons of the 60-ton capacity step by step and produce waggons of the 100-ton capacity. It will be all right if the waggons of the 60-ton capacity produced so far are repaired and put into use. You must take into

account the demand and decide how many waggons of the 100-ton capacity should be produced next year.

First of all, you should take into consideration how many of the waggons will be needed in carrying heavy loads like coal, ore and timber.

Special waggons for carrying timber should be produced.

You should make tank waggons of the 120-ton capacity. As tank waggons of that capacity of a foreign country come as far as Rajin, it seems that they can move on our railways without accident. Production of the tank waggons will enable us to get oil from other countries and transport it on our own. It will also render it possible to transport petrol and other types of oil produced by the Sungni Chemical Complex and the Ponghwa Chemical Factory by means of the waggons.

If the tank waggons are produced, there will arise the problem of whether a locomotive can haul them safely or not. But it will be all right if it hauls fewer tank waggons. A locomotive will be able to haul about 35 tank waggons of the 120-ton capacity at a time.

Tank waggons should be produced in excess of the demand for transport. At the moment, the organs and enterprises which have no oil tanks, have hauled tank waggons, parked them in their compounds and are using them as oil tanks. They are criticized and fined for it, but this malpractice does not die out, because of the lack of oil tanks. More tank waggons should be made in consideration of the fact that the organs and enterprises might not return them in due time. You should calculate exactly how many tank waggons must be produced.

You should ensure that the June 4 Rolling-stock Complex produces the waggons of the 100-ton capacity. Since it has produced waggons of the 60-ton capacity so far, there is nothing to stop it producing waggons of the 100-ton capacity. If the June 4 Rolling-stock Complex has made full preparations for producing them, then that is excellent.

Many 8-axle electric locomotives should also be produced. If they are approved and demanded in large numbers by the transport sector after trials, as many as demanded should be produced. They should be produced in keeping with the production of the waggons of the 100-ton capacity. If the 8-axle electric locomotives are not produced in a

sufficient number, the waggons of the 100-ton capacity will be of no use, no matter how many of them are produced. It is excellent that the Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Complex can produce 30 of such locomotives a year.

In order for the 8-axle electric locomotives and the waggons of the 100-ton capacity to be produced, steel should be supplied. If the Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Complex and the June 4 Rolling-stock Complex are provided with sufficient steel and if they wage a gigantic struggle, they will be able to produce and supply a sufficient number of such locomotives and waggons which are needed for easing the strain on transport. The metal industry sector should supply the railway sector with 12,000 tons of steel every month. If the railway sector is supplied with enough steel to produce 8-axle electric locomotives, waggons of the 100-ton capacity and rails, and if the sector that produces tractors and lorries is provided with sufficient steel to produce them, the strain on transport will be fully eased.

In addition to producing a large number of 8-axle electric locomotives and waggons of the 100-ton capacity, it is necessary to put them to good use.

The heavy-duty waggons must carry heavy loads. Such heavy loads as coal and ore amount to some 60 or 70 per cent of the loads that have to be transported by rail in our country. Therefore, if the heavy loads are all carried by waggons of the 100-ton capacity, the transport problem will be solved. Timber should also be transported by the waggons. It will be excellent if the waggons carry timber from the Tumangang Station straight to the relevant destinations. The iron produced by the new method should also be transported by the waggons. As another steel plant will be built in the Kangson area in the future, the waggons should carry the iron produced at the Chongjin Steel Works to the Kangson area. Since a large amount of iron is produced in a day at the Chongjin Steel Works, it is advisable to transport it by the heavy-duty waggons. Originally, I intended to have the new steel plant built in Chongjin and make steel immediately with the iron produced in the Chongjin Steel Works, but neither anthracite

nor electricity is available there; only iron ore is available. If a steel plant were built in Chongjin, all the raw and other materials and fuel, except iron ore, would have to be transported from other places. For example, hundreds of thousands of kw of electricity are needed, but there is no power station there which can supply that amount of electricity. The factories and enterprises in the Chongjin area are not running at full capacity for lack of electricity. In these circumstances, we cannot build there another steel plant which consumes a lot of electricity. Nevertheless, it is impossible to move all the plant which produces iron by the new method to the Kangson area. It is more profitable to produce iron at Chongjin with the anthracite transported from the west coast areas than produce it at Kangson after transporting iron ore from the east coast. Therefore, I ensured that the Chongjin Steel Works produced only iron by the new method, and a steel plant was built in the Kangson area. By means of the waggons of the 100-ton capacity, the anthracite mined in the west coast areas should be carried to the Chongjin Steel Works, and the iron produced there to the Kangson area.

There is no need to transport cement by these waggons. Cement is a bulk cargo, but the transport amount is not so great that it needs to be carried at the rate of 5,000 tons at a time. It can be carried by waggons of the 60-ton capacity. In the future, when the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex is built and put into operation, the waggons of the 100-ton capacity can be used for transporting the cement clinker produced there. However, it will not be a big problem, because the distance from the complex to the Songnim Port is not a big one.

There is no need to carry goods other than heavy ones by the waggons of the 100-ton capacity.

The heavy goods on the move between the west coast areas and the east coast areas should be carried by the waggons of the 100-ton capacity. It is of no great significance to introduce these waggons only in the railways in the west coast areas, including the Pyongyang-Sariwon line. We cannot solve the transport problem to a great extent in this way. We will only transport coal to the Hwanghae Iron and Steel

Complex, to the Pyongyang Thermal Power Plant from the coal mines in South Phyongan Province and to the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant from the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex. It is being too cautious merely to introduce these waggons in the railways in the west coast areas. The waggons should run on the railway between Pyongyang and Chongjin, hauling heavy cargoes over the Yangdok Pass. The main thing in easing the strain on transport is to enable these waggons to cross the Yangdok Pass. It will be difficult for a train made up of an 8-axle electric locomotive and waggons of the 100-ton capacity to cross the Yangdok Pass hauling 5,000 tons of cargo; another 8-axle electric locomotive should push the train in the rear. You should supply two locomotives of this type to the Kowon and Sinsongchon Stations, respectively, to ensure that one of them is on standby to push a train from behind from Sinsongchon when it passes the station there on its way from the west coast areas to the east coast areas. After the train crosses the Yangdok Pass, the locomotive at the rear should be disengaged from the train at the Kowon Station and, when a goods train running from the east coast areas to the west coast areas arrives at the station, push it from behind across the Yangdok Pass. When 50 waggons of the 100-ton capacity are hauled by two or three 8-axle electric locomotives, locomotive engineers should keep contact with one another by radio. You should draw up a plan of how to make up a train which hauls waggons of the 100-ton capacity over the Yangdok Pass.

The waggons of the 100-ton capacity loaded with bulk commodities such as coal, ore and timber should be organized to go straight to their destinations. Both trains which carry anthracite from the west coast areas to Chongjin and iron from Chongjin to the Kangson area should run non-stop. These unit trains can run on several other lines including those between Pyongyang and Chongjin, and between Pyongyang and Hamhung. Other cargoes should be transported by waggons of the 60-ton capacity to be unloaded at their destinations.

In order to compose unit trains with waggons of the 100-ton capacity, we should expand some stations. One station for each 20 or

50 kilometres should be expanded so that trains may pass each other there.

In order to make railways heavy-duty, proper measures must be adopted to reinforce rails, roadbeds and bridges.

If the waggons of the 100-ton capacity are to be put into use, waggon-tippers must be produced.

If waggon-tippers are used to unload cargo from the waggons, the waggons can be used for a long time. If coal in the waggons is unloaded by crane, its bucket will bump into the waggon's walls, damaging it. In case cargoes are unloaded by means of a waggon-tipper, however, there is no need to install doors in the waggons, and so it will be easy to manufacture them, and they will not deteriorate quickly. When the tippers are put into use, they cannot be installed at every station. Therefore, they should be installed only in the places where cargoes are dealt with in bulk, and cargoes should be unloaded by other means in other places.

The tipper now in use at the Pukchang Thermal Power Complex cannot unload cargoes from waggons of the 100-ton capacity. Therefore, tippers should be designed to unload cargoes from these waggons.

The rail transport sector should not expect the Ryongsong Machine Complex to produce its tippers, but manufacture them on its own. Only then will it be possible to get rid of the bottleneck in rail transport quickly. At present, tippers are produced by the Ryongsong Machine Complex, but as it fails to produce enough of them, the rail transport sector is making complaints that unloading is a bottleneck. The people there are obviously attempting to avoid their responsibility for their failure to transport goods on the grounds that the other sector does not produce the tippers for them. They are misguided. The tippers can be produced without much difficulty in the factories in the rail transport sector. The sector has such large factories as the Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Complex, the June 4 Rolling-stock Complex and the July 6 Railway Factory, which can produce as many tippers as needed.

A well-devised plan should be drawn up to introduce 8-axle electric locomotives and waggons of the 100-ton capacity. Since they are expected to be introduced from next year, the plan should be drawn up after taking all factors into account. A Presidential Order has already been issued for making the railways heavy-duty, but it did not clarify the period of its realization. If a plan is mapped out to introduce the new locomotives and waggons from next year, the Central People's Committee will discuss it and decide on it.

The Academy of Sciences should quickly finish the test for solving the problem of protein feed with methanol. It is good that the bacterial strain imported from another country was delivered to the Academy of Sciences for the test. It was reported that the result of the test was good; it will be advisable to do another test with the imported strain. As soon as the result of the test is obtained, you should inform me.

**CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE  
TO THE 16TH CONGRESS  
OF THE MEMBERS OF BRANCH  
COMMITTEES AND INFORMATION  
WORKERS OF CHONGRYON**

*October 17, 1987*

Taking pleasure in the successful opening of the 16th Congress of the Members of Branch Committees and information workers of Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) amid the great expectations and interest of the Korean compatriots in Japan and the people in the homeland, I would like to extend warm congratulations to those attending the congress.

It is of great significance that the congress is being held today, when the Chongryon work has been further improved and intensified, and the patriotic enthusiasm of its officials and compatriots heightened as never before.

In the past few years, all the members of branch committees and information workers of Chongryon have gone among the compatriots and conducted vigorous political work, thus equipping them with the Juche idea and enlisting them for the struggle for national reunification and the fulfilment of all patriotic tasks facing Chongryon.

The valuable exploits and proud successes achieved by Chongryon are associated with the unassuming services of the members of branch committees and information workers who have striven, devoting their all, for the rights and interests of the compatriots, for the strengthening

and development of Chongryon, for the prosperity of the socialist homeland, and for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, sharing good times and bad with the compatriots and claiming no honour or reward.

The Government of our Republic takes great pride in having a large force of such fine officials as you, who are unfailingly loyal to the homeland and the nation.

I highly appreciate the brilliant exploits accomplished by all the members of branch committees and information workers in patriotic work by overcoming valiantly all the obstacles and difficulties encountered during the past years, and extend warm thanks to you and all the other Korean compatriots in Japan.

A branch is the main base of organizational life for the compatriots and the lowest executive unit of patriotic work. It is only when branches are active and full of vivacity that the Chongryon organization in general can be strengthened, and the mass foundation of the movement of Koreans in Japan consolidated.

The prevailing changed, new circumstances for work by Chongryon urgently demand that the branches, the basic organizations, be built more solidly and the sense of duty and role of the branch officials radically improved.

Under the slogan “Let all the compatriots participate in the work of the branches with the attitude befitting masters!”, members of branch committees and information workers should work efficiently with the Korean traders and industrialists, the main force of the patriotic work of Chongryon, to ensure that they discharge their responsibilities and roles as masters of the branches.

Fully aware of the importance of their duty, they should always set examples in the execution of the patriotic tasks of Chongryon, and form an integral whole with the compatriots to lead, educate and organize them warm-heartedly.

The officials of organizations at all levels of Chongryon, from the Central Standing Committee to chapters, should go down to the branches and render efficient help to their committee members and

information workers in their work.

In order to consolidate the branches, you should conduct a vigorous Patriotic Honour Flag Movement. This is a mass innovation movement of a high standard involving all the compatriots. The aim of this movement is to educate and win broad sections of the compatriots from all strata so as to rally them rock-solid behind the Government of the Republic, and enlist and organize them for the effort to hasten the modelling of Chongryon on the Juche idea, and national reunification. Members of branch committees and information workers must apply themselves to organizational and political work for effecting a vigorous Patriotic Honour Flag Movement, and ensure further development of this movement as the concern of the compatriots themselves.

With the belief that the members of branch committees and information workers will perform their duties and roles with credit to cope with the present situation developing in our favour day by day, I heartily wish the congress to be an important occasion in developing the movement of Koreans in Japan.

## **ON CARRYING OUT THE TASKS OF TECHNICAL REVOLUTION SET BY THE SOCIALIST RURAL THESES**

**Talk to Senior Officials of the Economic Sector**

*October 21, 1987*

In my policy speech at the First Session of the Eighth Supreme People's Assembly held in December last year, I emphasized the importance of carrying out the theses on the socialist rural question. I emphasized it again at a recent meeting of the Central People's Committee.

The *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* is a programme for socialist rural construction, for an ultimate solution to the rural question. During the period of more than 20 years since the theses were made public, their validity and vitality have been proved clearly in practice.

We must continue to advance along the road indicated by the rural theses, with a firm confidence in the cause of building socialist rural communities. Implementing the rural theses is the only way to solve the socialist rural question.

We must, as indicated by the socialist rural theses, step up the ideological and cultural revolutions in the rural communities, and thus raise the ideological, cultural and technical standards of the peasantry and press ahead with the technical revolution. Promoting the technical revolution is very important at present in implementing the rural theses.

Only when we accelerate the rural technical revolution can we put agriculture on a modern, industrial basis and free farmers completely from difficult and labour-consuming work. The difference between the industrial working class and the farmers finds expression mostly in their working conditions. In order to remove the difference between their working conditions and introduce the eight-hour day in the rural areas, we must work hard to carry out the rural technical revolution, strengthen the material and technical foundations of agriculture and greatly increase the proportion of mechanization and chemical application in farm operations. The task of ensuring a sharp growth in grain production also requires the promotion of the rural technical revolution. The per-hectare yield has reached a high level in our agriculture, but there is still much room for further increasing grain production. One of the important ways of boosting grain production at the present stage is to put great efforts into the rural technical revolution.

Senior economic officials are not paying attention to the rural technical revolution, as they should. In recent years they have been indifferent to the rural technical revolution, and have neglected organizing economic work to carry out this revolution. In consequence, sufficient tractors and chemical fertilizer have not been supplied to the agricultural sector. The construction of non-paddy field irrigation works has not been pushed forward vigorously, nor have proper measures for making effective use of the existing non-paddy field irrigation facilities been taken. Unless the economic officials get down to the rural technical revolution, it will be impossible to carry out the task of technical revolution set by the rural theses.

The economic officials must tackle the theses and work hard to implement the task of the technical revolution set by the theses.

They must, first of all, improve irrigation further.

Agricultural production is largely affected by weather conditions. Sufficient irrigation is particularly important in our country, where rice is widely cultivated. There is an old saying that rice farming is water farming. Irrigation is also essential for a high and stable harvest of non-paddy field crops.

Our Party has been deeply concerned about irrigation since the days immediately after liberation. We have successfully completed irrigation by undertaking large-scale irrigation projects in a mass movement. Our country is now covered with a comprehensive irrigation network and we can farm, free from risk of crop failure, even in unfavourable weather conditions. However, we must not rest content with that. Water poses a serious problem in many countries, because of the influence of the cold front in recent years. Our country is also affected by the cold front, and accordingly we must consolidate and develop the success made in irrigation. In other words, we must put irrigation on a higher level.

We must push ahead with the project for the digging of irrigation ditches to find a complete solution to the water problem in rice farming.

The reservoirs which have been constructed are not filled up with water, because of the influence of the cold front. In consequence, some cooperative farms, which are far away from reservoirs, suffer from inadequate irrigation in growing their rice crops. Some cooperative farms in South Hwanghae Province and some rice fields in the reclaimed tidal flats in South Phyongan Province have been unable to increase the per-hectare yield because of inadequate irrigation, although they could have increased it if they had got a sufficient water supply.

Now that we have built the West Sea Barrage at the cost of a large amount of money and manpower, we can provide sufficient irrigation for the major grain-production areas of South Phyongan and South Hwanghae Provinces. If we finish the project of constructing canals from the West Sea Barrage, we can supply enough water to the rice fields in the reclaimed tidal flats in South Phyongan Province and to the areas of South Hwanghae Province which are short of water.

Considerable progress has been made in the canal project which was started last year to supply water from the West Sea Barrage to the fields of South Hwanghae Province and other areas which are short of irrigation. We must continue to put great efforts into the project, and

complete as soon as possible the canals now under construction and those to be newly constructed. The Administration Council must provide materials and equipment for the project on time.

We must speed up the construction of sprinkler irrigation systems for non-paddy fields.

The key to maize farming is to plant F1 hybrid seeds and supply sufficient fertilizer and water. Maize requires much fertilizer and water. In particular, when the maize is in tassel and ear, 85 per cent humidity must be ensured. Some officials do not consider that the withering of maize leaves for a day is serious; they are mistaken. Their withering even for one day in this season because of lack of humidity in the field affects the yield seriously. Therefore, in order to ensure a rich and stable harvest, all the maize fields must be irrigated adequately.

Farm No. 7 annually produces eight to nine tons of maize per hectare with the help of sprinkler irrigation. That farm has never harvested less than eight tons per hectare. The fields which now produce eight tons or more of maize per hectare had been regarded sterile and discarded by a cooperative farm. However, the yield has increased since sprinkler irrigation was introduced.

The per-hectare yield of maize can be raised by two to three tons if the field is irrigated. If we irrigate 500,000 hectares of maize fields, we can increase maize production by one million tons, at the growth rate of two tons per hectare. One million tons of maize is not a small quantity. The amount is more than sufficient to supply all the cornstarch factories in the provinces and operate them at full capacity.

The agricultural sector must irrigate the lowland fields and even sloping fields within the next few years.

Sprinkler irrigation is better for non-paddy fields than furrow irrigation. The furrow system cannot water fields evenly; it washes away earth and wastes a lot of water. But, sprinkler irrigation can water fields evenly, just like rain, and does not wash nutrients from the soil.

The problem of pipes must be solved in order to introduce sprinkler irrigation in the non-paddy fields.

If cast iron is used for the mains to build the sprinkler system, a vast amount of pig iron will be needed. At a rough estimate, approximately one million tons of pig iron will be needed to irrigate 500,000 hectares of maize fields. To supply one million tons of pig iron for the purpose is no simple task.

While allotting steel for major construction projects, I have given much thought to how we should solve the problem of pipes needed for sprinkler irrigation. One day, travelling by car, I happened to see an electricity pole standing by the road. I got out of the car, inspected the pole and found it hollow. Seeing the pole, I thought that the problem of pipes for sprinkler irrigation might be solved if the pipes were made in that way. It seemed to me that similar pipes, smooth inside, could be used for irrigation. On my return I telephoned an official concerned and asked if we could make the mains for sprinkler irrigation with cement. He answered yes. So I told him to make them on an experimental basis. He later reported that the experiment had been a success. The cement pipes for sprinkler irrigation will not consume much steel. Only a few ten thousand tons of steel will be needed for the production of the cement pipes for a sprinkler system for 500,000 hectares.

Branch pipes for sprinkler irrigation can be made with plastic, so they will pose no problem.

We must sharply increase the production of sprinkler nozzles in order to construct non-paddy field sprinkler systems on a large scale. Some cooperative farms are said to have established the sprinkler system, but they cannot use it smoothly because the sprinkler nozzles are worn out. The nozzle factory must be built up.

Provinces must undertake the construction of the sprinkler system on their own responsibility. They can produce as many concrete pipes as are needed for the project. North and South Phyongan Provinces, North and South Hwanghae Provinces, and nearly all other provinces have cement factories. So if they increase cement production a little, they will be able to supply the amount needed to make concrete pipes on their own. They can also obtain iron bars for producing concrete

pipes. The central authorities should help the provinces which have no steel or cement works.

A careful field survey is essential for efficient construction of the sprinkler system. Senior officials must visit subordinate organizations to learn about the non-paddy fields to be irrigated, and take measures to supply equipment and materials.

While pushing ahead with the construction of sprinkler systems, we must make effective use of the sprinkler irrigation facilities which have already been built. The agricultural sector must conduct a powerful campaign to take good care of and maintain in good repair the sprinkler irrigation facilities which have cost us large amounts of manpower and materials so that they can prove effective.

We must finish the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture.

Only when we do this can we free our farmers from difficult and labour-consuming work, the farmers who have been freed from exploitation and oppression, and further increase agricultural production. We intend to mechanize agricultural work not only to increase labour productivity but, more importantly, to free the farmers from difficult work and provide them with easy working conditions. In capitalist society capitalists mechanize agriculture for more profit. However, in socialist society we do this to relieve farmers from difficult labour. That is the fundamental difference.

The most difficult task in the rural technical revolution is to mechanize agriculture completely. We have laid a firm material and technical foundation for doing this. We have built powerful large-scale tractor production centres and other modern farm machinery production centres by displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, and have already supplied a great number of farm machines to the agricultural sector. We have also technical forces capable of carrying out the rural technical revolution, and the farmers' technical and cultural standards are high. The point is how officials work for complete agricultural mechanization. Officials must work hard to realize the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture, bearing in mind that it is a noble duty of communists to free completely

from difficult and labour-consuming work the farmers who have already been freed from exploitation and oppression.

In order to mechanize agriculture completely, we must, first of all, produce a lot of tractors and various other modern farm machines, and send them to the countryside.

If we merely shout slogans about the technical revolution, without supplying large numbers of farm machines to the countryside, it will be impossible to carry out comprehensive agricultural mechanization.

We must produce many tractors and supply them to the rural communities.

The tractor is a good machine that can do various types of farm work, such as ploughing paddy and non-paddy fields, and hauling. It can be said, after all, that success in mechanizing agricultural work depends on increasing the production of tractors. Economic officials must improve the equipment of the existing tractor factories and supply sufficient steel to them so that they can produce more tractors for the rural communities.

We should increase the production of *Chollima* tractors. This type of tractor has long been produced, and is widely used on cooperative farms. It is a good machine for ploughing, harrowing and transporting. It has a defect in that it consumes a little too much oil, but the defect can be corrected if it is modified to be lighter. Therefore, its production must be increased steadily.

*Phungnyon* tractors must be mass-produced for the rural areas. They are needed for deep ploughing and field readjustment.

More *Chungsong* tractors must be produced for the rural areas.

Tractors must be distributed according to the characteristics of the regions where they are to be used. Various types of tractors must be supplied in proper combination—more *Chollima* tractors to the areas where they are needed in large numbers, more *Phungnyon* tractors to the areas where more are needed, and more *Chungsong* tractors to the areas where they are widely used.

While supplying many tractors to the rural areas, we must establish rules for making good use of them. Tractors must be used mainly for

farm work. Tractors must transport goods within the cooperative farms to which they belong and should be allowed to do hauling in neighbouring cooperative farms only when absolutely necessary.

Lorries must also be supplied to cooperative farms.

The agricultural sector needs lorries to transport goods and to effect comprehensive mechanization. Tractors are now hauling fertilizer and nearly all other farming materials because there are not many lorries on cooperative farms. That is why tractors are worn out soon and farm work is retarded.

Last year, when I went to Phyongwon County to participate in the election of deputies to the Supreme People's Assembly, I talked with officials there. They said that the tractors of the cooperative farms which are far from railway stations wear out quickly because fertilizer which is unloaded at the railway stations has to be hauled to the farms by tractors. And for this reason fertilizer was not applied in season. So I ensured that more lorries were sent to that county. This year in that county fertilizer was hauled by lorries and applied in season, so that richer crops were grown than last year. It is very important to supply lorries to the cooperative farms.

Lorries must be supplied to rural communities to ensure that one lorry will be available for every 100 hectares of cultivated land. If one *Sungni-58* lorry is supplied for every 100 hectares of cultivated land, cooperative farms will be able to haul all the farming materials which they need. Then, tractors will be used in a rational way, and their life span will be increased because they will only plough, harrow and do other farm work, and dispense with long-distance hauling.

Rural communities must be supplied with more rice-seedling pullers and transplanters, rice harvesters, machines for spraying fertilizer and agricultural chemicals, and various other modern farm machines.

We must raise the utilization rate of farm machines supplied to rural communities.

Cooperative farms have now no small number of farm machines. Therefore, if they only make effective use of them they can farm better

and relieve their farmers from laborious toil to a considerable extent.

We must pay special attention to making more effective use of tractors.

We must supply sufficient spare parts, tyres and oil for tractors, and see that tractors and trailer farm machines are in good repair.

It is very important for tractor drivers to enhance their sense of responsibility and role. Only then can they increase the utilization rate of tractors, successfully carry out comprehensive mechanization of agricultural work and increase agricultural production. In future, tractor drivers will do most of the farm work in rural areas where agricultural work is mechanized. We must, therefore, give proper education to tractor drivers so that they can work by displaying enthusiasm and creativeness, with a high degree of consciousness that they are the masters of the countryside and that they are directly in charge of farm work. In addition, tractor drivers must be encouraged to raise steadily the level of their technical knowledge and skill.

Not only tractors but the other machines which have been supplied to the rural communities must be used more effectively.

Next, new types of farm machines suited to the actual conditions of our country must be mass-produced for the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture.

Rice is widely cultivated in our country, and there are many sloping fields and small patches in our cultivated land. Therefore, farm machines which are widely used in other countries may not suit our situation. A foreign maize harvester, for instance, can work only on large lowland fields, not on sloping fields and small patches. As we have many sloping maize fields and patches, such a machine would not suit our conditions. Accordingly, in order to mechanize all kinds of agricultural work successfully, we must make a variety of farm machines suited to our topographical conditions and our farming methods. Scientists and technicians must enhance their role, and the producer masses must launch a powerful campaign for invention, and thus make more new types of farm machines which are efficient and easy to handle so that work on both lowland fields and sloping fields

and small patches can be mechanized. Various small-sized farm machines driven by 4-hp motors will be very good for mechanizing work on sloping fields and small patches.

The agricultural sector must carry out land realignment properly.

Otherwise, it would be impossible to mechanize agriculture successfully. No matter how many tractors and other farm machines may be supplied to the rural areas, they cannot be used effectively unless fields are realigned properly. Efficient land realignment is also important in making more effective use of land and increasing grain production.

As in all other work, the quality of land realignment depends on the officials' attitude to the Party's policy. Officials in charge of agriculture must work hard to carry out land realignment with a correct attitude to the Party's policy.

Terraced paddy fields must be realigned. This work must not be done at random, but according to the characteristics of the areas concerned. In the past a certain county in South Hwanghae Province reclaimed many sloping fields into terraced paddy fields for the purpose of producing rice, but they should be restored to maize fields. Terraced paddy fields in mountainous areas have many ridges, which occupy 20 to 25 per cent of the area of the fields, and they are very liable to drought damage. So it is difficult for such fields to produce three tons of rice per hectare. However, if maize is planted in terraced fields and sprinkler irrigation is applied, eight to nine tons, and even ten tons, can be harvested per hectare. It is much better to produce nine tons of maize per hectare than to produce three tons of rice in terraced fields.

Terraced paddy fields in marshes must not be changed into non-paddy fields. It is better to plant rice in them than to plant maize after changing them into non-paddy fields. Terraced paddy fields in marshes must not be made non-paddy fields but be realigned for mechanized rice farming.

An accurate survey of the land to be realigned is needed for efficient land realignment. Provinces must mobilize lecturers and students of agricultural colleges in their provinces for the survey of the

land to be realigned and see that the survey is made properly by plot.

Agriculture should be electrified more satisfactorily.

Only then can we consolidate the results of irrigation, successfully complete comprehensive mechanization and modernize rural communities further. Since oil is not yet produced in our country we have to use a lot of electricity in order to push ahead with the mechanization of agriculture. We must, therefore, electrify rural communities satisfactorily.

Electrification was realized in our country a long time ago. As a result, electricity is supplied to every village and widely used in farm work and farmers' lives. However, it cannot be said as yet that rural electrification is satisfactory. Officials must work hard to raise electrification in agriculture to a higher level.

In order to meet the rural demand for electricity, we must build many medium- and small-sized power stations to increase the generation of electricity.

We can build such power stations across the country because we have many large and small rivers. If we build many such power stations we can increase electricity production quickly without making large state investment. A mass campaign must be launched to construct medium- and small-sized power stations by exploring and mobilizing local reserves to the fullest. In particular, water-mill-style hydroelectric power stations must be constructed in great numbers. Wind-power stations must also be built. In the areas which are rich in waterpower resources and favourable to the construction of power stations, medium- and small-sized power stations should be constructed extensively, and the electricity generated by them should be used not only for threshing, drying and grinding, but also for cooking and heating. Then the farmers will be more prosperous.

Measures must also be taken to meet the rapidly increasing demand for electricity in the farming season. Operating water pumps alone in the farming season requires a large amount of electricity. Electricity supply must be organized on the principle of subordinating everything to agriculture in the farming season.

We must ensure the production of electrical equipment and materials needed for the electrification of agriculture. The machine industry must produce more generators, electric motors, transformers, electric wires and other electrical equipment and materials for agriculture.

We must work hard to complete the introduction of chemicals in agriculture.

Only when we complete chemical application to agriculture can farmers work easily, increase grain production and can the people live a life of plenty.

The major task in chemical application to agriculture is to produce various kinds of fertilizer in large quantities and supply them to the countryside.

As I have always said, fertilizer means rice. Grain production can be increased in proportion to the amount of fertilizer applied to the crop. According to an experiment I made while directing agricultural work myself, the ratio of the amount of nitrogenous fertilizer applied to grain output is one to ten. In other words, under the condition that various kinds of fertilizer are applied in a balanced way we can produce one ton of grain if we apply 100 kilogrammes of nitrogenous fertilizer per hectare. We must, therefore, produce large quantities of chemical fertilizer to increase grain production.

We must produce 7.2 million tons of chemical fertilizer in the last year of the new long-term plan. If we do this, chemical application to agriculture will reach a high level. The sector concerned must produce the planned amounts of various kinds of effective chemical fertilizer which are suited to our soil conditions and biological characteristics of our crops.

We must further increase the production of nitrogenous fertilizer. We have already created a great capacity for nitrogenous fertilizer production in our country. If we operate the existing factories at full capacity we can greatly increase the production of nitrogenous fertilizer. Economic officials must take positive measures to operate these factories at full capacity. Materials for keeping the equipment of

fertilizer factories in good repair as well as coal must be supplied in time.

It is very important to increase the production of phosphatic fertilizer. Without increasing the production of this fertilizer, it would be impossible to raise the per-hectare yield of crops. Phosphatic fertilizer promotes crops' photosynthesis and helps their intake of other fertilizers. It is all the more important to apply a lot of phosphatic fertilizer in view of the strong influence of the cold front on the crops and of the close planting of crops.

It is best to apply phosphatic and nitrogenous fertilizers in the ratio of 1:1.2. This is a scientific datum I obtained while directing agricultural work myself.

We must increase the production capacity of existing apatite mines in order to increase the production of phosphatic fertilizer. We must speed up the work of increasing the production capacity of the Phungnyon, Ssangryong, Yongyu and other apatite mines. We must think of producing phosphatic fertilizer with our own raw materials. We can never solve the problem of producing this fertilizer if we attempt to produce it with high-quality apatite imported from another country. While increasing the production capacity of apatite mines, we must keep phosphatic fertilizer factories in good repair and expand their capacity. Without making investment it would be impossible to increase the production of phosphatic fertilizer. The Administration Council must make liberal investment in the phosphatic fertilizer industry.

We must sharply increase the production of potassic fertilizer. It is one of the three types of fertilizer indispensable for growing crops. Unless potassic fertilizer is applied in season, the per-hectare yield cannot be raised. We are now applying considerable amounts of nitrogenous and phosphatic fertilizers to crops, but not sufficient potassic fertilizer. If potassic fertilizer is not applied to the rice crop properly, the seeds will not ripen when the crops are in ear, and the yield will drop, although the crop looks like it is thriving while in the stage of growth.

Two hundred kilogrammes of potassic fertilizer per hectare will do. In order to apply this amount we shall have to produce 400,000 tons of potassic fertilizer for our approximately two million hectares of cultivated land. Our problem of producing potassic fertilizer can be resolved when the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex is constructed. If we finish the first stage of the project, we can produce about 340,000 tons of potassic fertilizer. For the present, we have to import potassic fertilizer and also take measures to supplement the potassic element for the crop fields by various methods.

We have no major problem in increasing the production of silicon fertilizer. All we have to do is to build more silicon fertilizer shops in metal factories and increase production. It is important to produce it, but it is more important to take proper measures to transport it. The railway sector must organize its work carefully and transport the produced silicon fertilizer without delay.

We must increase the production of magnesium and boron fertilizer and various other micronutrients and supply them on time.

We must take measures to produce *hukposan* fertilizer to increase the fertility of the crop fields.

Because they have long been cultivated, our fields are not fertile. The Jaeryong Plain was famous for its fertility since olden times, but this is no longer the case because it was reclaimed a long time ago. Once I visited the Phochon Cooperative Farm, Hoeyang County when inspecting Kangwon Province and found that they did not reap rich harvests, because the fields had grown lean through many years of use. We must produce much compost and spread it on the fields to make them fertile. I have long emphasized the need to produce quantities of compost and spread it on the fields, but not much has been produced due to a lack of sources. Now the chairmen of the management boards of cooperative farms and ri Party committee secretaries report that they have applied 15 or 20 tons of compost per hectare. But, in fact, that much compost has not been applied. The best way to make the fields fertile is to produce and apply quantities of *hukposan* fertilizer, which can substitute for compost. We must consider *hukposan* fertilizer to be

important in view of the widespread use of chemicals in agriculture.

We must build *hukposan* fertilizer factories quickly. We must build them in South Phyongan Province, and North and South Hamgyong Provinces. South Phyongan Province must concentrate on this construction, and produce *hukposan* fertilizer as soon as possible, even though it has to put off some other projects. We must send the last batch of supplies needed for the construction of the *hukposan* fertilizer factories. If we build the factories and mass-produce *hukposan* fertilizer, we can apply it to orchards and mulberry fields, to say nothing of the paddy and non-paddy fields. If this fertilizer is applied to orchards, the trees will bear fruit well.

It is important in chemical application to agriculture to free farmers from difficult labour by widely using herbicide and other chemicals.

We have achieved great successes in the technical revolution to free farmers from difficult work. However, farmers still have to do weeding and other difficult and labour-consuming work manually. In order to free farmers completely from the difficult work of weeding, we must produce and supply various types of efficient weeding machines, and at the same time produce a large amount of effective herbicide for rural areas. We must strengthen the existing process of herbicide production, and finish the construction of the herbicide factory as soon as possible. If manpower for the construction of the factory is in short supply we must take measures to reinforce it by reassigning even the workers engaged in other projects. And if equipment is in short supply we must take measures to supply more.

We must also take steps to increase the production of various chemicals such as insecticides and growth stimulants indispensable for protecting crops from harmful insects and raising the yield.

We must not attempt to finish the rural technical revolution at one go, but in two stages, by concentrating efforts first on the lowland provinces and then on the mountainous provinces. The project for mountainous counties such as Maengsan County, South Phyongan Province, can be put off to the second stage because it is similar to Ryanggang Province in its conditions. We must ensure that the rural

technical revolution is completed to suit the actual conditions of every province and county.

It is by no means easy to complete the rural technical revolution set by the theses on socialist rural question. Nevertheless, we must set the goal of finishing the task of the rural technical revolution in the next few years and strive to achieve it. Economic officials must organize meticulously the economic work of consolidating the material and technical foundations of agriculture, and display a lofty revolutionary spirit and sense of responsibility in carrying out the rural technical revolution.

## **ON UNDERTAKING AQUACULTURE ON A LARGE SCALE**

**Speech Delivered at the 12th Session of the Eighth  
Central People's Committee of the Democratic  
People's Republic of Korea**

*November 2, 1987*

At this session of the Central People's Committee, I would like to refer to some tasks concerning large-scale aquaculture.

As everyone knows, our country is sea-bound on three sides. So it is extremely important for us to make good use of the sea. Moreover, in our country where the area of arable land is limited, to develop aquaculture by making effective use of the sea is of paramount importance in obtaining food for the people. If we make good use of the sea we can achieve as great success as by expanding arable land in resolving the people's food problem.

Immediately after liberation we had large catches of mackerel in the East Sea and of croaker in the West Sea, but not much nowadays. The poor catches in our seas in recent years might be explained by the change in sea conditions, but mainly by the fact that foreigners are catching large amounts on the migration route of these fish to our seas. Further studies must be made of the causes of poor catches.

While continuing to increase fish catches, we must undertake aquaculture on a large scale. If we develop an extensive aquaculture, we need not worry about migrating fish.

Our seas are very favourable for aquaculture; their currents and

temperature are suited to aquaculture. For this undertaking the waters off Kangwon Province, South Hamgyong Province and South Hwanghae Province are suitable, and the waters off North Hamgyong Province are not bad, either. The waters off North Hamgyong Province are a little colder than those off other provinces, but this is not a big problem for saltwater farming.

In our country there is an old saying: People in the mountainous region should make good use of the mountains, and people in the coastal region should exploit the sea. However, neither mountains nor the sea are utilized effectively.

The people in the mountainous region must not rest content with potato-farming but think of making better use of mountains. I intend to dwell on exploiting mountains at a meeting of the officials of Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces at some time in the future. In fact, we can obtain a variety of food from mountains.

In mountains we can pick a lot of mushrooms. Side-dishes of raw mushrooms or mushrooms dipped in boiling saltwater and dried are delicious. We can pick wild mushrooms or cultivate them.

On my visits to Fusong, Antu, Wangqing and Dongning Counties (in Northeast China) during the anti-Japanese armed struggle I saw Chinese picking a lot of mushrooms in the mountains. The mountains in those areas are suitable for cultivating mushrooms, and some capitalists employed three or four farm hands, and laid out mushroom farms and cultivated them. Some of the farms were as large as dozens of hectares. When it rained during the mushroom season, many mushrooms grew. The mushroom farmers used to dry their harvested mushrooms in floor-heated sheds.

I told our people to grow mushrooms in the mountains in the same way as the Chinese had done. But they do not know how to do it. They are good at growing mushrooms indoors. Recently the Academy of Sciences developed the method of growing mushrooms in crushed corncobs, and the soldiers of the People's Army are cultivating a large amount of mushrooms by that method. I have given a unit stationed in the area of Mt. Paektu an assignment to grow mushrooms, and raise

wild animals and fish, specifying the amounts. The soldiers of the unit have set up a wooden fence around hundreds of hectares and are raising deer inside it. The deer have multiplied so much that they even come down to the yard of the barracks. Some time ago people in North Hamgyong Province asked for some deer to breed, so I sent them about 50 head. They say that their number has now increased to some 1,000. The water in the area of Mt. Paektu is cold, so the soldiers of the People's Army there are breeding a large number of rainbow trout.

In places like Jagang Province furniture factories can be constructed to produce furniture of basswood or oak for the market. I have been told that the province has been exporting pieces of parquet made of oak. That is good, but I think it would be still better to produce modern furniture or plywood for the foreign market.

In the mountainous region it is desirable to plant mulberry trees on the sloping fields and raise silkworms. Formerly in Jagang Province no more than 200 to 300 kg of maize were produced per hectare on its sloping fields. Inspecting the province on a field guidance tour, I thought that maize farming on the sloping fields was very difficult but not very productive. So I told the inhabitants that they might as well plant mulberry trees on the sloping fields and raise silkworms, rather than cultivate maize, and gave them the task of laying out 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields. As they neglected the task in subsequent years, I criticized them and emphasized the task again, guiding this work. As a result, they created 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields. I inspected the mulberry fields and found mulberry trees planted so sparsely that it seemed impossible to produce a large quantity of cocoons. So I told them to plant the trees closer together.

The 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields created in Jagang Province are precious resources of the country and a great source of foreign currency. Now the people of Jagang Province are raising silkworms in tents pitched in mulberry fields by feeding them with cut mulberry twigs, and not in their houses with mulberry leaves. I think they can produce 500 kg of cocoons per hectare without difficulty. Suppose one hectare yields 500 kg of cocoons, 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields

will certainly produce 5,000 tons of cocoons. Jagang Province has been importing factory equipment with the money I sent it, to build a silk mill. If it processes 5,000 tons of cocoons it will produce 600 tons of silk thread. If they export 600 tons of silk thread, they can import about 400,000 tons of wheat. That means that one hectare of sloping fields which yielded only 200 to 300 kg of maize will produce 40 tons of wheat. Forty tons of wheat from one hectare of mulberry field are a tremendous earning in the light of the fact that even in a fertile land it is difficult to produce ten tons of maize per hectare.

Three hundred thousand tons of cereal are sufficient to feed the population and supply the cornstarch factory of Jagang Province. The foreign currency that can be earned by exporting silk thread will be more than enough to import approximately 300,000 tons of grain, and the surplus can be spent on importing cooking oil or sugar. If it makes good use of the 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields, and thus solves the food problem, operates the cornstarch factory, does vegetable farming properly and develops livestock farming, Jagang Province can become prosperous. Once I summoned the senior officials of Jagang Province and even the chief secretaries of its county Party committees to a meeting to discuss the economic affairs of the province. At the meeting I told them that if the province exploits the 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields, its inhabitants can all eat rice for breakfast, wheat flour noodles or bread for lunch, and a variety of delicious food made with either kidney beans or maize for supper. Then the attendants expressed their pleasure, saying that if so, their province could be well-off without depending on other provinces. At first, when I gave the officials of Jagang Province the task of laying out the 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields, the officials did not accept the task with confidence, thinking it too difficult. But the task has been carried out, as we pushed ahead with it.

Because nitrogenous fertilizer, phosphatic fertilizer and potassic fertilizer are not applied sufficiently to the mulberry fields, the yield is not very high. However, if sufficient fertilizers are used, it is possible to produce even one ton of cocoons per hectare. One ton of cocoons per

hectare of mulberry fields, if produced, would be marvellous.

There are tens of thousands of hectares of mulberry fields in our country, and if they are farmed efficiently, our people can live well. But they are not very productive because the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees have not paid attention to them. The task of planting mulberry trees close, the task I gave during the meeting to discuss the economic affairs of Jagang Province, was not meant only for Jagang Province. If Jagang Province has been assigned a task of planting mulberry trees close, then other provinces, too, must accept it as their own task, and carry it out to the letter.

Some time ago, when I asked the chief secretary of the Party Committee of South Hamgyong Province how many hectares of mulberry fields there were in his province, he answered, 7,000 hectares. The province, however, is not cultivating them properly. While travelling by train I saw many mulberry fields in South Hamgyong Province, but the mulberry trees were standing far apart from each other because they had been planted sparsely. So it is obvious that cocoons cannot be produced in large amounts there. South Hamgyong Province can also produce 500 kg of cocoons per hectare if it plants mulberry trees closer together. In some parts of this province, even one ton of cocoons has been reportedly produced per hectare thanks to their good manuring and tending of mulberry trees, and their good breeding of silkworms. If they plant the mulberry trees closer and raise silkworms carefully the whole province can produce 7,000 tons of cocoons. Then, the Hamhung Silk Mill can be fed with the cocoons the province has produced. Seven thousand tons of cocoons is a tremendous amount. If this amount of cocoons is processed and exported, approximately 600,000 tons of wheat can be imported.

In South Hamgyong Province a flour mill has been constructed, but it is not operated properly because of a lack of raw materials. If about 600,000 tons of wheat are imported, it can be operated at full capacity. As I have always said, our officials are not adept at riding the good horse they have. So they fall down from it.

There are many lands suitable for mulberry fields in North

Phyongan Province, North Hamgyong Province and other provinces. You say that in North Hamgyong Province there are 2,300 hectares of mulberry fields, mostly small plots. Small plots are not bad. It will be good if the farmers plant mulberry trees on these patches, produce cocoons as a sideline, and sell them to the procurement agency.

Mulberry trees can also be planted even on river banks, where other crops are not grown. A mulberry tree does not die even if it is submerged during the rainy season. As mulberry trees planted on river banks will be submerged only during the rainy season, it is possible to raise silkworms twice a year—before the rainy season and after the rainy season, when the new leaves grow. The patches on both sides of the River Chongchon, near the bridge, are all mulberry fields. They have been created on my instructions. The mulberry trees there are submerged during the rainy season, but that is not a big problem in silkworm-raising. There will be many similar places suitable for planting mulberry trees.

If we create about 100,000 hectares of mulberry fields throughout the country in future, that will be a large source of wealth. The point in question is not the lack of land for planting mulberry trees but the lack of vitality on the part of our officials, who do not strive to improve life. By vitality I mean the power to survive. People need vitality if they are to develop and survive.

During the anti-Japanese armed struggle I used to instruct my men, before leaving the places where we had bivouacked on our march, to break up a patch of land on the spot and plant pumpkins. Once my orderly asked me when we would come back to the place. I told him that even though we might not return, other guerrillas might come, and that if we planted pumpkins in the forest, the guerrillas would pick them and no other people would pick them. Subsequently, when I met messengers or guerrillas from small units who came to Headquarters, I asked them about the pumpkins, and they told me that on their way to Headquarters they had run out of food, but fortunately they had found a pumpkin field and picked pumpkins to allay their hunger. They said that they had made soup with not only the pumpkins but also their

flowers and vines. The pumpkins we had planted where we had bivouacked had helped them a lot. Because we had strong vitality we were able to defeat the Japanese imperialists during the anti-Japanese armed struggle; otherwise, we would have failed.

These days I have been emphasizing the need for our officials to display their vitality. Whatever work you are doing, you must be tenacious and know how to carry it out. Large-scale aquaculture also requires the vitality of our officials.

If we make good use of our country's offshore waters alone, we can solve a big problem. In our offshore waters we can cultivate kelp, oarweed, laver, and other kinds of seaweed as well as mussels, clams, pectens and other kinds of shellfish, and breed sea cucumbers, sea urchins, shrimps and the like.

Mussels and other kinds of shellfish as well as oarweed, kelp and other kinds of seaweed contain a lot of various elements good for health.

It is said that pectens, mussels and clams contain a lot of protein, fat, carbohydrate and ash, and Vitamin A and other types of vitamins, as well as zinc, manganese, copper, iron, cobalt, calcium, magnesium, phosphorus, iodine, chlorine, bromine and the like. Shellfish are also said to contain taurine, which is effective against hepatitis.

Kelp is said to contain much protein, fat, carbohydrate and ash, and some iodide, bromine, kalium, sodium, calcium, magnesium and phosphorus, and Vitamins A, B and D. It is said that kelp, being a kind of alkaline foodstuff, prevents the harmful effects of acidic foodstuffs. Kelp prevents arteriosclerosis, lowers blood pressure, is effective to some extent for curing thyroiditis and cancer, prevents constipation and lowers blood sugar.

Kelp and other kinds of seaweed and shellfish are very good for health and growth. Recently a certain country has defined as a state measure the amount of kelp in grams for children, adults and old people to eat every day. We must farm a large quantity of kelp for our people to eat. In particular, we must encourage the children to eat kelp a lot. If our children eat a lot of kelp and other kinds of seaweed they

can grow tall quickly. It is said that in recent years several countries have been widely studying and making use of various kinds of shellfish and kelp, and other kinds of seaweed as foodstuffs to protect people's health. An ancient Greek king is said to have eaten more than 50 kinds of food made from mussels in order to live long. It is said that juice extracted from mussels is the most effective.

Since our people do not like juicy things, the best way is to powder meat, season it and flavour it with spices before steaming it to make it into cake and canning it, so that they can eat it comfortably. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle I happened to taste tinned mussels we had captured from the Japanese and found them delicious. Tinned mussels can be eaten as a side-dish. Further studies can work out good methods of processing shellfish. Kelp can be eaten either by making soup with it or by frying it. Various dishes made with kelp will enrich meals.

I have been thinking recently of developing aquaculture on a large scale. If we do so, we shall be able to provide our people with a much better life than now. So there is no reason why we should not do it. Restaurants are not serving many kinds of non-staple food now, and we must develop aquaculture effectively so as to enrich the people's diet as soon as possible.

There is no great difficulty in developing aquaculture. The sea abounds in plankton, and so mussels will grow well if we attach their seeds to strings and put them in the sea.

We can farm shellfish, kelp and the like on a large scale offshore, but we may find it difficult to breed shrimps. In order to make an experiment in aquaculture I gave an assignment to a unit of the People's Army to lay out a small farm for breeding mussels, kelp, and a variety of shellfish and seaweed, and raise them. I found that no special feed was needed to rear them. But shrimps need powdered fish or bean cake, and we do not have such feed in abundance. It would be better to breed chickens with powdered fish or bean cake than raise shrimps.

Last May when I visited China I was in Tianjin and looked round the city. Travelling with the mayor of Tianjin in the same car, I said

that I had heard that the city was raising a lot of shrimps, and asked him whether they were growing well. The mayor replied that those which were one year old or older and eight centimetres long were exported; the exportable ones were scarcely 20 per cent of the total, and the rest were only four to five centimetres long. He said that the smaller ones which were not exported were consumed at home. When I asked him what they were feeding to the shrimps, he said that they ate a lot of feed such as bean cake and powdered fish. So I asked why they raised shrimps with powdered fish, instead of eating the fish itself. He said that they were breeding shrimps to export or serve to tourists, in order to earn some foreign currency. However, they were not making much profit. They can feed bean cake to shrimps because China produces a large quantity of beans, but we cannot afford to do so. It is better for us to raise mussels than breed shrimps. There is no need to make fruitless efforts to raise shrimps. Of course, it is not necessary to stop people from raising shrimps on their own initiative, but the shrimp farms should not be enlarged. In aquaculture, too, efforts should be directed to profitable areas.

I think shellfish may be raised even in rivers. Our rivers teem with shellfish.

On a Sunday, some time ago, I took a foreign woman writer, on a visit to our country, to the Taedong River. At that time I told soldiers to catch shellfish, and they caught a lot in a short time. The woman writer was surprised. I told her that the Taedong, free from pollution thanks to our careful environmental protection, teemed with shellfish. In the past there were a lot of shellfish in the Sunhwa River, a tributary of the Taedong. When I was young, the tidal water would flow up as far as the Sunhwa, so there were many shellfish in the vicinity of Chilgol. In those days, whenever I returned home after weeding the fields with my aunt I would catch shellfish. The shellfish from the Taedong were very tasty. The shellfish found in the Taedong are trough shellfish.

Nobody knows how many shellfish there are in the Taedong. If I had not discovered shellfish in the Taedong, the large resources in that river would have been overlooked.

On my return from the river I let the chief secretary of the Pyongyang City Party Committee know that the river teemed with trough shellfish. On hearing that, a senior official of the Pyongyang City Party Committee took some people to the river and investigated the size of the shellfish resources there. He said that if trough shellfish, freshwater clam and other kinds of shellfish were raised in the river, the per-hectare yield would be 100 tons. But you cannot expect to get accurate information about the shellfish resources from only a few days' investigation. To get accurate information you need a close investigation. If the Taedong is kept free from pollution, a lot of trough shellfish and other kinds of shellfish will thrive there.

In other countries, too, there is a tendency towards large-scale saltwater fish farming. According to the information I obtained from a technical magazine, in many countries the eggs of fish which hatch naturally in rivers and grow in the sea, are hatched artificially and released in rivers. These fish grow in the sea for one year or two and then swim up the rivers again to spawn. If we catch them when they swim upstream and let them spawn, and then hatch their eggs artificially, we will be able to increase fish resources greatly. If the fish lay eggs in rivers and the eggs hatch naturally, many of them will be lost.

In our country we can artificially hatch the eggs of the silver fish living in the Chongchon River, and set the fry free. The silver fish living in the Chongchon are the best tasting fish. Once upon a time a king, on a tour of a region on the east coast, happened to eat silver fish caught in the sea. As he was very hungry he found it very delicious. Later, back home in the capital he remembered the taste of the silver fish he had eaten on the east coast. So he had some fetched from there and ate them, but he found them not so tasty. So the king roared with rage, ordering them to be sent back to the sea. Since then, silver fish has been called *torumegi* (rejected fish-Tr.). The inhabitants of North and South Hamgyong Provinces still call the silver fish living in the East Sea *torumegi*. The silver fish living in the Chongchon are genuine. Some time ago I gave an official an assignment to consult biologists

and some people living near the Chongchon River for a long time about the ecology of the silver fish. His inquiry confirmed that the silver fish spawn in the Chongchon near Tohwa-ri, Kaechon County. The young grow there for some time and swim down to the sea near the estuary of the Chongchon to spend the winter and then return to the Chongchon. They swim upstream as far as the area of Huichon to eat as much feed as possible before they spawn, and then return to the area of Tohwa-ri, Kaechon County, in the spawning season. In order to conserve the silver fish resources we re-examined the plan for constructing a barrage across the Chongchon, and made sure that no barrage was built on the lower reaches of the river from Huichon. We are not breeding silver fish in the river now because we do not know the method of hatching their eggs. A study must be made of this question as soon as possible to find a solution to it.

Trout come up the Tuman River in shoals in the spawning season. The Hongqi River is a tributary of the Tuman. In bygone days trout as thick as my forearm would swim up there in shoals in autumn. Once, during the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we guerrillas caught in the Hongqi shoals of trout swimming upstream by striking them with sticks. Probably, our officials are not sure whether trout swim up the Tuman or not. There are many other rivers on the east coast, including the Orang River, but our officials do not know what kinds of fish come up there. Some time ago, I instructed some officials to inquire into what kinds of fish migrate to those rivers, but they have not found out yet.

In order to get information about the fish swimming up the rivers on the east coast, I think I shall have to talk to the native people on a field guidance tour in that region. Only old people, not younger ones, may know about such a thing. Probably because they have not had practical experience, growing up and studying at state expense, the younger people do not even think of hatching fish spawn artificially and breeding them. So far, we have not dealt properly with the work of artificially hatching fish spawn, which naturally hatch in the river and then go out to the sea to grow there before swimming up rivers again to

spawn. We must improve this work in future.

In order to undertake aquaculture on a large scale, we must enlarge the breeding area.

The area suitable for aquaculture in our country amounts approximately to 180,000 hectares, of which the actual size of the area for breeding is said to be 100,000 hectares, excluding the waters for navigation and other purposes set by the state. These figures are not accurate, because they were obtained by drawing lines with rulers on the map. Whether the size is 100,000 hectares or 150,000 hectares can be ascertained through detailed field investigation. But I think it advisable to set a goal of creating 100,000 hectares of aquaculture farms now, as envisaged in the Third Seven-Year Plan.

If aquaculture is undertaken on an area of 100,000 hectares, much will be produced. If the area of aquaculture is increased to 100,000 hectares and mussels are bred there, 40 million tons of mussels will be produced annually at the rate of 400 tons per hectare. Forty million tons of mussels will yield 16 million tons of meat at an extraction rate of 40 per cent. Since mussel meat is as good as other kinds of meat, a mere mention of an annual output of 16 million tons of it sounds pleasant.

If approximately five million tons out of 16 million tons of mussel meat are exported, the remaining 11 million tons can be supplied to our people. Eleven million tons of it means 550 kg per head of the population every year, or 1.5 kg a day. It would be difficult for a person to eat 1.5 kg of mussel meat every day. If we attain the target of 550 kg of mussel meat per capita, our country will rank among the highest in the world in the consumption of mussel meat.

Five million tons of mussel meat will be reduced to 500,000 tons when dried. At a price of 1,500 US dollars for one ton of it, the total will be 750 million US dollars. If we succeed in breeding mussels alone, our country will become very rich. I think it most lucrative to concentrate on mussel-breeding in aquaculture. If we are successful in aquaculture, we shall be able to produce 500 to 600 tons of mussels per hectare.

If we widen the area of aquaculture to 100,000 hectares and raise

kelp there, we can produce 10 million tons of it at the rate of 100 tons per hectare. When dried, this comes to one million tons. If large quantities of kelp are produced and exported, a lot of foreign currency can be earned. If 10 million tons of kelp are produced annually, some of it must be exported, as it is impossible to consume the whole amount domestically.

We must set the target of creating 100,000 hectares of saltwater farms, and strive to attain it. To hit the target during the Third Seven-Year Plan, we must create 20,000 hectares every year. This work must be undertaken as a mass campaign, as it cannot be successful if it is left to the care of the Fisheries Commission alone. Since this is an important work aimed at finding a solution to the people's food problem, it must involve all the provinces, the People's Army and the Ministry of Public Security. The Administration Council must assign the quotas to all the provinces, the People's Army and the Ministry of Public Security to create 20,000 hectares of aquaculture farms annually, and incorporate them in the state plan.

Pyongyang is located far from the sea, but it must also participate in aquaculture in order to supply all the citizens with shellfish, kelp and the like. The city should develop the breeding ground in the offshore waters of Kangwon Province.

South Phyongan Province plans to lay out its saltwater farms in the coastal waters of South Hamgyong Province. I think its plan needs further deliberation. I think it better for this province first to create about 100 hectares in its coastal waters and make an experiment. If the experiment proves successful, this province need not take the trouble to do saltwater farming in the waters off another province. If the province develops aquaculture successfully it will be able to supply shellfish, kelp and the like to its miners and other inhabitants after about two years.

Nampho should undertake aquaculture in its coastal waters, but it must not extend the area as far as the vicinity of Sok Island. There is the Nampho Port on the western coast, but it can accommodate only 50,000-ton cargo ships entering through the West Sea Barrage. Crude

oil and ore must be transported by at least 200,000-ton cargo ships. Sok Island is the only place on the west coast where a harbour capable of accommodating 200,000-ton cargo ships can be built. We are planning to construct a large harbour there on a long-term basis, so it is not desirable to engage in aquaculture in the vicinity of that island. Of course, it is possible to lay out saltwater farms near the island and use them for a few years until the harbour is constructed. But in that case, spacious waterways should be reserved so as not to obstruct harbour construction.

I have been told that seaweed in the waters off Nampho rots because of the fresh water flowing down from the river. I think that is because the water there is not salty enough. If it is difficult to engage in saltwater farming in the coastal waters of Nampho, it can be done in the waters between Sok Island and Cho Island, or in the coastal waters of Unryul County and Kwail County. In case of engaging in saltwater farming in the coastal waters of Unryul County or Kwail County, the bathing resort and its vicinity must not be encroached upon.

The location of aquaculture farms of Nampho should be decided by the officials of the Administration Council and Nampho after a close examination on the map.

The coastal waters of North Phyongan Province are not suitable for large-scale aquaculture, because in winter the sea water is very cold and icefloes float about, which would damage the farming area. Nevertheless, the province must create saltwater farms and cultivate them.

South Hwanghae Province will not face any problem in aquaculture. This province has 25,500 hectares of coastal waters suitable for saltwater farming, but it is now cultivating only 1,363 hectares, which is too small. You must not do it on a small scale, like children's play. The province must undertake it on a large scale.

North Hwanghae Province should also develop aquaculture if it is to supply mussels and kelp to its inhabitants. If the province has planned to lay out saltwater farms in the coastal waters of South Hwanghae Province, it may do as it has planned. The province is said

to be expecting help from South Hwanghae Province in aquaculture, but I do not think it necessary for the province to get assistance from others in this work. Some officials, when assigned a task, make one excuse or another, putting forward technical problems. Aquaculture techniques can be acquired in a short time. If officials visit a coastal village and stay there overnight talking with the villagers, they can learn the techniques easily. The province must carry out its assignment by itself, without relying on others. All that South Hwanghae Province needs to do is to allocate the waters for aquaculture to North Hwanghae Province.

Kangwon Province must prepare a little more for aquaculture farms than the area it has planned. The province has a wide area of coastal waters suitable for aquaculture. When preparing these farms in the coastal waters of the province the waterways must be reserved.

North Hamgyong Province must create 10,000 hectares of aquaculture farms. Then it will produce more than enough to meet the demands of its inhabitants. The surplus can be exported. Mussels will find a large market.

South Hamgyong Province will have no problem in securing the area of aquaculture farms it has planned, even after allocating some of its coastal waters to other provinces. Since this province engages in aquaculture on a larger scale than the other provinces it should plan to export the surplus after meeting the demands of its own inhabitants. It would be better if this province undertook the project on a wider scale, but it would then suffer a manpower shortage.

Ryanggang Province is supposed to prepare aquaculture farms in the coastal waters of North Hamgyong Province, and Kaesong in the coastal waters of South Hwanghae Province. How inland provinces and cities should develop aquaculture needs further study.

The People's Army must also engage in saltwater farming. As this work requires no special skill, the People's Army will be fully able to do it. If it develops aquaculture it will be able to supply sufficient amounts of shellfish and kelp to its soldiers. It must strive to increase the per-hectare yield of aquaculture. If it organizes the work carefully

it will be able to increase the per-hectare yield.

The Ministry of Public Security, too, must engage in saltwater farming.

Now that the areas for saltwater farming have been allocated to different units, the senior officials must organize a powerful campaign to develop aquaculture. If they organize the work meticulously they can discover rational ways of promoting aquaculture and enlarge the area of saltwater farms.

The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees must take the helm of this work and steer it in person. This must in no way allow them to neglect the assignment I gave them recently to complete sprinkler irrigation for non-paddy fields. The sprinkler irrigation system must also be finished unconditionally. Sprinkler irrigation will increase the grain output from the 500,000 hectares of non-paddy fields by one million tons. If an additional one million tons of grain are produced half the amount can be supplied to the cornstarch factories in the provinces and the other half can be used to feed livestock. If we increase grain production by one million tons and develop aquaculture successfully, we shall be able to improve our people's standard of living. At the previous session I instructed the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees to direct and complete the project of sprinkler irrigation for non-paddy fields in their provinces, and today I have given them another task of developing aquaculture. Therefore, they must carry out both assignments, without neglecting either of them.

Large-scale aquaculture requires proper measures to supply the materials necessary for the project.

An important matter in preparing aquacultural farms is to supply rafts and ropes.

Rafts will have to be made of cement. Formerly rafts were made of rubber or sheet iron, but now it is difficult to supply rubber and sheet iron for aquaculture, because these materials are used for many other purposes. So I gave an assignment to make concrete rafts, and I found the product excellent. Concrete rafts neither decay nor gather fungus

easily. Now that a solution has been found to the problem of rafts in aquaculture, we need not worry about them any more.

The concrete rafts needed for saltwater farms must be made by the provinces themselves. It is not difficult to make them. Since even ships are made of concrete, there is no reason why we cannot make concrete rafts. Only cement and steel bars are needed to make them. Nearly all the provinces have cement factories and steel works, so they will be perfectly able to make concrete rafts for themselves. If provinces manufacture them for themselves, they can decide their size to suit the conditions of their farms. As not many steel bars are needed for making concrete rafts, the steel works in the provinces can produce them.

The problem of ropes for aquaculture must be resolved.

Vinalon ropes are best suited to the purpose. Ropes for aquaculture must be able to withstand the weight of the masses of mussels, oarweed and kelp hanging on them, so vinalon ropes must be used, for they resist saltwater and are durable. The vinalon ropes needed for this project must be supplied by the state. In the future, when large quantities of vinalon are produced, we shall be able to supply as many vinalon ropes as needed for aquaculture. If 150,000 tons of vinalon are produced annually it will not be difficult to supply approximately 20,000 tons to the aquaculture sector every year. Just 10,000 tons of vinalon ropes, if supplied to this sector every year, will replace all the ropes now in use in this sector.

From the second half of next year we shall be able to supply some vinalon ropes to this sector, but it is difficult to do so right now. The February 8 Vinalon Complex is not operating at full capacity, because of a coal shortage. It is difficult to import vinalon ropes because of the shortage of foreign currency. So there is no source of vinalon ropes at the moment.

In order for the provinces to promote saltwater farming, they must make the ropes with locally available raw materials. The provinces have many sources of ropes. You must not think it impracticable to make ropes with locally available raw materials. Ropes can be made

either by twisting the bark of basswood trees or hemp, or using worn-out cotton. If the ropes made with locally available raw materials rot and become useless after about one year's use, they can be thrown away. And if they can still be used for another year, then they may be used. You must think of making ropes for yourselves by finding out and utilizing locally available raw material resources, and not simply expect the state to supply them.

In order to resolve the problem of ropes, the provinces must plant a lot of hemp. In the past they used to plant a lot of hemp by roadsides and the edges of fields, but now they are not doing so. If hemp is planted by roadsides and field edges alone, a considerable amount of rope for saltwater farming can be produced.

In saltwater farming, fixing vinalon ropes for framing and anchoring, and locally-made ropes for seeding may be convenient to apply mechanical methods. Frame-ropes and anchoring-ropes must be made with vinalon fibre, which does not rot even if it is kept submerged in salt water for several years. However, the seed-ropes, which have to be taken away for harvesting every year, need not be made with vinalon fibre. I think it better to make the frame-ropes and anchoring-ropes, which have to be fixed submerged, with vinalon fibre. We should make the seed-ropes with either the bark of basswood trees or hemp, or with straw, so that during the harvest they can be cut and taken aboard with the mussels or kelp that have grown on them. You must mechanize the work of laying seed-ropes and harvesting. The hanging of the seed-ropes on the frame-rope and harvesting are now done manually. I think it is possible to mechanize these operations by affixing rings to the seed-ropes to be hooked on the frame-rope when laying them and by contriving so that for harvesting the rings are automatically unhooked when part of them is pressed. If only these processes are mechanized, a lot of manpower can be saved.

We must also supply wood needed for aquaculture. Saltwater farming requires wood with which to make boats, drying furnaces and outdoor drying racks. The Ministry of Public Security must allocate felling areas to provinces and issue permission to fell the trees needed

for the purpose. Polypropylene resin and polyvinyl chloride resin should also be supplied. The supply of the materials for aquaculture must be incorporated in next year's plan.

We must also build boats for aquaculture. Aquaculture cannot be undertaken with only rafts and ropes. Aquaculture requires that the farmers work on the sea, and they need boats. Boats are needed for harvesting mussels, oarweed, kelp and the like, which have been grown in the sea.

The provinces should build these boats by enlisting the efforts of their carpenters. Carpenters can build wooden vessels without difficulty. We have experience of building wooden ships like angle-net boats by mobilizing carpenters in the postwar days. Immediately after the armistice I visited a certain country to conclude economic agreements. At that time, leaving for a visit to a local area, I told my companions to discuss the matter of fishing boats with the hosts. On returning from the visit, I was told that the host country would give us four 450-hp trawlers four years later. Four trawlers would not catch sufficient amounts of fish. So I saw to it that hot-bulb engines were made by our own efforts and that boats were built by mobilizing carpenters. In those days we built various types of wooden boats, including angle-net boats, by ourselves, by mobilizing carpenters. With those wooden boats we caught croakers and varieties of other fish in large quantities. In those days I visited Nampho several times in order to learn how our wooden boats were catching fish.

The size of the boats for aquaculture must be decided by the units concerned, to suit their own conditions. The boats need not be too large. Boats equipped with 4-hp to 8-hp engines or with hot-bulb engines will do. These boats can be used for shipping loads or as tug boats. A work boat should be small so that it can be operated by a crew of two to three persons.

Wood for building these boats must be supplied by the state, by the Ministry of Forestry.

The hot-bulb engines for the sea-farming boats must be produced. Boats equipped with these engines will not be very fast but powerful

enough to do the job. I think it is advisable to make small hot-bulb engines first and use them for sea-farming experimentally. In order to mass-produce these engines, we must construct a production base for them.

We should make a detailed calculation of the number of vessels that should be equipped either with hot-bulb engines or with oars needed per 100 hectares as well as the size of the work boats, needed for sea-farming, and should decide these things by next spring.

The manpower needed for sea-farming must also be provided. In order to develop aquaculture on a large scale, we must set up an aquaculture company. Thirty per cent of the manpower of this company should be young and able-bodied persons, and 70 per cent should come from among old people, pensioners and infirm people. There will be people too old or infirm to work properly in mines and other sectors of heavy labour. It would be a good idea to assign such people to the aquaculture company. They will be perfectly able to do sea-farming, as this work is not very toilsome. If they prepare seed-ropes and work on the sea farms, inhaling the sea air and eating things like mussels, they will become healthy and benefit in various other ways. The amount of labour needed to handle 100 hectares of sea farms and to operate the aquaculture company should be decided in the future on the basis of the experience of actual work. The aquaculture work force should be minimized through widespread introduction of mechanization.

In order to promote aquaculture, the workers in this sector should be provided with housing.

I think it reasonable to locate aquaculture companies near fishing stations. This will provide an easy solution to the labour problem. There is a lot of untapped manpower resources in fishing stations and fishermen's cooperatives. Fishermen are supposed to work 300 days at sea a year, but they are not doing so. Even when they are working at sea, they are not catching a lot of fish. Therefore, the processing workers in the fishing stations, too, are not working properly. In this situation, if aquaculture companies are located near fishing stations the

manpower of fishing stations can be used more effectively, and the housing problem of the aquaculture workers will be eased, because less manpower will be needed. If an aquaculture company is located near the Hongwon Fishing Station it will be convenient to ship the fish caught by the latter and shellfish and kelp produced by the former. It would be difficult to lay out an aquaculture farm near the Sinpho Fishing Station because many ships pass by it, but an aquaculture company can be set up in the city of Sinpho and an aquaculture farm laid out a little way from the company. Since the farm will have to be reached by boat, the distance between the farm and the company will not matter. The Administration Council should discuss further and decide the location of the farm to be managed by the company located in Sinpho.

A processing base of aquaculture products must also be prepared. Mussels, oarweed and kelp cultivated in the sea must be processed. Therefore, where there is an aquaculture company there must be a refrigeration plant, a drying yard for processing mussels, oarweed, kelp and other kinds of seafood as well as store houses. It is difficult to keep mussels raw for a long time. Since they go stale in a few days it is difficult to transport them raw to a distant place. And if you handle them carelessly they may go bad soon. Stale mussels should not be discarded, but be sent to animal-feed factories to be used as a raw material. Cultivated mussels must be processed as soon as possible so as not to be wasted. The best way of processing mussels is to remove the shells and grind the meat to make meatcake and tin it. The tins of mussel meatcake can be made in various sizes. Tins for travellers should be made small, and those for home consumption should be a little larger to be enough for a five- to six-member family at a meal. The tins for the People's Army may be made larger than those for families.

The tinning machines must be produced by a machine-building factory. Give the assignment to the factory and it will make the machines quickly. The machine-building factory should produce machines capable of making tins of various sizes. The Ministry of the

Metal Industry must supply plates needed for tin production. The matter of processing aquaculture products will be discussed again later.

We must also study the method of aquaculture.

Mixed farming of kelp and mussels is said to be good because kelp and mussels grow quickly under good mutual influence. Mixed farming may need more rafts and ropes than separate farming, but if it can produce 100 tons of kelp and 400 tons of mussels per hectare, this method should be adopted. In mixed farming kelp should be grown in the shallower section of the sea and the mussels in the deeper section. When growing kelp, pecten, oysters or sea urchins can be bred at the bottom. In aquaculture the sea should be used in three dimensions by growing kelp in the shallower section, mussels in the deeper section and things like pecten on the seabed. I think it advisable to experiment with mixed farming of kelp and mussels for about 60 per cent, and with separate farming of kelp for about 40 per cent. We still have not acquired an effective method of raising kelp and shellfish, and lack experience in this field. However, if we try it for about three years, we shall learn the rudiments of effective farming. Through five to six years of further efforts we shall be able to establish completely our own method of aquaculture.

In order to cultivate 100,000 hectares of aquaculture farms in the future, we must train management cadres and skilled workers in preparation for the undertaking.

As an immediate task, we must lay out approximately 5,000 hectares of saltwater farms within this year, and conduct experiments on them. The 5,000 hectares of experimental farms should be allocated to the provinces in an appropriate way.

The materials necessary for the experiment must be supplied. If materials are not supplied for the proposed task it may end in empty talk. In order to ensure that the provinces undertake experiments in aquaculture, we must first find a solution to the rope problem for them. I have got 5,000 tons of tetoron wool ordered for import. I will give the tetoron wool to the Commission of the Chemical and Light Industries

in exchange for 5,000 tons of vinalon wool to be supplied to the aquacultural sector. The vinalon wool should be made into ropes and supplied to experimental farms in proportion to the area of farms allotted to each province. The specific amounts of ropes to be distributed to the provinces for aquaculture experiments should be determined by the technicians of the Administration Council after detailed discussions. The Ministry of the People's Armed Forces and the Ministry of Public Security must import the necessary amount of ropes for aquaculture on their own, pending sufficient production of vinalon in our country.

The steel needed for the 5,000 hectares of experimental farms should also be supplied. Since 1.9 tons of steel are needed per hectare of the farms, the total for the 5,000 hectares of experimental farms will not be a large amount. We should build boats and rafts, and make necessary preparations this year while doing saltwater farming on an experimental basis, and then get down to the project in real earnest next spring. The Administration Council must summon the officials concerned for detailed discussions, and take practical measures for aquaculture in line with the directions I have given today.

**PROGRESSIVE YOUTH OF THE WORLD,  
UNITE AND FIGHT VIGOROUSLY  
AGAINST IMPERIALISM**

**Speech at the Banquet Given in Honour of the Delegates  
to the Executive Committee Meeting of the World  
Federation of Democratic Youth**

*December 8, 1987*

Dear delegates,  
Comrades and friends,

I take pleasure in this important gathering of people working to strengthen and develop the youth movement and offer a warm welcome to the Members of the Executive Committee of the World Federation of Democratic Youth and delegates of youth and student organizations from various countries and international organizations who are visiting our country to attend the Executive Committee meeting of the WFDY.

It is of great significance for the present Executive Committee meeting, with the participation of delegates of youth organizations from many countries, to discuss the tasks of their joint struggle and action programme. I am convinced that the meeting will help strengthen international unity and solidarity among young people in their struggle against imperialism and colonialism and for peace, independence and justice and give an impetus to the development of the youth movement throughout the world.

Today we find ourselves at a turning-point in history—the close of

the 20th century, which has been full of dramatic events in the struggle for independence and sovereignty, social progress and peace. We look forward to the advent of the 21st century, which will be full of hope. The present situation is characterized by the growing strength of newly-emerging forces, representing the new age of independence, as the imperialist forces, standing for the old age, try desperately to maintain their crumbling old position.

Imperialism, which has brought untold misery and suffering to humanity, is continuing to dominate and plunder the developing countries by the cunning method of neocolonialism. Clinging to the policy of aggression and war and brandishing nuclear weapons, it is jeopardizing peace and increasing international tension everywhere.

The nature of imperialism has never changed; aggression and plunder remain its mode. The imperialists are pursuing a policy of neocolonialism and nuclear threat in an attempt to find a way out, but this will only precipitate their ruin.

In view of the imperialists' persistence in a course of action that ignores and runs counter to the demands of the present time and the unanimous desire of the people, it is only natural for progressive people throughout the world to fight against imperialism.

Without combatting imperialism, it would be impossible for the people of the world to establish new, fair international relations, achieve their national independence and prosperity or safeguard world peace and security.

Today the world's people are faced with the common historic task of frustrating the imperialists' aggression and plunder and building an independent and peaceful new world. You, the young people, in particular, must take the lead in this struggle.

The young people, the new generation, represent the future. They are justice-loving and courageous, without hesitation or fear. They can never allow the people to be deprived of their right to independence and become enslaved by the imperialist plunderers, nor can they tolerate humanity's falling victim to a criminal nuclear war.

Young people must not just wish to enjoy happiness; they must be

standard-bearers in the sacred struggle to win it. Only those who have this enterprising spirit can be young people of the new age and as such entitled to enjoy genuine glory and a worthwhile life.

The young people must combat neocolonialist domination and plunder by the imperialists and fight to achieve their complete national independence and sovereignty, destroy the present unfair international economic system, and establish a new, fair one.

To young people who have beautiful ideals and high ambitions peace is more precious than anything else. History shows that young people suffer most bitterly from a war. They must rise up as one in the struggle against imperialist moves to unleash a new war and in defence of peace. They must wage a stubborn struggle to check the nuclear arms race, intensified by the imperialists, realize complete disarmament and establish nuclear-free peace zones.

The young people must give active support and encouragement to the peoples of all countries in their struggle to oppose colonialism and racism, to achieve national liberation and independence, to prevent aggression and war and safeguard peace.

In order to emerge victorious in the struggle against imperialism they must strengthen international solidarity and cooperation.

Solidarity and cooperation are the sources of strength and the guarantee for victory. Today the imperialist forces are allied on an international basis. Only when progressive young people the world over fight in solid unity can they deal a blow at the international imperialist forces and attain the aim of the anti-imperialist struggle. Progressive young people in all countries must unite firmly and cooperate closely with each other, regardless of their ideas, systems, religions and political views.

The Korean people and youth have achieved their national independence through their long-drawn-out, arduous struggle against imperialism and built the independent and prosperous socialist state that we see today. However, the US imperialists took the place of the Japanese imperialists in south Korea and, as a result, our country has remained divided for more than 40 years and there is constant tension

on the Korean peninsula. They have converted south Korea into an advanced nuclear base for invading our Republic and other progressive countries of Asia and the rest of the world. This not only threatens the existence of our nation, but also constitutes a grave challenge to universal peace.

Today defending peace on the Korean peninsula is not only vital to the Korean people but also very important to all the peace-loving people of Asia and other parts of the world. Progressive young people the world over must naturally pay attention to the grave situation prevailing on the Korean peninsula and strengthen the solidarity movement to ease the tension and maintain peace on this peninsula.

Support and encouragement from our foreign friends are a great strength for the people and youth of our Republic, who are building socialism; they are also a powerful inspiration to the south Korean youth, students and other people who are courageously fighting under the banner of anti-US independence and anti-fascist democracy.

The young people of Korea will continue to exert every effort to strengthen international friendship and solidarity among youth and remain faithful to the lofty ideas and great cause of the world youth movement.

Pyongyang, the capital of our country, will host the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students in 1989.

Our young people and others are attaching great importance to this festival, which will demonstrate the united strength of the world's youth, and are making every effort to ensure that it will be excellent.

We hope that the World Federation of Democratic Youth and all the other international and national youth and student organizations will cooperate closely to make the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students a successful, grandiose festival of friendship and solidarity for the youth and students of the five continents.

I believe that, thanks to your joint efforts, this meeting of the Executive Committee of the World Federation of Democratic Youth will proceed successfully and produce fine results, and I should like to propose a toast:

To the strengthening and development of the world youth movement,

To friendship and solidarity among progressive young people throughout the world,

To world peace,

To the health of all the delegates to this meeting from youth and student organizations in various countries and from international organizations, and

To the health of all comrades and friends present here.

## **ON MEASURES FOR EXTENSIVE USE OF META-ANTHRACITE AND OTHER COALS OF LOW-HEAT VALUE**

**Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Senior  
Officials of the Party Central Committee  
and the Administration Council**

*December 10, 1987*

At this meeting I would like to talk about some measures for extensive use of meta-anthracite and other coals of low-heat value.

An extensive use of meta-anthracite and other types of low-calorie coal is very important now for solving the fuel problem satisfactorily. If we use them widely in various branches of the national economy we can economize on anthracite and ensure a high and steady rate of production at factories and enterprises. With the rapid development of industry in our country more and more economic sectors use anthracite. The demand for anthracite will increase further when the construction of the Sunchon Vinalon Complex and the Sariwon Potassic Fertilizer Complex is finished. A large amount of anthracite will have to be fed into the carbide works of one-million-ton capacity to be constructed at the Sunchon Vinalon Complex. Carbide production consumes large quantities of anthracite. If we develop the carbide industry which is fed with anthracite, we can find a better solution to the problems of food, clothing and daily necessities. In our country anthracite is also used in large quantities for the production of cement and steel. Without anthracite it would be impossible to develop

our industry. In our country magnesite is called white gold while anthracite can be called black gold. Anthracite is too precious to be burnt to operate small local industries or boilers for heating.

Our officials, however, pay little attention to using anthracite economically. Foreign countries are now putting great efforts into research into fuel problems. The world trend is towards using coal for oil, and using coal of low-calorie value extensively for the maximum economy of high-calorie coal. In some countries research is being made into the development of power sources such as solar energy and wind power for an economic use of fuels like oil and coal. But our people are not studying hard how to use anthracite economically, thinking as if our country were rich in fuel resources. This is because our economic officials are not working as they should.

In order to save anthracite we must make every effort to use meta-anthracite and other types of low-calorie coal.

All the local industries must be fed with meta-anthracite and other types of low-calorie coal. As I have learned on this occasion, it is fully possible to feed meta-anthracite into small boilers. In North Hwanghae Province it is now used in many boilers. In Kangwon Province, too, it is used by many food factories. Since we can manufacture boilers fuelled by meta-anthracite or other types of low-calorie coal, the local industries will have no difficulty in using them.

Heating for public buildings in urban areas, too, must be supplied by burning meta-anthracite and other types of low-calorie coal. A unit of the People's Army is supplying enough heat to its buildings by burning meta-anthracite. The People's Army was the first to start using it. If meta-anthracite deposited in Kangwon Province does not contain much sulphur, it will be good for burning.

Central heating for county towns must also be provided by burning meta-anthracite and other types of low-calorie coal. In that case, you can produce gas by burning such coal for home use. You must investigate the matter of providing central heating for county towns by burning meta-anthracite or other kinds of low-calorie coal.

We must also introduce central heating for rural areas by using such

coal. This can be done if boilers fuelled by these types of coal are installed in rural communities. North and South Hwanghae Provinces and Kangwon Province must introduce central heating for their rural communities with the use of meta-anthracite. Rural communities must provide central heating for their public buildings such as nursery schools and kindergartens, primary and senior middle schools and people's hospitals, study halls and cultural houses, as well as drying houses and public baths. If central heating reaches even public baths, rural houses will not need their own bathrooms; the farmers can use public baths. About 20 years ago I ensured that a public bath was constructed somewhere in the Kangso area, and then saw to it that all the rural communities followed suit. As a result, there are now public baths in all the rural communities. In recent years, the Party has ensured that Changgwang Health Complex-style public baths are constructed in cities and county towns through a mass campaign. These are comprehensive service establishments for bathing, hair-cutting and beauty treatment. However, sufficient coal is not supplied to them. It would have been better if Lancashire-boilers using various kinds of fuel had been installed in them when they were constructed.

Under the present conditions it seems difficult to introduce central heating for rural houses. Since rural villages are now scattered here and there, it is difficult to build a boiler for every village. Even if a boiler were provided for every village, it would be impossible to supply heating pipes because the houses are scattered. A vast amount of pipes would be needed to provide central heating for all rural houses.

No developed countries in the world have introduced central heating for rural houses.

In provinces like South Phyongan Province, which is blessed with large coal deposits, central heating can be made available even to rural houses, but in that case, there arises the problem of cooking fuel. After much thought about this problem, I told a senior official to make an experiment in Pyongyang on the use of methanol as cooking fuel. In the future, when carbide production is increased by a new method, a

large quantity of methanol will be produced. It can be used for cooking by rural households to which central heating is available. It will be a good fuel for cooking. Sometimes during the anti-Japanese armed struggle we had to refrain from building fires for fear of producing smoke because enemy planes were hovering overhead. On such occasions we used to soak bunches of cotton wool in Chinese brandy and make fires to cook meals or boil water in the Headquarters tent. It would be a good idea to introduce central heating in rural dwellings in places where central heating is feasible, and use methanol or sawdust alcohol as cooking fuel. Using methanol for cooking in rural homes may be better than using coal gas for that purpose.

Electric cooking is ideal. It is the most civilized way of cooking. We might encourage rural communities to construct wind-power stations to produce electricity for cooking, but this method is not feasible as yet. Wind-power stations can produce electricity only when the wind blows. Soldiers of a unit of the People's Army have built a wind-power station and are now doing experiments with it. They have built a large plastic-sheet greenhouse and are growing vegetables by heating it with the electricity generated by the wind-power station. Even in winter they harvest great quantities of a wide variety of vegetables, such as tomatoes and cucumbers in the greenhouse. They say, however, that on windless days the vegetables suffer because the wind-power station cannot produce electricity. If wind-power stations are constructed to provide electricity for cooking in rural homes and if they cannot operate on windless days, it will be a great disappointment.

You say that if small generators are installed on boilers so that they can be operated by the steam before the steam is supplied to the mains, electricity can be obtained as a by-product for cooking in homes. In this case the electricity produced from them must not be channelled to the state power supply network but be used separately by the units concerned. Then, if a generator breaks down, the failure will affect only the rural community concerned, not other areas. It is advisable that in the rural areas only public buildings should be provided with central heating; dwelling houses should be heated with locally

available fuels. Rural dwellings should be designed to be heated with whatever fuel is available, with rice chaff or straw in the rice-producing area, acacia firewood where acacia is available, and with grass or brushwood where these can be obtained. In former days rural people cooked and heated their dwellings, though they did not burn coal. When I was 12 years old I went to school, staying at my mother's old home in Chilgol. In those days they used to rake together dead leaves on the mountain or grass on field ridges and gather even foxtail-millet stubble in the field to use as fuel. Nowadays, however, grass and stubble are used nowhere. Our farmers never think of using maize stubble as fuel; they pull it up and stack it in the fields and then burn it.

A good housing design is very important in solving the problem of heating rural dwellings. A good design facilitates the heating of these dwellings with less fuel. Many years ago an ambassador to our country was on intimate terms with me, so I often visited his house. One day he told me he had had a new house built and boasted that he could heat his room with the fire used to make tea. Usually the people of his country cooked soup only for lunch, and made tea for breakfast and supper. I did not believe that he could heat his room with the tea-making fire. So I went to his house to see. I found his house small and it seemed that it could be heated with such a small fire. This shows how important design is in heating a dwelling. When designing underfloor heating, however, our designers make floors thick, so heating remains a difficult problem.

It is said that houses built with hollow-core concrete slabs need much less fuel for heating. I think it desirable to build such dwellings so that they can be heated well with a minimum expenditure of fuel. We say that we have been working for modern housing but we have not taken proper measures against cold as yet. If we visit rural houses in North and South Phyongan Provinces in winter, we still find their rooms cold because of draughts, although the floors are warm. So the people there sleep under thick quilts in winter. The boarders in workers' hostels also sleep under thick quilts during winter. From

olden times the inhabitants of North and South Phyongan Provinces have slept under thick quilts because they have produced cotton. But the people in the northern region, for instance in North Hamgyong Province, could not afford to have quilts because they did not grow cotton. In the old days the poor people in North Hamgyong Province and the Jiandao area never thought of sleeping under quilts. During the early period of my revolutionary activities I travelled in many parts of North Hamgyong Province and the northeast area of China. In those days I used to wear a long overcoat made by my mother. I had my overcoat made long in order to use it as a covering when sleeping. Then I used to sleep under it with my fur cap under my head on a wooden pillow. In those days the inhabitants of North Hamgyong Province and other parts of the northern region had to do without quilts, but they slept in well-heated rooms because they had plenty of firewood. The rural houses in North Hamgyong Province had cooking fires at one end of the floors of their rooms, without dividing walls. The inhabitants used to heat these fires well and sleep on the heated floors. In future housing designers must pay attention to providing against cold. We need housing designs capable of ensuring sufficient heating with a minimum use of fuel. Large houses built after the fashion will be useless if they are not warm in spite of much heating because of poor provision against cold.

In rural communities central heating should be introduced in public buildings in the first stage and then be gradually extended through the second, third and final stages. In the future you must also make a plan to concentrate rural public buildings and dwellings in some places and provide central heating for them. In providing central heating for rural communities we must make boilers suited to the specific fuel conditions of the area concerned. The boilers must be made to burn different kinds of fuel, such as coal, grass or firewood, as they are available in different regions. Unless we take into account local fuel conditions the introduction of central heating in the rural communities may end in empty talk.

We must take measures to mine meta-anthracite. We are not yet

very familiar with this, but we must mine and use it as far as our knowledge permits us.

Meta-anthracite deposited in Kangwon and North Hwanghae Provinces should be mined first.

North Hwanghae Province and Kangwon Province abound in this coal. North Hwanghae Province also has deposits of brown coal. The Sariwon Coal Mine has been producing it since pre-liberation days, and immediately after liberation it was named the Pongsan Coal Mine. In the year after liberation I happened to drop in at Sariwon on my way home from Haeju, when a crowd of people welcomed me. I made a speech to them and went into my lodging to take a rest. Then, workers called on me and I talked with them. They were people from the Pongsan Coal Mine. If North Hwanghae Province and Kangwon Province mine and make effective use of meta-anthracite they will be able to solve the fuel problem not only for themselves but also for South Hwanghae Province.

Since North Hwanghae Province has large deposits of it, South Hwanghae Province should also mine it to meet its demands.

In order to mine meta-anthracite we must develop graphitoid coal mines as soon as possible. North Hwanghae Province and Kangwon Province must develop them. North Hwanghae Province should develop several mines to meet not only its own needs but also the demands of South Hwanghae Province. The Administration Council must work out a detailed plan, specifying the number of mines to be developed and the methods of doing it, and submit the plan for approval.

We must also take measures for transporting meta-anthracite. The shortage of transport for the purpose is now being voiced. We must increase the production of *Sungni-58* lorries to solve this problem.

Boilers designed for coal with high-heat value will have to be modified to burn meta-anthracite or coal of low-heat value.

According to the investigation made by the secretary of the Party Central Committee for economic planning on his visit to North Hwanghae Province, all the small boilers fuelled by high-heat coal can be modified to be fuelled by meta-anthracite or low-heat coal.

Modifying them is very important. In South Hamgyong Province the coal produced by the Kumya Youth Coal Mine is not being used because its calorie value is low. If all the boilers in Hamhung are modified to burn the low-heat coal produced by the Kumya Youth Coal Mine, the high-quality anthracite which has been used to operate local industries, and to heat public buildings and dwellings in Hamhung can be supplied to the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, the February 8 Vinalon Complex, and other large factories and enterprises to increase the production of fertilizer and vinalon.

Therefore, in order to make economical use of high-heat coal we must first modify the boilers now using high-heat coal to burn meta-anthracite or low-heat coal. The modification of such boilers in local industries alone will enable us to solve a major problem. A mass campaign is needed to modify them in a short time.

We must mass-produce boilers using meta-anthracite or low-heat coal. Emphasizing the need to use meta-anthracite or low-heat coal without producing such boilers will get you nowhere. Even legal control which is not supported by necessary conditions cannot ensure the use of meta-anthracite or low-heat coal. For instance, it would be useless to stop people cooking with high-heat coal unless we take measures to ensure that they use other kinds of fuel. Even legal measures can be effective only when the conditions for carrying them out are provided.

The boilers to be produced should be capable of using different kinds of coal, such as the brown coal cut in large quantities by the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex, low-grade coal produced by anthracite mines or meta-anthracite. The Lancashire-boiler can meet the purpose. Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces should be supplied with a large number of Lancashire-boilers. These boilers can burn either brushwood or firewood, when the supply of coal runs short.

Factories in Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces are not working properly because of coal shortages. The Hyesan Paper Mill Complex is not operating at capacity for the same reason. The construction of a large paper mill in Hyesan was proposed by Comrade Jong Jun Thae.

I told him then that if a paper mill was constructed in Hyesan, the supply of fuel to it would be difficult. He said, however, that fuel supply would not pose a problem because coal could be supplied from North Hamgyong Province. So I agreed to the construction of the paper mill there. But North Hamgyong Province has not supplied sufficient coal to the paper mill. If Lancashire-boilers had been installed at the paper mill in Hyesan when it was constructed, the mill would have been able to operate in spite of a shortage of coal by using as fuel some of the logs supplied to it as raw materials. Recently coal deposits have been discovered in the Paegam area in Ryanggang Province, and it has been suggested that the boilers at the Hyesan Paper Mill Complex should be used without modification.

In order to make a large number of boilers fuelled by meta-anthracite or low-heat coal and Lancashire-boilers we shall have to construct boiler-production bases.

Each province must have its own base. It would be impossible for one or two boiler-production bases to meet the whole demand for boilers. Only when each province has its own base can it satisfy its need for boilers by itself. So I have given the Administration Council an assignment to plan the construction of a large number of boiler-production bases. We should construct bases capable of producing 2-ton, 3-ton, 5-ton and 10-ton boilers and, if possible, 30-ton boilers, fuelled by low-heat coal. The 30-ton boilers can be installed in large factories. The new plan drawn up by the Administration Council for the construction of the boiler-production bases envisages the production of the necessary boilers, including those fuelled by low-heat coal, at various factories—the Pyongyang Construction Machine Factory, the Thermal-Power Station Construction Complex, the Sinuiju Dyeing Equipment Spare Parts Factory, the Kanggye Machine Factory, the Haeju General Machinery Factory and the Sariwon Machine Factory. The actual assignment of factories to produce the boilers should be discussed and decided on by the senior officials of the Administration Council.

As provinces are to make boilers burning meta-anthracite or

low-heat coal, high-pressure tubes and drawn pipes, which are difficult to be made by provinces themselves, must be produced and supplied to them by the Chollima Steel Complex.

The planned measures for the construction of the boiler-production bases must be checked in the field for completion. The proposed measures have been drafted at your desks, so they should be perfected through field investigation. Officials must examine the field situation closely and then organize actual work by specifying, for instance, in South Hamgyong Province which local industries and heating enterprises should be fuelled by low-heat coals from the Kumya Youth Coal Mine and the coal mines in the Kowon area, and which machine-building factories should manufacture the necessary boilers. In South Phyongan Province it should be decided which units should be fuelled by the brown coal mined by the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex and by the low-grade coals from anthracite mines and which machine-building factories should make the necessary boilers, and in North and South Hwanghae Provinces and Kangwon Province, which units should be fuelled by meta-anthracite, which machine factories should produce the necessary boilers, and which kinds of materials should be supplied by the state.

During the next field investigation of the proposed measures, the boilers which should be manufactured and those which should be modified should be calculated separately. New local industries and public buildings to be constructed must be provided with appropriate boilers.

In view of the suggestion for turning electricity generators with the steam from boilers before the steam is channelled to the heating system, the production of the necessary generators should also be planned. The generators to be installed on boilers may be similar to hydroturbine-driven generators but their turbines will be different. You must also calculate how many generators can be installed on a boiler.

The work of modifying the boilers should be finished within a few years. I think there are too many boilers for local industries and for central heating to be modified in a year. But even a one-year campaign to modify the boilers fuelled by high-heat coal into ones using

meta-anthracite or low-heat coal will ease the shortage of high-heat coal considerably.

If these boilers are modified within a few years, then there will be no need to supply high-heat coal for operating local industries and for heating public buildings and homes. Then, the high-heat coal should be used to produce carbide and iron. This will be a revolution in the use of heat.

We must make a survey of the boilers in all parts of the country. At present, no accurate data are available about the types, numbers or locations of the boilers we have, although we are planning to modify them. We are not clear about, for instance, how many boilers are installed in the local industries and how many are being used for heating in Sariwon. As matters now stand, officials of the provinces and the State Planning Commission do not know how many boilers are now working in each province. This is wrong. We must make a full survey of the boilers in the country, register them and keep a record of how many boilers should be modified to be fuelled by meta-anthracite or low-heat coal. The rural communities which should be provided with central heating and those which need not should also be investigated. This information will facilitate the work of modifying boilers. Officials must not pay mere lip-service to this work but organize the concrete work of surveying and keeping an accurate record of the boilers to be modified and supplying necessary materials for the purpose.

The survey of the boilers should be done by enlisting many people, including students, rather than just by a few officials. If students are enlisted in this work, the survey can be finished quickly in all parts of the country. The students of heat engineering at the University of Construction and Building Materials, Kim Chaek University of Technology, Pyongyang University of Mechanical Engineering and other universities, scientists in this field and some government officials with a knowledge of heat engineering must take part in the survey.

In order to help them to do this work properly, we must give them a short course of lectures.

The survey teams must be sent to all the provinces, cities and counties.

The survey should be finished by February next year. An investigation of all the boilers in our country will take a few months. Sufficient time must be given for the survey. If not, the work may not be done substantially.

The Premier and the secretary for economic planning of the Party Central Committee must discuss which universities and research institutes should contribute surveyors as well as government officials for this work and summon them all even as soon as tomorrow, and organize the survey.

When the survey is completed, I intend to convene a meeting around February 10 to discuss the matter of widely using meta-anthracite and low-heat coal. You must work out the methods of using low-heat coal for local industries and public buildings, of providing central heating for county towns and rural communities, and of solving the fuel problem for rural dwellings, and submit the plan to the meeting. You must also plan the measures for the construction of production bases for boilers fuelled by meta-anthracite or low-heat coal, and for the supply of materials needed for the manufacture of boilers and generators, and calculate the fuel supply for the modified boilers.

Proper research into meta-anthracite should be made.

It is extremely important in our country to solve the fuel problem facing North and South Hwanghae Provinces and Kangwon Province. North and South Phyongan Provinces will have no difficulty in solving their fuel problem because they abound in anthracite. Jagang Province also has anthracite deposits. The Jonchon Coal Mine is said to have a deposit of tens of millions of tons of anthracite, but the actual amount of its deposits can be known only through further prospecting. By contrast, North and South Hwanghae Provinces and Kangwon Province have a fuel problem because they do not have much anthracite. In order for them to ease the strain on their fuel supply they must mine and use their abundant resources of meta-anthracite. However, South Hwanghae Province and Kangwon Province are not studying hard how they should mine the large deposits of meta-anthracite and use them. Even when fuel is in short supply,

officials of South Hwanghae Province are not anxious about fuel because in that province there are not many large factories and enterprises fuelled by anthracite, nor are they making experiments in mining and using meta-anthracite available in the province. In the Meta-Anthracite Research Department of the Fuel Research Institute of the Academy of Sciences, there are a dozen persons, including researchers, but they are not well acquainted with the meta-anthracite deposits in Kangwon and South Hwanghae Provinces, because they have so far studied only the meta-anthracite deposits in North Hwanghae Province. Officials are now indulging in empty talk about the possibility or impossibility of burning meta-anthracite, without making any effective research into this.

In order to ensure success in the research into meta-anthracite the officials and scientists concerned must go among the masses. The masses know better the method of burning meta-anthracite than officials and scientists. There is nothing impossible for us to deal with if we rely on the masses of the people, and enlist their strength and wisdom. This is the principle of the Juche idea. The officials are not successful in their work because they are not fully armed with the Juche idea. If they are equipped with the Juche idea and always mix with the masses to enlist their strength and wisdom, under the revolutionary slogan of self-reliance and fortitude, they can solve any difficult problem. Even scientists can make progress in their research if they mix intimately with the masses. The workers of the Meta-Anthracite Research Department of the Fuel Research Institute of the Academy of Sciences must visit South Hwanghae and Kangwon Provinces, and work with the workers there, cutting meta-anthracite and burning it raw or pulverizing it and burning it in a boiler, so as to conduct research into it in various ways. The chief secretary of the Party Committee of South Hwanghae Province has said that the meta-anthracite in his province is difficult to burn for its low-calorie value. When the specialists go there and carry out research into this, they can give us a scientific analysis.

When it is proved in the future that the meta-anthracite deposits in

South Hwanghae and Kangwon Provinces can be mined and used, we must see to it that these provinces mine their own deposits and use the products to dispense with the inter-provincial transport of meta-anthracite.

A further study should be made into using meta-anthracite ash as fertilizer.

Judging from the fact that *hukposan* fertilizer is made from brown coal and peat, meta-anthracite ash can also be used as fertilizer.

I named it *hukposan* fertilizer from the sense that it increases soil fertility. Humic acid is effective for making land fertile. This has been scientifically proved by our scientists.

According to a field inquiry recently made by officials, meta-anthracite ash applied to crops can increase the per-hectare grain yield. Meta-anthracite is black but its ash is not. Therefore, even if it is spread on a field it will not blacken the field.

If we are to use this ash as fertilizer we must make a close study of its properties and their effects. If it contains much alumina, it is difficult to use as fertilizer. It is now said that even silicon fertilizer which contains two to three per cent of alumina is harmful. Applying meta-anthracite ash containing much alumina to a field once or twice may be tolerable, but if it is used for a long time it will increase the content of alumina of the soil and spoil the field. However, if alumina is removed from the meta-anthracite ash, then the ash can be a very good fertilizer.

Research into the method of removing alumina from the ash should be made. It will be good if there is a method of removing it by applying some chemical reagent or using a machine, just as iron-ore mines produce iron concentrates by the magnetic dressing method.

In future, systematic experiments should be made on the desirability of using meta-anthracite ash on crop fields.

If the ash is proved not to be useful as fertilizer, it can still be used as building material for making bricks and the like. Foreign countries, too, use a great deal of coal ash as building material.

